NCGC National Clinical Guideline Centre

Patient experience in adult NHS services: improving the experience of care for people using adult NHS services

Patient experience in generic terms

Clinical Guidance

Methods, evidence and recommendations

February 2012

Commissioned by the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence

Royal College of Physicians
Setting higher medical standards

Royal College of Nursing

RCS
ADVANCING SURGICAL STANDARDS

RCGP Royal College of General Practitioners

NHS Evidence
accredited provider
NHS Evidence - provided by NICE
www.evidence.nhs.uk

Update information
June 2021: The section on shared decision making was replaced by the NICE guideline on shared decision making.

Minor updates
October 2021: We made minor changes to the wording in recommendations 1.1.1, 1.1.3, 1.3.5, 1.3.10 and 1.5.14 to take account of people with more than 1 condition. We also added a cross-reference to NICE's guideline on multimorbidity in recommendation 1.1.1 and to NICE's guideline on babies, children and young people's experience of healthcare in the introduction. We updated the links in recommendation 1.2.12.
June 2021: Appendix A on recommendations adapted from published clinical guidelines was removed.
February 2020: The quality statements in the guideline were replaced with a link to the updated NICE quality standard on patient experience in adult NHS services.
October 2015: Recommendation 1.4.3 was updated to cite the Health and Social Care Safety and Quality Act 2015.

You can see these changes at www.nice.org.uk/cg138

Published by the National Clinical Guideline Centre at
The Royal College of Physicians, 11 St Andrews Place, Regents Park, London, NW1 4BT

First published 2012

Contents

Guidance development group members

Name	Role
Sophie Staniszewska (Chair)	Senior Research Fellow, Lead for Patient Experiences and Public Involvement Programme, Royal College of Nursing Research Institute, University of Warwick
Jo Adams	Senior Lecturer, Professional Lead for Occupational Therapy, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Southampton
Eloise Carr	Deputy Dean Research & Enterprise, HSC, Bournemouth University
Miranda Dodwell	Patient and carer member
Christianne Forrest	Patient and carer member
Melanie Gager	Follow Up Sister, Critical Care, Royal Berkshire NHS Foundation Trust
Annette Gibb	Nurse Consultant in Pain Management, Royal Berkshire NHS Foundation Trust
Poonam Jain	Patient and carer member
David Martin	Patient and carer member
Tom McLoughlin-Yip	Patient and carer member
Alan Nye	Principal General Practice, Associate Medical Director NHS Direct, and Director of Pennine MSK Partnership Ltd
Suzannah Power	Patient and carer member
Amanda Smith	Executive Director of Therapies and Health Sciences, Powys Teaching Health Board
Richard Thomson	Professor of Epidemiology and Public Health, Institute of Health and Society, Newcastle University
Chandi Vellodi	Consultant Physician in Acute Medicine and Medicine for the Elderly, Barnet and Chase Farm Hospitals NHS Trust
Barrie White	Neurosurgeon, Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust

NCGC staff

Name	Role
Joanna Ashe	Senior Information Scientist
Liz Avital	Associate Director
Ian Bullock	Chief Operating Officer
Taryn Krause	Senior Project Manager and Research Fellow
Kate Lovibond	Senior Health Economist
Norma O'Flynn	Clinical Director
Silvia Rabar	Senior Project Manager and Research Fellow

Acknowledgments

The development of this guidance was greatly assisted by the following people:

- Zarif Jabbar-Lopez (NCGC Research Fellow)
- Lyn Knott (NICE Senior Medical Editor)
- Fatema Limbada (NCGC Project Coordinator)
- Jill Parnham (NCGC Operations Director)
- Jacoby Patterson (Systematic Reviewer)
- Robert Pitcher (NCGC Research Fellow)
- Katie Jones (NCGC Project Manager)
- Katie Prickett (NICE Medical Editor)
- Gill Ritchie (NCGC Operations Director)
- Rachel Ryle (NICE Commissioning Manager)
- Katrina Sparrow (NCGC Senior Research Fellow)
- Nick Staples (NICE Project Manager)
- Hati Zorba (NCGC Project Coordinator)

Acronyms and abbreviations

A&E	Accident and Emergency
ARR	Absolute Risk Reduction
DH	Department of Health
ED	Emergency Department
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
GDG	Guidance Development Group
GP	General Practitioner
HES	Hospital Episode Statistics
HTA	Health Technology Assessment
ICER	Incremental cost-effectiveness ratio
ITT	Intention to Treat
MD	Mean Difference
NCGC	National Clinical Guideline Centre
NHS	National Health Service
NICE	National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
NNT	Number Needed to Treat
NS	Non-significant (not statistically significant)
OR	Odds Ratio
PICO	Framework incorporating Patients, Interventions, Comparison and Outcome
PSA	Probabilistic Sensitivity Analysis
QALY	Quality-Adjusted Life Year
RCT	Randomised Controlled Trial
RR	Relative Risk
RRR	Relative Risk Reduction
SD	Standard Deviation
SMD	Standardised Mean Difference
STD	Sexually Transmitted Disease
WHO	World Health Organization

1 Setting the scene

The NHS Constitution promotes 'high quality care for all'. In setting out clearly what Professor Lord Darzi (2008)[13] saw as the enduring principles and values of the NHS, the constitution provided clear signposting to the rights and responsibilities for patients, public and staff. Key aspects of this important legislation are:

- Empowering all patients and the public
- Empowering and valuing staff
- Creating shared purpose, values and principles
- Strengthening accountability through national standards for patients.

Quality as understood from a patient's perspective was highlighted in the follow up report 'High Quality Care for All – our journey so far'[14]. It defined three aspects that matter to patients; their experience, the effectiveness of care interventions and the safe delivery of healthcare. While significant investment has created new learning in relation to clinical effectiveness and safety, our understanding of what matters to patients in relation to their experience of healthcare and how this can be improved is still developing.

The longest running survey of public satisfaction with the NHS is the British Social Attitudes (BSA) survey, which provides indicative trends from a 'user of healthcare' perspective. First conducted in 1983, it captures the public's attitudes in relation to satisfaction, providing a useful proxy measure of what the general population think and feel about what is undoubtedly our most important public service. The latest BSA survey reported that 64% of the British public are either very or quite satisfied with the NHS, which in fact is the highest level achieved over the last 3 decades and is part of an upward trend since 2002[51]. Appleby (2011)[3] reinforces the value of the NHS to the general public through the work of Ipsos-Mori's monthly polling, where it is consistently reported that experience of NHS care remains one of the "most important issues facing Britain today."[38]. The concept of satisfaction has been explored in various formats over the last two decades within the NHS; it is now widely acknowledged that it is a poor indicator for evaluating quality from a patient experience perspective. The NHS survey data[7] aims to capture multiple dimensions of patient experience and has strengthened evaluation of service delivery and experience, providing insight into areas of healthcare which need focussed improvement. The 2010 adult inpatients survey involved 162 acute NHS trusts in England, with responses from over 66,000 patients, achieved a response rate of 50%.

Despite the improvement in services suggested by surveys, variability of patient experience is well reported[33]. Patient experience is complex and multi-factorial and includes factors centred on services and individual healthcare professionals and also factors which are individual to each patient. Examples of service factors include access to healthcare services and the quality of information available, while the ability of healthcare professionals to facilitate joint decision making also influence experience. Each patient also brings individual factors such as previous experience. All impact on the quality of individual experience during each patient's personal journey.

In trying to estimate policy development impact, independent research has shown[12,45] the NHS has made good progress in improving the overall quality of care for patients. This initially tended to be focussed on waiting times, staffing levels and physical infrastructure. This failed to explore patient experience as individual recipients of healthcare and establish what is important for them. In a King's Fund Report (2010, p76)[121] reviewing progress made by the NHS over the last decade, in relation to patient experience they establish that there are two particularly weak areas ' the need for better information and for more involvement for patients'.

Understanding what provokes individuals to complain and pursue litigation about their experience of healthcare is helpful in informing how we plan and achieve better patient experience. Data relating

to this is available through the NHS Information Centre[97] who report that "the highest percentage of written complaints (42.2% or 42,727) concerned the subject area *All aspects of clinical treatment*, a 0.8 percentage point increase from 2008-09. This was followed in turn by *Attitude of staff* (12.2% or 12,331) and *Outpatient Appointments, delay/cancellation* with 10.6% or 10,710 (12.6% or 11,332 and 10.9% or 9,738 respectively in 2008-09). Given that over 50%, as a crude indicator, of all complaints relate to direct patient interaction with healthcare professionals, this data profile supports the NHS Confederation's assumption that improving patient experience requires a culture shift[96].

The NHS Confederation report [96] establishes that patient experience should examine all aspects of care delivery which includes the individual's first point of contact. It goes on to establish that "improving the experiences of all patients starts by treating each of them individually to ensure they receive the right care, at the right time, in the right way for them." The NHS Confederation report explores policy levers that can perhaps bring the intended aim to be realised, by 'including patient experience as a measurable outcome of care in the NHS outcomes framework, providing incentives through the Commissioning for Quality and Innovation (CQUIN) payment framework, and patient reported outcome measures (PROMs) will all play an important role in helping make patient experience a priority. However, national systems alone will not be the answer. For patients' experiences to shape services and become a priority for staff, a big cultural shift at many hospitals is needed.'

As an emerging concept, patient experience is establishing itself as a key determinant in informing commissioning decisions and in shaping healthcare delivery. Whilst this may seem obvious, historically the approach to patient involvement has been limited. Since 2000 NICE has emphasised the importance of patient involvement in all aspects of their work programme. With over 700 pieces of guidance produced over the last decade, patients have routinely been involved in independent advisory groups who clinically interpret evidence with their healthcare professional colleagues to form recommendations for practice. Within the context of this work programme, the emphasis has tended to be on what can be done to improve healthcare outcomes through clinical and cost effectiveness recommendations. More latterly, the importance of asking the question 'how do healthcare interventions and healthcare professionals improve patient experience?' has emerged. This question has been prioritised by the previous and current Coalition governments, and is the focus of a number of current work streams commissioned by the Department of Health[41,95,100,104].

Historically, measures of experience have not been robustly developed or tested, the consequence being potential skewing of data and what should be a cautious approach in responding to this data. Trying to measure quality is by nature complex and multi-factorial (for example: process measures, outcome measures, patient reported outcome measures), but highly relevant when considering how the full impact of this guidance can be realised in time series measurement that will establish sustainable improvement. Inevitably more work is needed in developing more accurate measures that better report patient experience. It is measurement of effect that will lead to sustainable improvement.

This guidance focuses on generic adult patient experiences and is relevant for all people using adult NHS services (excluding mental health services – see guidance for Service user experience in adult mental health). It is unusual in that the guidance is non population and non setting specific, which whilst providing generic guidance does limit the opportunity to be more specific when making recommendations. Key to 'joining up' previously published NICE guidelines (particularly over the last five years) the intention was to provide clear directive recommendations that are focused on improving patient experience. The importance of all three contributors to quality reflects the concept of health evaluation first proposed by Professor Sir Richard Doll (1974)[17], who argued that health care needs to be evaluated according to three key criteria – clinical effectiveness, economic efficiency and social acceptability. While social acceptability was not defined in detail, recent work has developed this concept into the idea of patient-based evidence, which should sit alongside clinical and economic forms of evidence (Staniszewska et al 2010)[117]. The value of patients

involvement is not a new concept, the revered physician Sir William Osler (1849 – 1919) in a speech marking the opening of an extension to the Boston Medical Library in 1901 said 'to study the phenomenon of disease without book is to sail an uncharted sea, while to study books without patients is not to go to sea at all.'[103]. Such evidence is vital in understanding the acceptability, appropriateness and effectiveness of care from the patient perspective. This guidance benefits from multiple evidence and data sources; research evidence, previously published NICE guideline recommendations, national survey data and a consensus processes to develop recommendations. The process has identified key themes to patient experience and resulted in an understanding of how improvements can be made. These recommendations are further distilled into commissioning guidance in a parallel publication - the quality standard for patient experience.

The particular journey that the guidance development group embarked upon has been both challenging and rewarding. Developing guidance in a non clinical topic, non setting and non population specific areas have at times been both demanding and stimulating. In order to capture what is important to patients, we have adopted a pragmatic and often rapid evidence synthesis approach and combined multiple evidence sources to ensure that the guidance accurately reflects the current context. The importance of effective patient involvement within the guidance development group cannot be over emphasised. Patient members together with their healthcare professional colleagues have explored key concepts in determining what the national standard should be, consistent with the NHS constitution. This guidance meets key aspects outlined in the NHS constitution, with particular emphasis on creating a baseline (national standards) from which improvement in the quality of patient experience can be routinely measured. In focussing the scope of this work, it was agreed with NICE that development should not address issues to do with the physical environment where patients receive care, and specific issues to do with patient safety. The full implementation of this guidance is possible if local providers exercise the 'local freedoms' that the constitution advocates in pursuit of excellence in the NHS.

Our aim is that this guidance will provide both the evidence for and the direction to create sustainable change that results in a 'NHS cultural shift' that is required in order to produce care that is effective, acceptable and appropriate for patients. The cultural shift referred to in this document is about refocusing the attention of all those who deliver NHS services towards key aspects (guidance themes) that patients themselves identify to be important. This guidance provides the evidence and expert consensus base to create sustainable change in directing commissioning and clinician behaviours to meet this challenge.

In being committed to the central position and importance of the individual experience of healthcare, one might naturally ask, 'what can I do?' Sir William Osler advises.....'live neither in the past nor in the future, but let each day's work absorb your entire energies, and satisfy your widest ambition.'[102]

Summary of key messages and focus for this guidance

This guidance is directed to all NHS services, including primary and community care, e.g. NHS dentistry services as well as district nursing and health visitor services, and hospital inpatient and outpatient care. The guidance is directed to all staff involved in providing NHS services. Many interactions are with clinically trained staff but interaction with non-clinical staff can have a profound effect on patient experience of care. As the guidance is generic in nature we have concentrated on core areas such as staff-patient interaction. There are inevitably a large number of areas not covered and are important for patient experience. Most frameworks of patient experience include the physical environment and access but to enable us to develop guidance in the time available it was agreed with NICE that we would not look at these. There are many groups of patients who have needs beyond those that generic guidance can cover. Patient experience issues specific to particular topics will be covered as usual in topic specific guidance and quality standards.

Many of the recommendations in this guidance overlap with recommendations from policy documents and codes of professional organisations. The inclusion of these items in quality standards will allow the NHS to be held to account for the delivery of these key areas for patient experience.

2 Development of the guidance

2.1 What is a NICE clinical guideline?

NICE clinical guidelines are recommendations for the care of individuals in specific clinical conditions or circumstances within the NHS – from prevention and self-care through primary and secondary care to more specialised services.

NICE clinical guidelines can:

- provide recommendations for the treatment and care of people by health professionals
- be used to develop standards to assess the clinical practice of individual health professionals
- be used in the education and training of health professionals
- help patients to make informed decisions
- improve communication between patient and health professional

While guidelines assist the practice of healthcare professionals, they do not replace their knowledge and skills.

We produce our guidelines using the following steps:

- Guideline topic is referred to NICE from the Department of Health
- Stakeholders register an interest in the guideline and are consulted throughout the development process.
- The scope is prepared by the National Clinical Guideline Centre (NCGC)
- The NCGC establishes a guideline development group
- A draft guideline is produced after the group assesses the available evidence and makes recommendations
- There is a consultation on the draft guideline.
- The final guideline is produced.

The process for the development of this guidance differed from process used to develop a clinical guideline. This occurred because of the short timeline associated with the remit. The scope and areas to be included in the guidance was agreed between NICE and the Department of Health and the scope placed on the NICE website. Full consultation of the draft guidance with stakeholders occurred. Further details of development of the guidance are outlined in chapter 3.

The NCGC and NICE produce a number of versions of this guidance:

- the full guidance contains all the recommendations, plus details of the methods used and the underpinning evidence
- the NICE version lists the recommendations
- the NICE pathway is a practical online resource for healthcare professionals that contains all the recommendations, as well as links to related NICE guidance and other NICE products
- information for the public ('understanding NICE guidance' or UNG) is written using suitable language for people without specialist medical knowledge.

This version is the full version. The other versions can be downloaded from NICE at www.nice.org.uk

2.2 Remit

NICE received the remit for this guidance from the Department of Health. They commissioned the NCGC to produce the guidance.

The remit for this guidance is:

"To produce a quality standard and guidance on patient experience in generic terms."

2.3 Who developed this guidance?

A multidisciplinary Guidance Development Group (GDG) comprising professional group members and consumer representatives of the main stakeholders developed this guidance (see section on Guidance Development Group Membership and acknowledgements).

The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence funds the National Clinical Guideline Centre (NCGC) and thus supported the development of this guidance. The GDG was convened by the NCGC and chaired by Sophie Staniszewska in accordance with guidance from the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE).

The group met every four weeks during the development of the guidance. At the start of the guidance development process all GDG members declared interests including consultancies, fee-paid work, share-holdings, fellowships and support from the healthcare industry. At all subsequent GDG meetings, members declared arising conflicts of interest, which were also recorded (Appendix H).

Members were either required to withdraw completely or for part of the discussion if their declared interest made it appropriate. The details of declared interests and the actions taken are shown in Appendix H.

Staff from the NCGC provided methodological support and guidance for the development process. The team working on the guidance included a project manager, systematic reviewer, health economist and information scientist. They undertook systematic searches of the literature, appraised the clinical evidence and cost effectiveness analysis where appropriate and drafted the guidance in collaboration with the GDG.

2.4 What this guidance covers

The guidance and quality standard will outline a level of service that people using adult NHS services (excluding adult mental health services) should expect to receive. This includes primary and community care (including dental care and hospital services).

It was agreed with NICE that because of time constraints the scope of the guidance needed to be constrained and would focus on clinician/patient interaction and organisational issues.

For further details please refer to the scope in Appendix A and the review questions in Appendix D.

2.5 What this guidance does not cover

This guidance does not cover:

- People using NHS services for mental health.
- Carers of people using NHS services. The guidance and quality standard will examine the role of carers in the experience of people using NHS services but will not address carers' experiences of services.

It is recognised that some people or groups may have had poor experiences of healthcare and need additional consideration in the delivery of high quality care (for example, because of their age, disability, race, religion or belief). The specific needs of such people or groups will not be addressed within this guidance and quality standard but the principles may be of use in local strategies to narrow inequalities in patient experience.

The guidance is not intended to address aspects of patient experience that are particular to specific conditions. Those areas will continue be addressed in NICE guidance and quality standards specific to those conditions.

2.6 Relationships between this guidance and other NICE guidance

NICE Related Guidance: Service user experience in adult mental health. NICE guidance and quality standard. Published in December 2011.

3 Methods

3.1 Overview of approach to guidance development

In developing this guidance, a pragmatic approach was taken to ensure that the guidance development group had multiple sources of evidence/information (see Figure 1 for a graphical representation) in order to establish what is important to patients when considering their experience of healthcare.

In shaping this work, key sources were:

1. Review of existing patient experience frameworks
2. A Patient Experience Scoping Study – a focussed thematic qualitative overview of literature in three disease areas. The aim of the study was to identify key themes/subthemes important to patients in relation to their experience of healthcare.
3. Review of NHS survey results
4. Review of existing NICE recommendations related to patient experience
5. Systematic reviews of the literature on prioritised topic areas

Drafting of recommendations took into account:

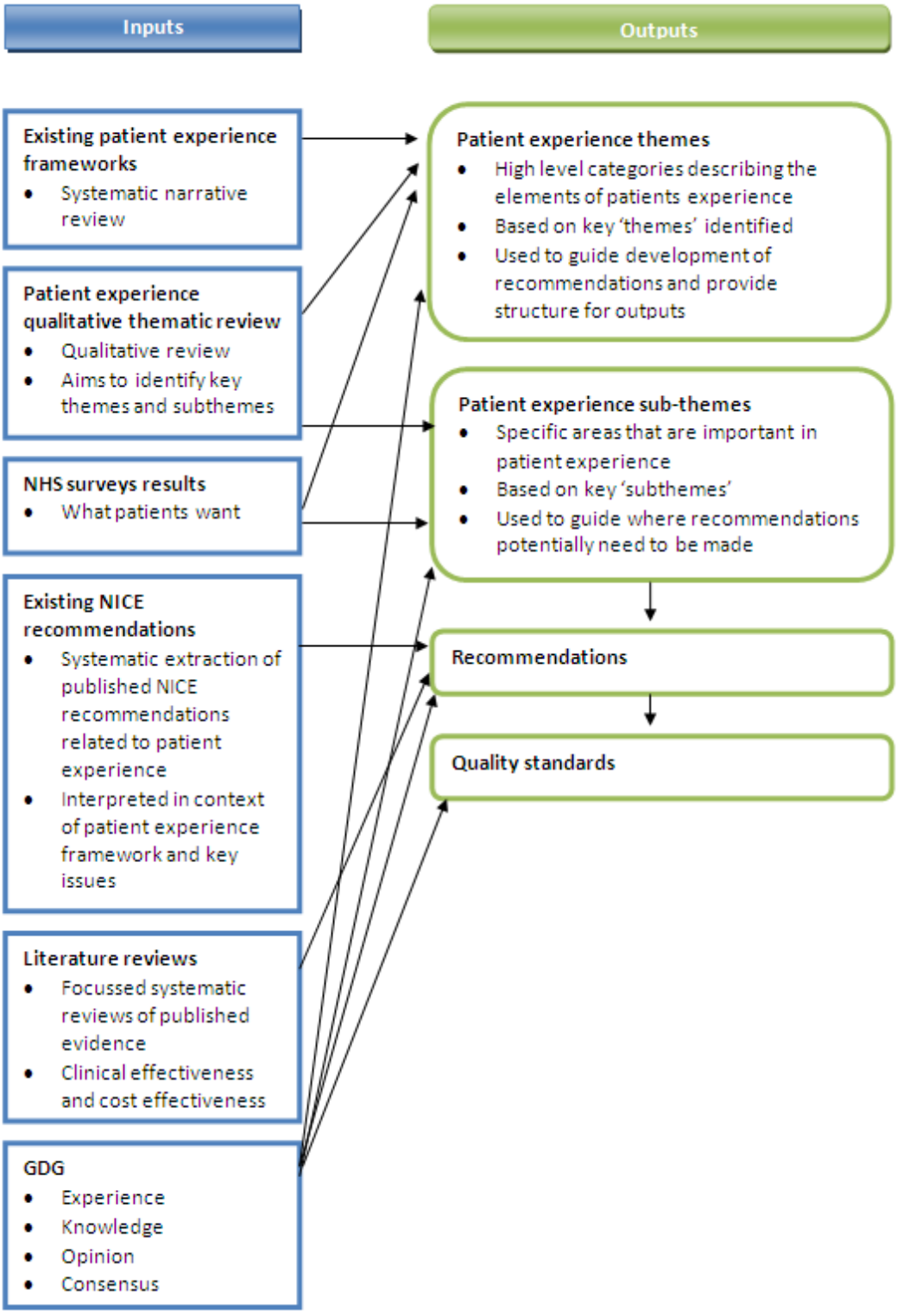
- Existing NICE recommendations related to patient experience
- Selected systematic literature reviews for specific interventions that may improve patient experience
- GDG consensus

Drafting quality standards

- The GDG prioritised key areas and drafted quality statements

The methods used to identify the information described above are detailed in the subsequent sections.

Figure 1: Guidance inputs and outputs



3.1.1 Incorporating economic considerations

In NICE guidelines the GDG are asked to take into account both the clinical and cost effectiveness of interventions. Recommendations should be based on the estimated costs of the treatment strategies in relation to their expected health benefits (that is, their 'cost effectiveness'), rather than on the total cost or resource impact of implementing them. Health benefits are usually considered in terms of 'quality-adjusted life years (QALYs)'. The aim of considering cost effectiveness in clinical guidelines is to maximise the health of the population as a whole using available NHS resources.

On the costs side, conventional methods may be applicable to this guidance, since there may be staff time and other costs associated with improving patient experience. Initial costs may be offset by cost savings, for example if providing patients with appropriate information means that people know to call their assigned nurse when new symptoms emerge rather than attending an accident and emergency unit when symptoms have worsened.

However, in regards to effectiveness there are some additional complexities compared to a standard clinical guideline. While in some cases interventions that improve patient experience may improve 'health' as quantified by QALYs, there is clearly a minimum expectation of what type of patient experience is acceptable, which is not necessarily to do with improving 'health'. For example, a patient and their family have a right to information about their condition and the potential harms and benefits of the treatment they will receive but the aim of this information is not necessarily to improve health. Therefore the quality-adjusted life-year will not capture all the benefits of improved patient experience and it is appropriate to take into account other considerations.

In development of this guidance when quantitative clinical evidence for specific interventions to improve patient experience was identified by a systematic review, evidence of cost effectiveness was also sought (see Section 3.6.4). Consideration was given to undertaking a new cost-effectiveness analysis but it was decided that this would not be useful due to the broad range of interventions and populations. For all areas of the guidance, the GDG was asked to consider whether there was a potential cost implication to their recommendations and whether they considered that the benefits to patients would be large enough to justify any additional costs.

3.2 Existing patient experience frameworks

See Chapter 5 for details of how existing patient experience frameworks were identified and used in the guidance.

3.3 Patient experience scoping study - a focused thematic qualitative

A focused thematic qualitative overview of the literature on patient experience was conducted by the University of Warwick. The NCGC commissioned this work and agreed for the focus of the evidence synthesis to be in core condition areas with high burden of disease impact, by nature including both acute and chronic conditions in adult healthcare. Meta-synthesis of this data produced high level themes which inform the structuring of this guidance. Full methods are described in the full technical report included in Appendix B.

3.4 NHS surveys

See Chapter 5 for details of how NHS survey data fed into the guidance.

3.5 Existing NICE recommendations

NICE guideline recommendations are developed by guideline development groups and subject to public consultation before publication. Recommendations from published guidelines considered relevant to patient experience were extracted from existing Clinical and Cancer Care guidelines published between the 1st January 2008 and 26th January 2011. Only recommendations relevant to adults were considered for inclusion. Recommendations from guidance produced by the National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health, Public Health, Technology Appraisals, Interventional Procedures, and Diagnostic programme at NICE were excluded from review.

After each recommendation was identified from the NICE version of the guideline, the full text guideline was reviewed to determine whether the recommendation was derived from an evidence review or guideline development group consensus. Where no details were given it was assumed the recommendation was based on guideline development group consensus[a]. Some recommendations were noted as being 'consensus based on evidence ', meaning there was an issue or barrier identified but no evidence found about how to overcome this. '

As there was considerable overlap in the themes identified in these recommendations, we did not search guidelines published before January 2008 because we believed we had achieved 'saturation' i.e. there were no new themes emerging that could be used to inform new recommendations on patient experience. Recommendations regarded as potentially applicable to the patient experience guidance were then selected by the Patient Experience guidance development group and adapted using group consensus or evidence to make them transferable across disease populations and non-setting specific.

3.6 Systematic literature reviews

A number of possible topics for review that were based on the themes identified in the qualitative narrative review, recommendations from existing NICE guidance, and those considered important by members of the group based on their experience, were considered. Given the short time frame in which to complete the reviews, the GDG gave priority to topics they believed were underpinned by an evidence base to maximise the use of available resources.

A limited number of systematic literature reviews were undertaken in the areas prioritised by the GDG. Reviews were undertaken in accordance with the methods outlined in the NICE Guidelines Manual 2009[89].

3.6.1 Developing the review questions

Review questions were developed in a PICO framework (patient, intervention, comparison and outcome) for intervention reviews. This was to guide the literature searching process and to facilitate the development of recommendations by the GDG. They were drafted by the NCGC technical team and validated by the GDG. Full review protocols are available in Appendix D.

[a] For details about the consensus process used by these groups, please refer to the methodology section of the original full guideline.

Table 1: Review questions and outcomes

Chapter	Review questions
9	What is the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of interventions to improve the continuity of care* of patients in the National Health Service?
10	What is the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of decision aids versus no intervention, usual care, alternative interventions, or a combination?
10	What methods of presenting information improve a patient's understanding of the risks and benefits associated with their treatment options?
10	What generic components of patient education programmes^ improve patient experience?

**We initially aimed to identify evidence for any intervention that might be applied to operationalise continuity of care (for example: key workers, hand-held records, etc). However due to complexities with the evidence identified and the time constraints of development, midwife-led care was selected for full review as there was a clear mechanism for operationalising continuity of care in that clinical area that was well defined in the literature. The aim of this review was to see if components of care could be identified that specifically improve continuity and could be generalised across disease areas.*

^ Recent NICE guidelines have made a number of recommendations about education programmes for specific conditions. The GDG considered that patient education programmes had an important role to play in certain conditions where they had been implemented following consideration of the evidence on effective and cost effective. However, it was noted that outcomes were likely to vary by specific intervention and specific condition (for example, people with more severe conditions may be more willing to make behavioural changes) and so this consideration was best retained within condition-specific guidelines. This review aimed to examine whether there was evidence about effectiveness of different generic components of education programmes for improving outcome. Cost effectiveness evidence was not sought as analyses would not be performed for generic components and disease specific analyses would not be generalisable.

3.6.2 Searching for evidence

3.6.2.1 Clinical literature search

Systematic literature searches were undertaken to identify evidence within published literature in order to answer the review questions for continuity of care, risk communication and patient education programmes as per The Guidelines Manual 2009[89]. No search was taken for the review question on patient decision aids as we accepted the 2011 Stacey Cochrane review as is with its search cut-off December 2009. Clinical databases were searched using relevant medical subject headings, free-text terms and study type filters where appropriate. Studies published in languages other than English were not reviewed. Where possible, searches were restricted to articles published in English language. All searches were conducted on core databases, MEDLINE, Embase, Cinahl and The Cochrane Library. The additional subject specific database PsychInfo was also used. All searches were updated on 9th May 2011. No papers after this date were considered.

Search strategies were checked by looking at reference lists of relevant key papers, checking search strategies in other systematic reviews and asking the GDG for known studies. The questions, the study types applied, the databases searched and the years covered can be found in Appendix E.

3.6.2.2 Health economic literature search

Systematic literature searches were also undertaken to identify health economic evidence within published literature relevant to the identified areas of decision aids and midwife-led care. The evidence was identified by conducting a broad search relating to the topic areas in the NHS economic evaluation database (NHS EED), the Health Economic Evaluations Database (HEED) and health technology assessment (HTA) databases with no date restrictions. Additionally, the search was run on MEDLINE and Embase, with a specific economic filter, from 2010, to ensure recent publications that had not yet been indexed by these databases were identified. Studies published in languages

other than English were not reviewed. Where possible, searches were restricted to articles published in English language.

The search strategies for health economics are included in Appendix E. All searches were updated on 10th May 2011. No papers published after this date were considered.

3.6.3 Evidence of effectiveness

The research fellow:

- Identified potentially relevant studies for each review question from the relevant search results by reviewing titles and abstracts – full papers were then obtained.
- Reviewed full papers against pre-specified inclusion / exclusion criteria to identify studies that addressed the review question in the appropriate population and reported on outcomes of interest (review protocols are included in Appendix D).
- Critically appraised relevant studies using the appropriate checklist as specified in The Guidelines Manual[89].
- Extracted key information about the study's methods and results into evidence tables (evidence tables are included in Appendix F).
- Generated summaries of the evidence (included in the relevant chapter write-ups)

3.6.3.1 Inclusion/exclusion

See the review protocols in Appendix D for full details.

3.6.4 Evidence of cost-effectiveness

The health economist:

- Identified potentially relevant studies for each review question from the economic search results by reviewing titles and abstracts – full papers were then obtained.
- Reviewed full papers against pre-specified inclusion / exclusion criteria to identify relevant studies (see below for details).
- Critically appraised relevant studies using the economic evaluations checklist as specified in The Guidelines Manual[89].
- Extracted key information about the study's methods and results into evidence tables (evidence tables are included in Appendix G).
- Generated summaries of the evidence in NICE economic evidence profiles (included in the relevant chapter write-ups) – see below for details.

3.6.4.1 Inclusion/exclusion

Full economic evaluations (studies comparing costs and health consequences of alternative courses of action: cost–utility, cost-effectiveness, cost-benefit and cost-consequence analyses) and comparative costing studies that addressed the review question in the relevant population were considered potentially applicable as economic evidence.

Studies that only reported cost per hospital (not per patient), or only reported average cost effectiveness without disaggregated costs and effects, were excluded. Abstracts, posters, reviews, letters/editorials, foreign language publications and unpublished studies were excluded. Studies judged to had an applicability rating of 'not applicable' were excluded (this included studies that took the perspective of a non-OECD [Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development] country).

Remaining studies were prioritised for inclusion based on their relative applicability to the development of this guidance and the study limitations. For example, if a high quality, directly applicable UK analysis was available other less relevant studies may not have been included. Where exclusions occurred on this basis, this is noted in the relevant section.

For more details about the assessment of applicability and methodological quality see the economic evaluation checklist (The Guidelines Manual, Appendix H[89] and the health economics research protocol in Appendix D.

3.6.4.2 NICE economic evidence profiles

The NICE economic evidence profile has been used to summarise cost and cost-effectiveness estimates. The economic evidence profile shows, for each economic study, an assessment of applicability and methodological quality, with footnotes indicating the reasons for the assessment. These assessments were made by the health economist using the economic evaluation checklist from The Guidelines Manual, Appendix H[89]. It also shows incremental costs, incremental outcomes (for example, QALYs) and the incremental cost-effectiveness ratio from the primary analysis, as well as information about the assessment of uncertainty in the analysis. See Table 2 for more details.

If a non-UK study was included in the profile, the results were converted into pounds sterling using the appropriate purchasing power parity[101].

Table 2: Content of NICE economic profile

Item	Description
Study	First author name, reference, date of study publication and country perspective.
Limitations	An assessment of methodological quality of the study*: • Minor limitations – the study meets all quality criteria, or the study fails to meet one or more quality criteria, but this is unlikely to change the conclusions about cost effectiveness. • Potentially serious limitations – the study fails to meet one or more quality criteria, and this could change the conclusion about cost effectiveness • Very serious limitations – the study fails to meet one or more quality criteria and this is very likely to change the conclusions about cost effectiveness. Studies with very serious limitations would usually be excluded from the economic profile table.
Applicability	An assessment of applicability of the study to the clinical guideline, the current NHS situation and NICE decision-making*: • Directly applicable – the applicability criteria are met, or one or more criteria are not met but this is not likely to change the conclusions about cost effectiveness. • Partially applicable – one or more of the applicability criteria are not met, and this might possibly change the conclusions about cost effectiveness. • Not applicable – one or more of the applicability criteria are not met, and this is likely to change the conclusions about cost effectiveness.
Other comments	Particular issues that should be considered when interpreting the study.
Incremental cost	The mean cost associated with one strategy minus the mean cost of a comparator strategy.
Incremental effects	The mean QALYs (or other selected measure of health outcome) associated with one strategy minus the mean QALYs of a comparator strategy.
ICER	Incremental cost-effectiveness ratio: the incremental cost divided by the respective QALYs gained.
Uncertainty	A summary of the extent of uncertainty about the ICER reflecting the results of deterministic or probabilistic sensitivity analyses, or stochastic analyses of trial data, as appropriate.

*Limitations and applicability were assessed using the economic evaluation checklist from The Guidelines Manual, Appendix H[89]

3.6.4.3 Cost-effectiveness criteria

NICE's report 'Social value judgements: principles for the development of NICE guidance' sets out the principles that GDGs should consider when judging whether an intervention offers good value for money[86].

In general, an intervention was considered to be cost effective if either of the following criteria applied (given that the estimate was considered plausible):

a. The intervention dominated other relevant strategies (that is, it was both less costly in terms of resource use and more clinically effective compared with all the other relevant alternative strategies), or
b. The intervention cost less than £20,000 per quality-adjusted life-year (QALY) gained compared with the next best strategy.

If the GDG recommended an intervention that was estimated to cost more than £20,000 per QALY gained, or did not recommend one that was estimated to cost less than £20,000 per QALY gained, the reasons for this decision are discussed explicitly in the 'from evidence to recommendations' section of the relevant chapter with reference to issues regarding the plausibility of the estimate or to the factors set out in the 'Social value judgements: principles for the development of NICE guidance'[86].

3.7 Developing recommendations

Over the course of the guidance development process, the GDG was presented with:

- The patient experience scoping study – a focused thematic qualitative overview, undertaken by Warwick University (Appendix B).
- A table of existing NICE published recommendations from existing Clinical and Cancer Care guidelines published between the 1st January 2008 and 26th January 2011 (Appendix C).
- Evidence tables of the clinical and economic evidence reviewed from the literature. All evidence tables are in Appendices F and G.
- Summary of clinical and economic evidence and quality (as presented in Chapters 9 and 10).

Recommendations were drafted on the basis of the GDG interpretation of the available evidence, taking into account the balance of benefits, harms, and costs. When clinical and economic evidence was of poor quality, conflicting or absent, the GDG drafted recommendations based on their expert opinion. The considerations for making consensus based recommendations include the balance between potential harms and benefits, economic or implications compared to the benefits, current practices, recommendations made in other relevant guidelines, patient preferences and equality issues. The consensus recommendations were done through discussions in the GDG. The main considerations specific to each recommendation are outlined in the link from evidence to recommendation sections in each chapter.

3.8 Validation process

The guidance is subject to a four week public consultation and feedback as part of the quality assurance and peer review the document. All comments received from registered stakeholders are responded to in turn and published on the NICE website.

3.9 Updating the guidance

Following publication, and in accordance with the NICE guidelines manual, NICE will ask a National Collaborating Centre or the National Clinical Guideline Centre to advise NICE's Guidance executive whether the evidence base has progressed significantly to alter the guidance recommendations and warrant an update.

3.10 Disclaimer

Health care providers need to use clinical judgement, knowledge and expertise when deciding whether it is appropriate to apply guidances. The recommendations cited here are a guide and may not be appropriate for use in all situations. The decision to adopt any of the recommendations cited here must be made by the practitioners in light of individual patient circumstances, the wishes of the patient, clinical expertise and resources.

The National Clinical Guideline Centre disclaims any responsibility for damages arising out of the use or non-use of this guidance and the literature used in support of this guidance.

3.11 Funding

The National Clinical Guideline Centre was commissioned by the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence to undertake the work on this guidance.

4 Guidance summary

4.1 Full list of recommendations

Knowing the patient as an individual

1. Develop an understanding of the patient as an individual, including how the condition affects the person, and how the person's circumstances and experiences affect their condition and treatment.

2. Ensure that factors such as physical or learning disabilities, sight, speech or hearing problems and difficulties with reading, understanding or speaking English are addressed so that the patient is able to participate as fully as possible in consultations and care.

3. Ask the patient about and take into account any factors, such as their domestic, social and work situation and their previous experience of healthcare, that may:
   - impact on their health condition and/or
   - affect their ability or willingness to engage with healthcare services and/or
   - affect their ability to manage their own care and make decisions about self-management and lifestyle choices.

4. Listen to and address any health beliefs, concerns and preferences that the patient has, and be aware that these affect how and whether they engage with treatment. Respect their views and offer support if needed to help them engage effectively with healthcare services and participate in self-management as appropriate.

5. Avoid making assumptions about the patient based on their appearance or other personal characteristics.

6. Take into account the requirements of the Equality Act 2010 and make sure services are equally accessible to, and supportive of, all people using adult NHS services.

7. If appropriate, discuss with the patient their need for psychological, social, spiritual and/or financial support. Offer support and information to the patient and/or direct them to sources of support and information. Review their circumstances and need for support regularly.

Essential requirements of care

Respect for the patient

8. All staff involved in providing NHS services[b] should:
   - treat patients with respect, kindness, dignity, compassion, understanding, courtesy and honesty
   - respect the patient's right to confidentiality
   - not discuss the patient in their presence without involving them in the discussion.

9. Introduce students and anyone not directly involved in the delivery of care before consultations or meetings begin and let the patient decide if they want them to stay.

b This includes people such as chaplains, domestic staff, porters, receptionists and volunteers, as well as healthcare professionals.

Patient concerns

10. Be prepared to raise and discuss sensitive issues (such as sexual activity, continence or end-of-life care), as these are unlikely to be raised by some patients.

11. Listen to and discuss any fears or concerns the patient has in a non-judgemental and sensitive manner.

12. If anxiety disorder or depression is suspected, follow the appropriate stepped-care model recommended in:
    - 'Generalised anxiety disorder and panic disorder (with or without agoraphobia) in adults' (NICE clinical guideline 113) or
    - 'Depression' (NICE clinical guideline 90) or
    - 'Depression in adults with a chronic physical health problem' (NICE clinical guideline 91).

Nutrition, pain management and personal needs

13. All healthcare professionals directly involved in patient care should receive education and training, relevant to their post, on the importance of:
    - providing adequate and appropriate nutrition
    - assessing and managing pain.

14. Ensure that the patient's nutrition and hydration are adequate at all times, if the patient is unable to manage this themselves, by:
    - providing regular food and fluid of adequate quantity and quality in an environment conducive to eating
    - placing food and drink where the patient can reach them easily
    - encouraging and helping the patient to eat and drink if needed
    - providing appropriate support, such as modified eating and/or drinking aids.

15. If a patient is unable to manage their own pain relief:
    - do not assume that pain relief is adequate
    - ask them regularly about pain
    - assess pain using a pain scale if necessary (for example, on a scale of 1 to 10)
    - provide pain relief and adjust as needed.

16. Ensure that the patient's personal needs (for example, relating to continence, personal hygiene and comfort) are regularly reviewed and addressed. Regularly ask patients who are unable to manage their personal needs what help they need. Address their needs at the time of asking and ensure maximum privacy.

Patient independence

17. Give patients using adult NHS services the support they need to maintain their independence as far as possible

18. When patients in hospital are taking medicines for long-term conditions, assess and discuss with them whether they are able and would prefer to manage these medicines themselves.

Consent and capacity

19. Obtain and document informed consent from the patient, in accordance with:
    - in England, Department of Health policy and guidance (see www.dh.gov.uk/en/DH_103643)

- in Wales, advice from the Welsh Government (see www.wales.nhs.uk/consent).

20. Assess the patient's capacity to make each decision using the principles in the Mental Capacity Act (2005) (see www.dh.gov.uk/en/SocialCare/Deliveringsocialcare/MentalCapacity).

Tailoring healthcare services for each patient

An individualised approach to services

21. Adopt an individualised approach to healthcare services that is tailored to the patient's needs and circumstances, taking into account their ability to access services, personal preferences and coexisting conditions. Review the patient's needs and circumstances regularly.

22. Inform the patient about healthcare services and social services (for example, smoking cessation services) that are available locally and nationally. Encourage and support them to access services according to their individual needs and preferences.

23. Give the patient information about relevant treatment options and services that they are entitled to, even if these are not provided locally.

Patient views and preferences

24. Hold discussions in a way that encourages the patient to express their personal needs and preferences for care, treatment, management and self-management. Allow adequate time so that discussions do not feel rushed.

25. Review with the patient at intervals agreed with them:
    - their knowledge, understanding and concerns about their condition and treatments
    - their view of their need for treatment.

26. Accept that the patient may have different views from healthcare professionals about the balance of risks, benefits and consequences of treatments.

27. Accept that the patient has the right to decide not to have a treatment, even if you do not agree with their decision, as long as they have the capacity to make an informed decision (see recommendation 20) and have been given and understand the information needed to do this.

28. Respect and support the patient in their choice of treatment, or if they decide to decline treatment.

29. Ensure that the patient knows that they can ask for a second opinion from a different healthcare professional, and if necessary how they would go about this.

Involvement of family members and carers

30. Clarify with the patient at the first point of contact whether and how they would like their partner, family members and/or carers to be involved in key decisions about the management of their condition. Review this regularly. If the patient agrees, share information with their partner, family members and/or carers.

31. If the patient cannot indicate their agreement to share information, ensure that family members and/or carers are kept involved and appropriately informed, but be mindful of any potentially sensitive issues and the duty of confidentiality.

Feedback and complaints

32. Encourage the patient to give feedback about their care. Respond to any feedback given.

33. If necessary, provide patients with information about complaints procedures and help them to access these.

Continuity of care and relationships

34. Assess each patient's requirement for continuity of care and how that requirement will be met. This may involve the patient seeing the same healthcare professional throughout a single episode of care, or ensuring continuity within a healthcare team.

35. For patients who use a number of different services (for example, services in both primary and secondary care, or attending different clinics in a hospital), ensure effective coordination and prioritisation of care to minimise the impact on the patient.

36. Ensure clear and timely exchange of patient information:
    - between healthcare professionals (particularly at the point of any transitions in care)
    - between healthcare and social care professionals (with the patient's consent).

37. All healthcare professionals directly involved in a patient's care should introduce themselves to the patient.

38. Inform the patient about:
    - who is responsible for their care and treatment
    - the roles and responsibilities of the different members of the healthcare team
    - the communication about their care that takes place between members of the healthcare team.

39. Give the patient (and their family members and/or carers if appropriate) information about what to do and who to contact in different situations, such as 'out of hours' or in an emergency.

Enabling patients to actively participate in their care

Communication

40. Ensure that the environment is conducive to discussion and that the patient's privacy is respected, particularly when discussing sensitive, personal issues.

41. Maximise patient participation in communication by, for example:
    - maintaining eye contact with the patient (if culturally appropriate)
    - positioning yourself at the same level as the patient
    - ensuring that the patient is appropriately covered (if applicable).

42. Ask the patient how they wish to be addressed and ensure that their choice is respected and used.

43. Establish the most effective way of communicating with each patient and explore ways to improve communication. Examples include using pictures, symbols, large print, Braille, different languages, sign language or communications aids, or involving an interpreter, a patient advocate or family members.

44. Ensure that the accent, use of idiom and dialect of both the patient and the healthcare professionals are taken into account when considering communication needs.

45. Avoid using jargon. Use words the patient will understand, define unfamiliar words and confirm understanding by asking questions.

46. Use open-ended questions to encourage discussion.

47. Summarise information at the end of a consultation and check that the patient has understood the most important information.

48. Offer the patient copies of letters between healthcare professionals. These should be in a form that is accessible to the patient and if possible use language that they will understand. Answer any questions the patient may have about these.

49. All staff involved in providing NHS services should have demonstrated competency in relevant communication skills.

Information

50. Give the patient information, and the support they need to make use of the information, in order to promote their active participation in care and self-management.

51. Give the patient both oral and written information.

52. Give the patient information in an accessible format, at the first and subsequent visits. Possible formats include using written information, pictures, symbols, large print, Braille and different languages.

53. Explore the patient's preferences about the level and type of information they want. Based on this, give the patient (and their family members and/or carers if appropriate) clear, consistent, evidence-based, tailored information throughout all stages of their care. This should include, but not be limited to, information on:
    - their condition and any treatment options
    - where they will be seen
    - who will undertake their care
    - expected waiting times for consultations, investigations and treatments.

54. Ensure that mechanisms are in place to:
    - provide information about appointments to patients who require information in non-standard formats
    - alert services of any need for interpreters and non-standard formats to be available when patients move between services.

55. Ask the patient whether they want to be accompanied at consultations by a family member, friend, or advocate, and whether they would like to take notes and/or an audio recording of the consultation.

56. Give the patient (and/or their family members and carers) information to enable them to use any medicines and equipment correctly. Ensure that the patient and their family members and carers feel adequately informed, prepared and supported to use medicines and equipment and to carry out self-care and self-management.

57. Advise the patient where they might find reliable high-quality information and support after consultations, from sources such as national and local support groups, networks and information services.

58. Give the patient regular, accurate information about the duration of any delays during episodes of care.

Shared decision making

59. When discussing decisions about investigations and treatment, do so in a style and manner that enables the patient to express their personal needs and preferences.

60. Give the patient the opportunity to discuss their diagnosis, prognosis and treatment options.

61. When offering any investigations or treatments:
    - explain the medical aims of the proposed care to the patient
    - openly discuss and provide information about the risks, benefits and consequences of the investigation or treatment options (taking into account factors such as coexisting conditions and the patient's preferences)
    - clarify what the patient hopes the treatment will achieve and discuss any misconceptions with them
    - set aside adequate time to allow any questions to be answered, and ask the patient if they would like a further consultation .

62. Accept and acknowledge that patients may vary in their views about the balance of risks, benefits and consequences of treatments.

63. Use the following principles when discussing risks and benefits with a patient:
    - personalise risks and benefits as far as possible
    - use absolute risk rather than relative risk (for example, the risk of an event increases from 1 in 1000 to 2 in 1000, rather than the risk of the event doubles)
    - use natural frequency (for example, 10 in 100) rather than a percentage (10%)
    - be consistent in the use of data (for example, use the same denominator when comparing risk: 7 in 100 for one risk and 20 in 100 for another, rather than 1 in 14 and 1 in 5)
    - present a risk over a defined period of time (months or years) if appropriate (for example, if 100 people are treated for 1 year, 10 will experience a given side effect)
    - include both positive and negative framing (for example, treatment will be successful for 97 out of 100 patients and unsuccessful for 3 out of 100 patients)
    - be aware that different people interpret terms such as rare, unusual and common in different ways, and use numerical data if available
    - think about using a mixture of numerical and pictorial formats (for example, numerical rates and pictograms).

64. Offer support to the patient when they are considering options. Use the principles of shared decision making:
    - ensure that the patient is aware of the options available and explain the risks, benefits and consequences of these
    - check that the patient understands the information
    - encourage the patient to clarify what is important to them, and check that their choice is consistent with this.

65. Be aware of the value and availability of patient decision aids and other forms of decision support such as counselling or coaching. If suitable high-quality decision aids are available, offer them to the patient.

66. Give the patient (and their family members and/or carers if appropriate) adequate time to make decisions about investigations and treatments.

Education programmes

67. Ensure that patient-education programmes:
    - are evidence-based
    - have specific aims and learning objectives
    - meet the needs of the patient (taking into account cultural, linguistic, cognitive and literacy considerations)
    - promote the patient's ability to manage their own health if appropriate.

68. Give the patient the opportunity to take part in evidence-based educational activities, including self-management programmes, that are available and meet the criteria listed in recommendation 67.

5 Themes for patient experience recommendations and quality standards

5.1 Introduction

Question: What areas are important for delivering a good patient experience?

The GDG chose to use a thematic structure to develop recommendations and quality standards for improving the patient experience. The GDG recognised that patient experience can be broadly divided into two parts (1) patient's experience of their symptoms or disorder and (2) experience of care received from health services. Similarly some aspects of patient experience are common to all interactions with the NHS, whereas others may be specific to the setting or type of care for example, an emergency episode versus a long-term condition. The remit for this guidance is for generic patient experience. Both the time available for development of the guidance and the remit limited the areas the GDG included for consideration. The GDG were aware that quality standards were already being developed in specific areas such as End of Life Care.

Three types of evidence were used to inform the GDG discussion and agreement of themes important for patient experience. These were (1) a narrative review of current frameworks of patient experience; (2) a focused thematic qualitative overview of patient experience and (3) results of national surveys of patient experience. Each review is outlined and the GDG discussion and decisions are described below.

5.2 Patient Experience frameworks

What frameworks of Patient Experience are used in healthcare in the NHS and internationally?

Method of review:

A number of frameworks have been developed to describe the important principles of patient experience and thus potentially provide a structure within which to consider patient experience. A search of the literature was undertaken to identify existing patient experience frameworks. Clinical databases were searched using relevant medical subject headings and free-text terms. Where possible, the search was restricted to articles published in the English language. The search was conducted on core databases, MEDLINE, Embase, Cinahl and The Cochrane Library as well as the additional databases PsychInfo, HMIC Health Management Information Consortium and ASSIA: Applied Social Sciences Index and Abstracts. The search was run up to the 10th February 2011. No papers after this date were considered. The full search strategies can be found in Appendix E. This search did not identify relevant frameworks; these were identified by examining policy documents and following up references. The review is not intended to be definitive or exhaustive but to include frameworks that have been influential. The narrative is confined to an outline of the frameworks and how they were developed.

5.2.1 Gerteis and colleagues: through the patient's eyes

Two of the most commonly quoted frameworks; the Institute of Medicine framework and the Picker principles have been developed from the work of Gerteis and colleagues (Gerteis et al)[26]. Gerteis et al (1993)[26] and outline seven dimensions considered important for patient-centred care. They defined patient-centred care as an approach that consciously adopts the patient's perspective. The dimensions were developed from three studies of the experience of hospital care by patients and families. The initial US study involved three focus groups of people recently discharged from hospitals in the Boston area and their families. All patients had received medical or surgical

treatment. This was followed up with telephone interviews using a questionnaire based on the findings of the focus groups. The telephone interviews were conducted with 50 people from five hospitals across the US and 50 of their family members or friends. Focus groups were also conducted with medical and non-medical hospital staff.

The developers used their framework to design and perform a nationwide survey to assess the quality of care across the US. 6455 patients and 2000 'care partners' were interviewed. High performing centres were visited to learn what these centres were doing that resulted in better patient experiences. Funding for the work by Gerteis and colleagues was provided by the Picker/Commonwealth Program for Patient-Centred Care. The work was published as 'Through the Patient's Eyes' (Gerteis et al[26]) which elaborates on the individual dimensions, quotes from other research to expand on the dimensions and provides examples of good practice from the site visits.

The dimensions developed by Gerteis and colleagues (1993) [26] were as follows:

1. Respect for Patients Values, Preferences and Expressed Needs
6. Co-ordination and integration of care
7. Information, communication and education
8. Physical comfort
9. Emotional support and alleviation of fear and anxiety
10. Involvement of family and friends
11. Transition and continuity

Each dimension was further described as shown in Table 3.

Table 3: Dimensions of Patient Centred Care in Gerteis et al[26]

Dimensions	Attention required to:
1. Respect for patients views, preferences and expressed needs	Quality of life, involvement in decision making, dignity, needs and autonomy
2. Co-ordination and integration of care	Co-ordination and integrations of clinical care; of ancillary and support services; of 'frontline' patient care
3.Information, communication and education	Information, communication and education on clinical status, progress and prognosis; on processes of care; to facilitate autonomy, self-care and health promotion
4. Physical comfort	Pain management; help with activities of daily living; surroundings and hospital environment
5. Emotional support and alleviation of fear and anxiety	Anxiety over clinical status, treatment and prognosis; over impact of the illness on self and family; over the financial impact of the illness
6. Involvement of family and friends	Accommodation of family and friends, Involving family in decision-making, supporting the family as care-giver, recognising needs of the family
7. Transition and continuity	Information on discharge, continuing care organised, continuing support, who to call for help

5.2.2 Institute of Medicine

The Institute of Medicine (IOM) is an independent, not-for-profit US organisation. It was established in 1970 and is the health arm of the National Academy of Sciences. In 2001 the IOM published a report 'Crossing the Quality Chasm: A New Health System for the 21st Century' (Institute of Medicine 2001)[36]. The report outlined 6 major aims for all health care organisations, stating that health care

should be; safe, effective, patient-centred, timely, efficient and equitable. Patient-centred care was described as encompassing qualities of compassion, empathy, and responsiveness to the needs, values, and expressed preferences of the individual patient.

The IOM identified six dimensions of patient-centred care. These are the dimensions outlined by Gerteis et al (Gerteis et al)[26] although the IOM list amalgamates dimension 7, Transition and continuity (from Gerteis et al) with dimension 2, Co-ordination and integration of care.

Table 4: Dimensions in IOM framework for patient centred care

Dimension	Description (from Crossing the Quality Chasm)
Respect for patients' values, preferences, and expressed needs.	Responds to each patient's wants, needs, and preferences; gives patients opportunities to be informed and involved in medical decision making; guides and supports those providing care in attending to their patients' physical and emotional needs; care is customised and incorporates cultural competence. Patients' preferences are likely to change over time and to depend on the clinical problems in question.
Coordination and integration of care.	Requirement to ensure that accurate and timely information reaches those who need it at the appropriate time; addresses the need to manage smooth transitions from one setting to another or from a health care to a self-care setting.
Information, communication, and education.	People tend to want to know (1) what is wrong (diagnosis) or how to stay well, (2) what is likely to happen and how it will affect them (prognosis), and (3) what can be done to change or manage their prognosis. They need answers that are accurate and in a language they understand. Common to all such interactions is the desire for trustworthy information (often from an individual clinician) that is attentive, responsive, and tailored to an individual's needs.
Physical comfort	Attention to physical comfort implies timely, tailored, and expert management of symptoms such as pain, shortness of breath or other discomfort.
Emotional support—relieving fear and anxiety.	Suffering is more than just physical pain and other distressing symptoms; it also encompasses significant emotional and spiritual dimensions. Patient centred care attends to the anxiety that accompanies all injury and illness, whether due to uncertainty, fear of pain, disability or disfigurement, loneliness, financial impact, or the effect of illness on one's family.
Involvement of family and friends.	Focuses on accommodating family and friends on whom patients may rely, involving them as appropriate in decision making, supporting them as caregivers, making them welcome and comfortable in the care delivery setting, and recognising their needs and contributions.

Goodrich and Cornwell (2008)[27] carried out a literature review around patient-centred care as part of the King's Fund Point of care programme. The literature was mapped to the IOM framework. They

note that the research is 'uneven and highly specialised and the evidence is full of gaps, in particular, dimensions of involvement of family and friends and physical comfort remain unexplored.

5.2.3 Picker Principles

The Picker Institute was founded in the US in 1986 as a not-for -profit organisation to develop and promote a patient-centred approach to healthcare. The Picker Institute was part of the Picker/Commonwealth Fund patient-centred care program which started in 1986 and funded the work of Gerteis et al (1993)[26]. There are eight Picker Principles of patient-centred care[111]. These are the seven dimensions outlined by Gerteis et al (1993) with an eighth dimension 'access to care' added.

'Access to care' is described as follows:

- Patients need to know they can access care when it is needed
- Attention must also be given to time spent waiting for admission or time between admission and allocation to a bed in a ward.

Specific comment re ambulatory care is made by Picker:

- Access to the location of hospitals, clinics and physician offices
- Availability of transportation
- Ease of scheduling appointments
- Availability of appointments when needed
- Accessibility to specialists or specialty services when a referral is made
- Clear instructions provided on when and how to get referrals

5.2.4 National Health Council (2004)

In a report for the US National Health Council in 2004[11], Cronin identified and analysed the concepts that appeared in nine definitions of patient-centred care. The definitions included by Cronin were described in six reports from organisations and three research reports:

1. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (2001),
2. Institute of Medicine (2001)
3. Framework outlined by Gerteis et al in Through the Patients Eyes,
4. Putting patients first (Planetree model) (2003),
5. The Foundation for Accountability (2003) (an Oregon based centre)
6. Integrated Patient-centred care (2002) (a report for the National Health Council)
7. Grin, OW (1994) Patient-centred care: empowering patients to achieve real health care reform Michigan Medicine 93, 25-29
8. Johnson, CL & Cooper PK (1997) Patient-focussed care. What is it? Holistic Nursing Practice 11, 1-7
9. Stewart, M, Brown J, Weston, W, McWhinney, I, McWilliam, C, Freeman, T (1995) Patient-centred Medicine. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications

Forty-eight concepts were embedded in the nine definitions with six elements appearing in three or more models as follows: Education and shared knowledge; Involvement of family and friends; Collaboration and team management; holistic/sensitivity to non-medical/ spiritual dimensions; respect for patients needs and wants and free flow and accessibility of information. Cronin further analysed the 48 concepts according to their target or focus. She suggested there were two primary targets – the health care system and the health professional-patient relationship. These are outlined in Table 5 in alphabetical order.

Table 5: Patient-centred care properties, by target area. Adapted from 'Putting Patients First'[11]

Health professional-patient relationship (in alphabetical order)	Health care system (in alphabetical order)	Both - Professional-patient relationship and health care system (in alphabetical order)
Alleviation of fear/Anxiety	Collaboration between disciplines towards goal of healing	Clarifies/Standardises terminology to improve communication
Being Realistic	Continuity over long term	Communication about care
Education/Shared knowledge	Coordinated and integrated care	Culture supporting positive interaction between patients & caregivers
Emotional/Psycho-social support	Creates new standards/evolves	Equitable treatment for all
Enhancing Dr/patient relationship	Effective professional resources for people who can't manage their own health	Free flow/accessibility of information
Holistic	Focus on expected patient outcomes vs. departmental needs. Incorporate art (music, visual etc.) into patient care	Incorporating prevention/health promotion
Personalization	Incorporate massage/human touch	Involvement of family/friends
Partnership among professionals, patients and families	Infrastructure supports administration, training, information financing and quality improvement	Patients understanding & Participation in goal of healthier society
Patient control	Integrate alternative/complementary practices	Respect for patient needs/customized care
Participate in own care	Patients participation in financing & incentives for healthcare	Respect for patient preferences/wants
Patient responsibility for health	Simplifying care at the bedside	Respect for patient values
Physical comfort	Team management of health professionals	Quality
Reaching agreement about managing illness	Transition planning	Patients' values guide clinical decisions
Self-care	Transparency	
Sensitive to non-medical/spiritual issues	Use architecture/design to promote health	
Shared/supported decision-making	Use nutrition to enhance health	
Understanding patients "illness" experience (i.e. ideas, feelings etc.)	Use expensive resources appropriately & efficiently	

5.2.5 International Alliance Patients' Organisations (IAPO)

IAPO is a global alliance of Patient Organisations representing patients of all nationalities across all disease areas and promoting patient-centred healthcare around the world[37]. IAPO's definition of a 'patient' is a person with any chronic disease, illness, syndrome, impairment or disability.

IAPO's vision is that patients throughout the world are at the centre of healthcare. In a survey of membership in 2004, 74% of respondents indicated that defining patient-centred healthcare was very relevant to their organisation. A review of definitions and principles was published in 2005 with a second edition in 2007. The aim of the review was to provide useful reference material on patient-centred healthcare and to assist in identifying and promoting the principles of patient-centred healthcare. The review considered Definitions and Principles of Patient-centred Healthcare, Research on Patient-centred Healthcare and Barriers to the Practice of Patient-Centred Healthcare.

The review of definitions and principles of patient -centred healthcare considered that 'respect for patients' needs and/or wants and/or preferences and/or values' stood out as a commonality explicitly stated in most of the definitions. The review identified four elements that they considered significant omissions from most definitions of patient-centred healthcare. These are (1) Patients' rights; (2) Patients' responsibilities; (3) Evidence based care and (4) Patient safety. The authors accepted that Evidence based care and Patient safety may be omitted because evidence based care is assumed to be common practice and patient safety is accepted to be an essential aim of healthcare but suggested that consideration be given to whether both should be included in definitions of patient-centred healthcare. Other issues that arose from their analyses included: the question of who should define patient-centred healthcare, that definitions identified have originated in North America and Europe, the need to balance public health with individual focused healthcare and that while many principles already laid out focus on the preferred outcome for the patient and can be carried out by individual healthcare professionals, other aspects need to be addressed through the healthcare system to achieve the required outcomes.

IAPO declare that to achieve patient-centred care, healthcare must be based on five principles: (1) Respect; (2) Choice and empowerment; (3) Patient involvement in health policy; (4) Access and support and (5) Information.

5.3 What themes emerge from studies of patient experience?

Patient experience scoping study: a focused thematic qualitative overview

Method

The frameworks presented provide a useful overview of important patient experiences themes, with significant overlaps. While they are helpful in demonstrating the potential range of experience dimensions, it is not always clear how these dimensions have been extracted from a wide and diverse body of research, the extent to which patients and the public have been involved in developing or selecting these dimensions, the extent to which the dimensions reflect patient-identified experiences, as opposed to those identified by researchers and clinicians or their utility in a UK context. Due to these uncertainties, a patient experience scoping study was commissioned from the RCN Institute at the University of Warwick to scope the evidence and identify a framework which captures generic dimensions of experiences and provides a very clear audit trail to the underpinning experiences evidence-base. The aims of the scoping study were to:

- Identify generic themes and sub-themes of patient experience in three clinical areas: cardiovascular disease, diabetes and cancer, all areas of significant disease burden.
- Use the themes and sub-themes identified in the three clinical areas to develop an overall generic patient experiences framework that has potential relevance for all patients.

The aim of this scoping study was to sample from a range of patient experiences studies, with the intention of reaching a level of data saturation, in terms of the generic themes being identified for each group. Data saturation describes the point at which no new generic themes are being identified from studies (Ritchie and Lewis 2003)[108]. It is not an absolute measurement but a judgement made by the researcher. The intention was not to conduct a systematic review, which would have been

unfeasible in the time-scale, but some elements of systematic reviewing were adopted, for example in the development of search strategies and in the extraction of data from papers (Centre for Reviews and Dissemination Guidance 2009)[8]. The detailed methods used are reported in Appendix B.

In summary, the data extracted from studies in each clinical area were used to develop the themes and sub-themes relevant to each clinical area. The summary evidence tables and the full evidence tables are presented in Appendix B. In order to develop the overall generic experiences framework and to manage the process of synthesising data extracted from studies, the next stage utilised the Institute of Medicine[36] framework as a model against which to compare and contrast the themes identified in this study. Each element of the IoM[36] framework was examined according to each clinical area, to review its validity, that is, whether there is evidence to support its inclusion in an overall framework. Each dimension of the IoM framework was broken down, for example information and communication were considered separately rather than amalgamating them into one category, in order to explore whether they should stand alone as themes. Once this process was complete, the research team examined what generic themes might be missing in the IoM framework. It should be recognised that the final generic framework is by necessity a broad summary of a much wider body of evidence, with the underpinning evidence contained in the summary evidence tables in Appendix B. The final generic framework is presented in Table 6, with an illustrative narrative summary.

Table 6: Framework from the patient experience scoping study: a focused thematic qualitative overview

Generic theme	Narrative description
Patient as active participant	Reflects the role of patients as potential active participants in their health care, co-creators and co-managers of their health and use of services; responsible for self-care, participators in healthcare, shared decision-makers, self-managers, risk managers, life-style managers. Confidence in self-management is critical. Associated with issues of power and control.
Responsiveness of services -an individualised approach	Needing to be seen as a person within the healthcare system. The responsiveness of health services in recognising the individual and tailoring services to respond to the needs, preferences, and values of patients, taking into account both shared requirements and individual characteristics (such as individuals' expectations of service cultural background, gender, and subtle issues such as preferences for humour). Includes how well clinical needs are met (for example: pain management) and evaluation of how well services perform from a patient perspective.
Lived experience	The recognition that individuals are living with their condition and experiencing it in a unique way, that family and broader life need to be taken into account, and that all of these aspects of lived experience can affect self-care. Taking into account individual physical needs and cognitive needs because of condition. Everyday experiences, hopes, expectations, future uncertainty, feelings of loss, feelings of being morally judged, feelings of blame. Some of these experiences originate 'outside' of the health care system but are brought with the patient into the health system; other experiences may be affected by attitudes and expectations of health professionals.
Continuity of care and relationships	Initiating contact with services, interpretation of symptoms, co-ordination, access (barriers to), and availability of services, responsiveness of services, feelings of abandonment (when treatment ends or support is not made available). Being known as a person rather than 'a number'. Trust in health care professional built up over time. Recognition/questioning of expertise of health care professional. Respect, including respect for patient's expertise. Partnership in decision-making. Issues of power and control.
Communication	Needing to be seen as an individual; communication style and format (for example: over telephone or in person), skills and characteristics of health care

Generic theme	Narrative description
	professional; body language (which can convey different information from that spoken); two-way communication and shared decision-making; compassion, empathy; the importance of the set up of consultation (for example: appropriate time for questions, appropriate physical environment, number of peoples present). Listening, paying attention to the patient. Enabling questions and providing answers.
Information	Information to enable self-care and active participation in healthcare, importance of information in shared decision-making, tailored information to suit the individual, patient wanting/not wanting information, timely information. Sources of information, including, including outside the health service (for example: peer support, internet). Quality of information. Sources of further information and support. Developing knowledge and understanding, making sense of one's health.
Support	Different preferences for support: Support for self-care and individual coping strategies. Education. Need for emotional support, need for hope. Responsiveness of health care professionals to individual support needs (may vary according to gender, age, and ethnicity). Importance of peer-support, groups, voluntary organisations. Practical support. Family and friends support. Role of advocacy. Feeling over-protected, not wanting to be a burden.

5.4 What areas of patient experience are important to NHS patients?

Surveys are widely used to assess patient experience. They have been used to examine how the NHS performs and to identify which aspects of patient experience are most important to patients. The GDG wished to learn whether there are specific areas that are important to NHS patients and/or areas which need particular attention. We did not carry out an original evidence review but used existing NHS surveys and published analyses of these.

5.4.1 Themes from NHS patient surveys

The NHS national patient survey programme was established first under the Commission for Healthcare Improvement in 2002 and has subsequently reported to the Healthcare Commission until 31st March 2009 and currently to the Care Quality Commission.

Picker Institute Europe was founded in 2000 and co-ordinates a National NHS Patient Survey Co-ordination centre for the Care Quality Commission. NHS patient surveys have included condition specific surveys, surveys of mental health trusts, general practice, Primary Care Trusts, ambulance trusts, in-patient and outpatient surveys, including surveys of emergency and maternity care. The surveys are based on the original Picker principles and supported by ongoing work to enhance the validity of the methodology. The most recent survey is the Maternity services survey 2010. Key findings of surveys are reported on the NHS surveys website: www.nhssurveys.org/publications. These are not replicated here.

The Picker Institute reports the following eight aspects of healthcare as being most important to patients. The reference provided on the Picker Institute Europe website is Gerteis et al eds. (1993)[26].

These are:

1. Fast access to reliable health advice
2. Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals
3. Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences
4. Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care
5. Attention to physical and environmental needs

6. Emotional support, empathy and respect
7. Involvement of, and support for, family and carers
8. Continuity of care and smooth transitions.

5.4.2 Quest for Quality and Improved Performance Report

There are a number of studies and reports which aim to identify and rank the aspects of care most important to patients. Leatherman and Sutherland in a Quest for Quality and Improved Performance (QUIPP) report (2007)[44] attempt to draw together the evidence of what patients want from the NHS. They quote from a survey of in-patients by the Picker Institute Europe which asked patients to score the importance of 82 aspects of care (Boyd 2007)[5]. The top ten elements of care are reported below (in order of importance):

1. The doctors know enough about my medical history and treatment.
2. The doctors can answer questions about my condition and treatment in a way that I can understand.
3. I have confidence and trust in the hospital staff who treat me.
4. The doctors wash or clean their hands in between touching patients.
5. The nurses know enough about my medical history and treatment.
6. Before my operation or procedure, I get a clear explanation of what will happen.
7. The risks and benefits of my operation or procedure are explained to me in a way that I can understand.
8. The nurses wash or clean their hands between touching patients.
9. The rooms and ward are clean.
10. The doctors and nurses are open with me about my treatment or condition.

Leatherman and Sutherland (2007)[44] suggest that these priorities indicate a requirement for an NHS that places a high priority on communication, patient-professional interactions and treating patients as individuals.

A perspective from primary care is given using an international study by Grol (1999)[28] which reported that the five priorities for UK general practice are:

1. A GP should be able to provide a quick service in case of emergencies.
2. During the consultation a GP should have enough time to listen, talk and explain to me.
3. A GP should guarantee the confidentiality of information about all his/her patients.
4. A GP should make me feel free to tell him or her my problems.
5. A GP should tell me all I want to know about my illness.

Leatherman and Sutherland (2007)[44] concluded that there are several aspects of care that are consistently identified as important. They list these as:

- information and involvement in decision-making about care
- to be treated as an individual
- choice where it makes a difference
- predictable and convenient access to healthcare
- equitable treatment and chances for health
- safety from harm.

5.4.3 Picker Institute Europe: core domains of patients' experience

Picker Institute Europe published two discussion papers 'Core domains for measuring inpatients' experience of care' in 2009 (Sizmur and Redding 2009)[112] and 'Key domains of the experience of hospital outpatients' in 2010 (Sizmur and Reading 2010)[113]. The papers describe secondary analysis of NHS surveys of inpatient and outpatient care to answer the following questions: Which aspects of patient experience relate most strongly to patient satisfaction? Can these be grouped into 'core domains' for priority action? What would those 'core domains' be?

The methodology used was to find correlations between patient responses to survey questions and an overall expression of satisfaction. Factor analysis was used to identify responses that could be combined to produce scores on distinct areas of experience. An alternative composite score was also used in the analysis as overall satisfaction is a single item measure. Two sets of domains were identified with a wider and more diverse set of domains identified for outpatient care. The authors suggest that these domains may be useful to focus NHS quality improvement measures.

Table 7: Key domains identified from NHS surveys of inpatients and outpatients. Picker Institute 2010

National outpatient survey 2009	National inpatient survey 2008
Dealing with the (presenting) issue	Involvement in decisions
Doctors	Doctors
Other professionals	Nurses
Cleanliness	Cleanliness
Information about discharge	Pain control
Information about treatment	
Plus	
Organisation	Consistency and co-ordination
Respect and dignity	Respect and dignity

Questions contributing to domains

The analysis of domains includes a report of questions in surveys that particularly contributed to the domains identified. The GDG considered that these gave greater insight to patients concerns and might also be of value in informing measures for quality standards. They are therefore listed below.

Questions contributing to domains identified for inpatients

The questions in the surveys that particularly contributed to the domains identified for inpatients are as follows:

<u>Consistency and coordination of care</u>

Did members of staff say different things?

How would you rate how well the doctors and nurses worked together?

<u>Treatment with respect and dignity</u>

Overall, did you feel you were treated with respect and dignity while you were in the hospital?

<u>Involvement</u>

Were you involved as much as you wanted to be in decisions about your care and treatment?

How much information about your condition or treatment was given to you?

Did you find someone on the hospital staff to talk to about your worries and fears?

Did you feel you were involved in decisions about your discharge from hospital?

Doctors

When you had important questions to ask a doctor, did you get answers that you could understand?

Did you have confidence and trust in the doctors treating you?

Nurses

Did you have confidence and trust in the nurses treating you?

Did nurses talk in front of you as if you weren't there?

Cleanliness

In your opinion, how clean was the hospital room or ward that you were in?

How clean were the toilets and bathroom that you used while in hospital?

As far as you know, did doctors wash or clean their hands between touching patients?

As far as you know, did nurses wash or clean their hands between touching patients?

Pain control

Do you think the hospital staff did everything they could to help control your pain?

Questions contributing to domains identified for outpatients

The questions that particularly contributed to the domains identified for outpatients are as follows:

Dealing with the issue

While you were in the Outpatients Department, how much information about your condition or treatment was given to you?

Were you involved as much as you wanted to be in decisions about your care and treatment?

Was the main reason you went to the Outpatients Department dealt with to your satisfaction?

Doctors

Did you have enough time to discuss your health or medical problem with the doctor?

Did the doctor explain the reasons for any treatment or action in a way that you could understand?

Did the doctor listen to what you had to say?

If you had important questions to ask the doctor, did you get answers that you could understand?

Did you have confidence and trust in the doctor examining and treating you?

Did the doctor seem aware of your medical history?

Cleanliness

In your opinion, how clean was the Outpatients Department?

How clean were the toilets at the Outpatients Department?

Other professionals

If you had important questions to ask [the other professional], did you get answers that you could understand?

Did you have confidence and trust in [the other professional]?

Information about discharge

Did a member of staff tell you about medication side effects to watch out for?

Did you receive copies of letters sent between hospital doctors and your family doctor (GP)?

Did a member of staff tell you about what danger signals regarding your illness or treatment to watch for after you went home?

Did hospital staff tell you who to contact if you were worried about your condition or treatment after you left hospital?

Information about treatment

Before the treatment did a member of staff explain what would happen?

Before the treatment did a member of staff explain any risks and/or benefits in a way you could understand?

Dignity and respect

Overall, did you feel you were treated with respect and dignity while you were at the Outpatients Department?

Organisation of the outpatients department

How well organised was the Outpatients Department you visited?

5.5 Guidance development group discussion of frameworks and themes

The GDG considered it important to agree themes that could apply throughout the NHS and that would encompass the areas of most importance to patients. The remit for the GDG was not to develop an overarching framework but to develop a structure within which to develop recommendations. The GDG considered the available frameworks, the results of the scoping study and the information from NHS surveys in their discussion. They also noted areas targeted by pre-existing guidance and used their own experience to agree themes that they considered most important within the NHS.

The GDG considered that the IOM framework and other frameworks developed from the early Commonwealth Fund/Picker work (which took place in a US setting almost 20 years ago) were potentially influenced by the hospital settings from which they were developed. The findings and themes found in the scoping study had greater face validity for the GDG, encompassed more of the issues they considered important and particularly resonated with GDG members when considering preventative and community care. The theme of 'lived experience' was considered particularly important. In the scoping framework this is the recognition that individuals are living with their condition and experiencing it in a unique way, that family and broader life need to be taken into account, and that all of these aspects of lived experience can affect both care and self-care. The definition from the scoping study encompasses everyday experiences, hopes, expectations, future uncertainty, feelings of loss, feelings of being morally judged, and feelings of blame. Some of these experiences are seen to originate 'outside' of the health care system but are brought with the patient

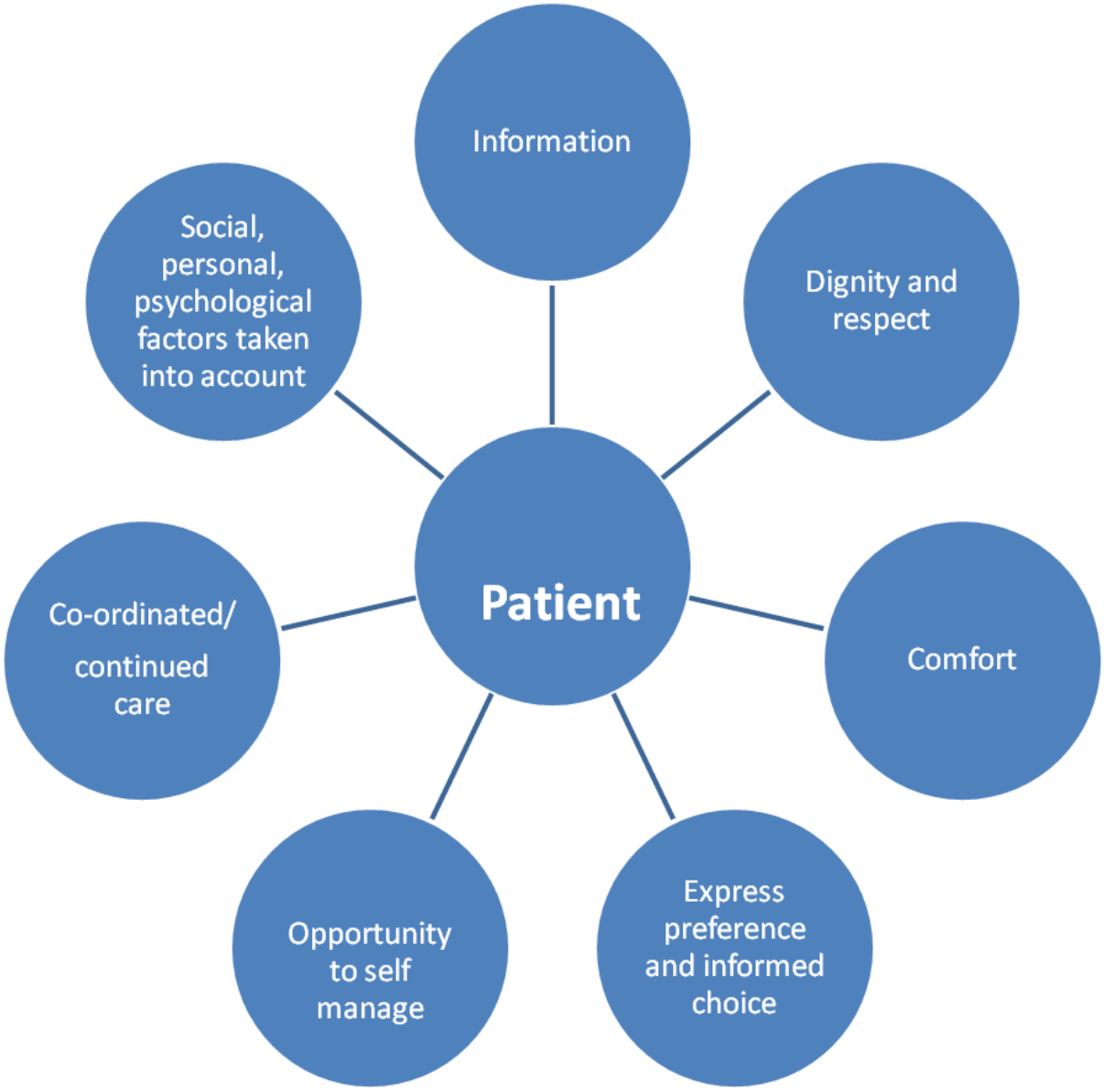
into the health system. Other experiences may be affected by attitudes and expectations of health professionals. However, the GDG found the term 'lived experience' unhelpful. It was considered to be a useful research term but difficult to use as a theme when developing specific recommendations for the NHS and individual staff. The GDG also considered aspects of care that did not appear in the scoping framework but that are important and evidence suggests may be delivered badly, such as nutrition and access to food. The physical environment and access is recognised as important in several frameworks but it was agreed with NICE that because of time constraints the scope of the guidance needed to be constrained and would focus on clinician/patient interaction and organisational issues and not include the physical environment.

The GDG discussed alternate terms and grouping for themes. They felt that there were two different perspectives that required consideration:

1) That of the patient i.e. how the service should feel to the patient
2) That of the healthcare professional and service who are delivering the patient experience. These perspectives clearly overlap but are distinct from each other.

The preferred outcome for a patient as identified by the GDG is indicated in Figure 2. Patients want to be treated with dignity and respect, to have comfort, for their social, personal and psychological factors to be taken into account, for care to co-ordinated, to have opportunity to self-manage, to express preferences and have information to allow informed choice.

Figure 2: The outcome of good patient experience from the patient's perspective



The GDG differentiated between the model of good patient experience and themes to guide recommendations and quality standards. The GDG decided that to achieve the patient experience described in Figure 2, individual healthcare professionals and services needed to respond to the patient as an individual, to address their fundamental human needs, to be informed and allowed to participate, to have the service respond to their individual circumstances, and to have continuity of care. The GDG considered that the opportunity to self manage covered a wide spectrum of activities. At a minimum this required a supportive attitude from health care professionals and adequate communication and information. Specific interventions may also be required to support this. The themes identified by the GDG are outlined below with a fuller description of each theme as outlined by the GDG. The relationship between the model of good patient experience and the themes is indicated in Table 9.

Table 8: Themes for patient experience recommendations and quality standards

Theme	Explanation
Knowing the patient as an individual	Patients value health care professionals acknowledging their individuality and the unique way in which each experiences a condition and its impact on their life. Patients' values, beliefs and circumstances all influence their expectations of, their needs for, and their use of services .It is important to recognise that individuals are living with their condition so their family and broader life need to be taken into account insofar as they affect help and healthcare experience.
Essential requirements of care	Patients need to be recognised as having needs other than treatment of their physical symptoms. There should be recognition of the potential need for psychological and emotional support as well as meeting fundamental needs such as comfort, nutrition, safety and pain management.
Tailoring healthcare services for each patient	Patients wish to be seen as an individual within the healthcare system. This requires health services to recognise the individual and therefore to tailor services to respond to the needs, preferences, and values of the patient. Advice on treatments and care, including risks and benefits, should be individualised as much as possible.
Continuity of care and relationships	Continuity and consistency of care and the establishment of trusting, empathetic and reliable relationships with competent and insightful health care professionals is key to patients receiving effective, appropriate care. Relevant information should move seamlessly between professionals and across healthcare boundaries to support high quality care.
Enabling patients to actively participate in their care	Patients wish to be considered as potential active participants in their own health care, involved in the creation and management of their health strategy and use of services. Potentially they could be responsible for self care, shared decisions and management of risk and life style choices.

Table 9: Mapping of model of patient experience to themes for recommendations and quality standards

Model of patient experience	Themes for recommendations and quality standards
Social, personal and psychological factors taken into account	Knowing the patient as an individual
	Tailoring healthcare services for each patient
Comfort	Essential requirements of care
Co-ordinated, continued care	Continuity of care and relationships
Information	Enabling patients to actively participate in their care
Expressed preference and informed choice	
Opportunity to self manage	

6 Knowing the patient as an individual

6.1 Introduction

For people using healthcare services, to be treated as an individual is an essential component of their whole experience and in retaining their dignity during a stressful period. Each patient experiences healthcare in a unique and individual way. For many, healthcare forms a small, but important part of their wider life. Being recognised and treated as an individual remains important to a person when they become a patient. In many ways the need is strengthened, particularly at a time when a person can feel vulnerable. In accordance with this, there is an important need for health services to recognise that individuals are living with their condition(s), experiencing it in a unique way, and that family and broader life need to be taken into account. Recognising individuals within the health service means understanding and acknowledging their experiences, hopes and expectations. It may mean considering future uncertainty, feelings of loss, guilt or shame and feelings of being morally judged or blamed by health care professionals. Some of these feelings originate 'outside' of the health care system but are brought with the patient into it. Other experiences may be affected by attitudes and expectations of health professionals. Recognising and responding to the needs of an individual forms an important underpinning to the concept of personalisation and to the development of a responsive service that is truly patient-centred. Therefore, seeing patients as individuals within a complex health service becomes an important requirement for a good patient experience.

6.2 Evidence reviews and other inputs

Each of the following sources of evidence and information has been used to inform the recommendations on patient as individual and a discussion of this is presented in section Recommendations and link to evidence.

6.2.1 Patient experience scoping study - a focused thematic qualitative overview review

The patient experience scoping study (please see Appendix B for the full report) identified aspects related to knowing the patient as an individual in the three clinical areas examined. The findings are summarised in Table 9:

Table 9: Sub-themes from the patient experience scoping study related to knowing the patient as an individual

Cancer (Main theme: Support)	**Cardiovascular disease** (Main theme: Knowledge, understanding and making sense)	**Diabetes** (Main theme: Lived experience)
Identity	Education	Everyday lives
Advocacy	Patients ways of making sense vary from biomedical explanations	Perceived unrealistic goals
Individualised approach		Cultural issues
Stigma/taboos/culture		Interpretations, beliefs and meanings
Reassurance/hope		Psychological factors
		Perceived discrimination/injustice

In addition, the framework developed by on the basis of the scoping report also identified Lived Experience as a main theme, and is described as follows:

> *The recognition that individuals are living with their condition and experiencing it in a unique way, that family and broader life need to be taken into account, and that all of these aspects of lived experience can affect self-care. Taking into account individual physical needs and cognitive needs because of condition. Everyday experiences, hopes, expectations, future uncertainty, feelings of loss, feelings of being morally judged, feelings of blame. Some of these experiences originate 'outside' of the health care system but are brought with the patient into the health system; other experiences may be affected by attitudes and expectations of health professionals.*

6.2.2 NHS surveys

NHS Surveys are used to assess patient experience, to examine how the NHS performs and to identify which aspects of patient experience are most important to patients. Further information on patient surveys is in Section 5.4.

Leatherman and Sutherland in a Quest for Quality and Improved Performance (QUIPP) report (2007)[44] attempt to draw together the evidence of what patients want from the NHS. They concluded that 'to be treated as an individual' is an aspect of care that is consistently identified as important.

6.2.3 Existing NICE recommendations

The following recommendations, related to knowing the patient as an individual, are already in existence in other published NICE guidelines (please see Appendix C for more details on existing NICE recommendations):

- Consider any factors such as physical or learning disabilities sight or hearing problems and difficulties with reading or speaking English, which may affect the patient's involvement in the consultation.
  (From 'Medicines adherence', R 1.1.2)[79]
- Be aware that patients' concerns about medicines, and whether they believe they need them, affect how and whether they take their prescribed medicines.
  (From 'Medicines Adherence', R 1.1.19)[79]
- Address any beliefs and concerns that patients have that can result in reduced adherence.
  (From 'Medicines Adherence', R 1.2.7)[79]
- Listen to patients and respect their views and beliefs.
  (From 'Chronic heart failure', R1.5.5.2)[55]
- Avoid making assumptions based on a woman's culture, ethnic origin or religious beliefs.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.3.9)[85]
- Assessment and discussion of patients' physical, psychological, social, spiritual and financial circumstances should be undertaken at key points. Offer support where appropriate.
  (From 'Advanced breast cancer' R1.4.1)[65]

6.3 Recommendations and link to evidence

Recommendations	**1. Develop an understanding of the patient as an individual, including how the condition affects the person, and how the person's circumstances and experiences affect their condition and treatment.** **2. Ensure that factors such as physical or learning disabilities, sight, speech or hearing problems and difficulties with reading, understanding or speaking English are addressed so that the patient is able to participate as fully as possible in consultations and care.** **3. Ask the patient about and take into account any factors, such as their domestic, social and work situation and their previous experience of healthcare, that may:** **• impact on their health condition and/or** **• affect their ability or willingness to engage with healthcare services and/or** **• affect their ability to manage their own care and make decisions about self-management and lifestyle choices.** **4. Listen to and address any health beliefs, concerns and preferences that the patient has, and be aware that these affect how and whether they engage with treatment. Respect their views and offer support if needed to help them engage effectively with healthcare services and participate in self-management as appropriate.** **5. Avoid making assumptions about the patient based on their appearance or other personal characteristics.** **6. Take into account the requirements of the Equality Act 2010 and make sure services are equally accessible to, and supportive of, all people using adult NHS services.** **7. If appropriate, discuss with the patient their need for psychological, social, spiritual and/or financial support. Offer support and information to the patient and/or direct them to sources of support and information. Review their circumstances and need for support regularly.**
Relative values of different outcomes	The GDG believed that knowing the patient as an individual was an essential aspect of good patient care.
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered that while the recognition and response to the patient as an individual was a right for each patient, consideration of the patient as an individual also improved safety, efficiency and effectiveness of health care. Recognising the individual needs of each patient for help with communication for example allows patients to benefit from services that are available and

	accessible in a timely way. The GDG was mindful, however, that unnecessary pressure should not be placed on patients to discuss ay subjects they might be unwilling on unready to do so.
Economic considerations	The GDG considered that some of the recommendations may have time, and therefore cost implications; however they were considered an essential part of good patient care. They also considered that there may be cost offsets due to improved safety, efficiency and effectiveness of healthcare.
Quality of evidence	The GDG used evidence from the patient experience scoping study and consensus to develop the recommendations.
Other considerations	The GDG used their own professional and personal experiences to inform these recommendations. The GDG recognised that healthcare professionals working in the NHS can be under pressure to deliver care in busy environments. For the individual patient however each interaction with professionals and services is a unique experience and part of a wider life experience. The patient cannot be separated from their wider life experience and services need to recognise patient individuality and their social embeddedness. The GDG recognised that many healthcare professionals and patients achieve this balanced approach despite working in busy environments and that this was related to attitude and skills of those professionals. The GDG emphasised the importance of healthcare professionals seeing the patient as equal, and to value their lived experience. The GDG felt it was important for clinicians to establish the patient's background, such as personal circumstances, social and work situation, health literacy, and previous medical experience. The GDG believed that clinicians have an important role in helping patients to have realistic expectations of treatment. The first step of this process is to explore a patient's beliefs and understanding of their treatment and procedures. The GDG considered that it was essential for healthcare professionals to have a non-judgemental attitude towards the patient. The Equality Act 2010 covers nine protected characteristics: age, disability, gender reassignment, marriage and civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity, race, religion or belief, sex and sexual orientation. The GDG considered that a good patient experience should not be compromised because of any patient's physical and mental characteristics, for example appearance or dress. The GDG felt it was important for clinicians to be supportive but not patronising, and to describe to patients the pertinent options and tools available to support them.

7 Essential requirements of care

7.1 Introduction

A good patient experience is underpinned by a number of essential requirements that reflect the core concepts of patient care. These requirements include meeting patients' needs in relation to continence care, nutrition, personal hygiene, prevention and management of pain and respect, confidentiality and dignity. The importance of recognising and providing essential requirements of care has been well documented over the past few years. The provision of these core fundamentals in the NHS have been outlined in the Essence of Care 2010[15], Fundamental Aspects of Health and Social Care 2003[126] and the Principles of Nursing Practice[110]. These documents focus on the provision of these essential aspects of care. While the meeting of such essential needs could be viewed as a basic component of care that should not be included in a guidance about patient experience, reported lapses in care and complaints data suggest that the reinforcement of the importance of these essential requirements, for a good patient experience, is vital[23,97]. This is also important as the meeting of such basic needs is a necessary pre-requisite for patients engaging in their own care and become active co-creators and co-managers of their health and well-being.

7.2 Evidence reviews and other inputs

Each of the following sources of evidence and information has been used to inform the recommendations on essential requirements of care and a discussion of this is presented in section Recommendations and link to evidence.

7.2.1 Patient experience scoping study - a focused thematic qualitative overview review

The patient experience scoping study (please see Appendix B for the full report) identified aspects related to essential requirements of care, although it was not identified as a generic theme. The sub themes found in the three areas examined in the scoping study are outlined in Table 10 below.

Table 10: Sub-themes from the patient experience scoping study related to essential requirements of care

Cancer	Cardiovascular disease (Main theme: Lived experience)	Diabetes (Main theme: physical needs and comfort)
Character of healthcare professional	Communication style	Pain
Psychosocial needs	Patients experience a range of negative emotions related to their condition, symptoms, treatment and prognosis	Eating
Co-ordination	Feeling fearful	Psychological support
	Adopting new routines adapted to the condition / treatment	Empathy

7.2.2 NHS surveys

NHS surveys are used to assess patient experience, to examine how the NHS performs and to identify which aspects of patient experience are most important to patients. Further information on patient surveys is in Section 5.4.

Secondary analysis of NHS surveys of inpatient and outpatient care was carried out to develop 'core domains'. [112] [113]. There were a number of questions under various themes that related to essential requirements of care. These are as follows:

Treatment with respect and dignity (inpatients)

Overall, did you feel you were treated with respect and dignity while you were in the hospital?

Nurses (inpatients)

Did nurses talk in front of you as if you weren't there?

Pain control (inpatients)

Do you think the hospital staff did everything they could to help control your pain?

Dignity and respect (outpatients)

Overall, did you feel you were treated with respect and dignity while you were at the Outpatients Department?

7.2.3 Existing NICE recommendations

The following recommendations, related to the essential requirements of care, are already in existence in other published NICE guidelines (please see Appendix C for more details on existing NICE recommendations):

- Respect the woman's right to confidentiality and sensitively discuss her fears in a non-judgemental manner.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R1.1.8)[85]
- Healthcare professionals should be prepared to broach sensitive issues with patients, such as sexual activity, as these are unlikely to be raised by the patient.
  (From 'Chronic Heart Failure', R 1.2.1.4)[55]
- If anxiety or depression is suspected, follow the stepped care models recommended in 'Anxiety' (NICE clinical guidelines 22*) and 'Depression' (NICE clinical guideline 23^)
  (From 'Critical illness rehabilitation', R 1.1.25)[88]
- Healthcare professionals should ensure that care provides:
  - food and fluid of adequate quantity and quality in an environment conducive to eating
  - appropriate support for example, modified eating aids, for people who can potentially chew and swallow but are unable to feed themselves.

  (From 'Nutrition support in adults', R1.1.3)[61]
- All healthcare professionals who are directly involved in patient care should receive education and training relevant to their post, on the importance of providing adequate nutrition.
  (From 'Nutrition support in adults', R1.1.1)[61]

*replaced by CG113. ^ replaced by CG90

7.3 Recommendations and link to evidence

Respect for the patient

Recommendation	**8. All staff involved in providing NHS services[c] should:** • **treat patients with respect, kindness, dignity, compassion, understanding, courtesy and honesty** • **respect the patient's right to confidentiality** • **not discuss the patient in their presence without involving them in the discussion.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	These recommendations were not considered to have economic implications.
Quality of evidence	Evidence from the framework review and NHS surveys and GDG consensus, indicates the importance of these for patient experience.
Other considerations	The GDG used their own professional and personal experiences to inform these recommendations. They considered that an attitude of respect for the patient, and behaviours of kindness, courtesy, confidentiality and compassion were fundamental to enabling a good patient / provider relationship. They also considered that all involved in a healthcare environment, including hospital porters, cleaning staff, reception, clerical or administrative staff as well as people with healthcare qualifications should be required to treat patients with respect.

Recommendation	**9. Introduce students and anyone not directly involved in the delivery of care before consultations or meetings begin and let the patient decide if they want them to stay.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	These recommendations were not considered to have economic implications.
Quality of evidence	Evidence from the framework review and NHS surveys and GDG consensus, indicates the importance of these for patient experience.
Other considerations	The GDG used their own professional and personal experiences to inform these recommendations. All the GDG had experience of people not directly involved in care such as students or other observers, sitting in on consultations or other meetings without appropriate introduction. The GDG considered that introductions should be made before meeting or consultations are held and that the patient should have the right to decide if the person should stay.

c This includes people such as chaplains, domestic staff, porters, receptionists and volunteers, as well as healthcare professionals.

Patient concerns

Recommendations	**10. Be prepared to raise and discuss sensitive issues (such as sexual activity, continence or end-of-life care), as these are unlikely to be raised by some patients.** **11. Listen to and discuss any fears or concerns the patient has in a non-judgemental and sensitive manner.** **12. If anxiety disorder or depression is suspected, follow the appropriate stepped-care model recommended in:** • **'Generalised anxiety disorder and panic disorder (with or without agoraphobia) in adults' (NICE clinical guideline 113) or** • **'Depression' (NICE clinical guideline 90) or** • **'Depression in adults with a chronic physical health problem' (NICE clinical guideline 91).**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	These recommendations were not considered to have economic implications.
Quality of evidence	Evidence from previous NICE guidelines and GDG consensus indicates the importance of these for patient experience.
Other considerations	The GDG used their own professional and personal experiences to inform these recommendations. They wished to acknowledge the difficulty for patients in raising sensitive issues, the anxiety that such situations can cause and thus the need for sensitivity and understanding. They considered the importance of recognising the psychological impact of ill health and the existence of depression / anxiety as a co-morbidity.

Nutrition, pain management and personal needs

Recommendations	**13. All healthcare professionals directly involved in patient care should receive education and training, relevant to their post, on the importance of:** • **providing adequate and appropriate nutrition** • **assessing and managing pain.** **14. Ensure that the patient's nutrition and hydration are adequate at all times, if the patient is unable to manage this themselves, by:** • **providing regular food and fluid of adequate quantity and quality in an environment conducive to eating** • **placing food and drink where the patient can reach them easily** • **encouraging and helping the patient to eat and drink if needed** • **providing appropriate support, such as modified eating and/or drinking aids.** **15. If a patient is unable to manage their own pain relief:**

	• **do not assume that pain relief is adequate** • **ask them regularly about pain** • **assess pain using a pain scale if necessary (for example, on a scale of 1 to 10)** • **provide pain relief and adjust as needed.** **16. Ensure that the patient's personal needs (for example, relating to continence, personal hygiene and comfort) are regularly reviewed and addressed. Regularly ask patients who are unable to manage their personal needs what help they need. Address their needs at the time of asking and ensure maximum privacy.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	The GDG considered that while some of these recommendations had potential cost implications, for example in terms of training or additional nursing time, these are fundamental aspects of good patient care.
Quality of evidence	Evidence from NHS surveys, Framework review and scoping studies, sources, previous NICE guidelines and GDG consensus indicates the importance of these for patient experience.
Other considerations	The GDG used professional and personal experience to develop these recommendations which refer to day patients and inpatients. The GDG considered it essential to ensure that patients' nutritional and personal needs are appropriately met. The GDG regarded the area of pain management as being an area where practice could be improved. The GDG recognised and were keen to express the importance of using a pain scale to assess the pain the patient is experiencing, but this did not need to be a validated scale. Simple scoring mechanisms such as 1 out of 10 could be very useful for individual patients. The GDG considered that it was essential for the healthcare professionals to have a non-judgemental attitude towards pain management and treat every patient as an individual The GDG also wished to emphasise the importance of both ensuring patient privacy when attending to patients personal needs and dealing with those needs promptly.

Patient independence

Recommendations	**17. Give patients using adult NHS services the support they need to maintain their independence as far as possible** **18. When patients in hospital are taking medicines for long-term conditions, assess and discuss with them whether they are able and would prefer to manage these medicines themselves.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered that benefits outweighed any harms.
Economic considerations	The GDG considered that time taken to assess patient's ability to manage their own medicines would be outweighed by time saved for staff if patients could manage their own medications.

Quality of evidence	No evidence was reviewed for this recommendation
Other considerations	The GDG used their knowledge and opinion to inform these recommendations. The GDG considered it important that patients are supported to maintain their independence as much as possible when using NHS services. This is particularly important when patients are admitted as inpatients but may also apply to day hospitals and other attendances. The GDG recommended that consideration is given to whether patients can self medicate whilst in hospital to ensure continuity of their management of their health. GDG members recognised that this is potentially a difficult area but they were aware of services that had protocols and arrangements in place to allow this to happen. The GDG considered this particularly important when patients are already taking medicines for long term conditions. Self administration of medicines was included as one of the tools in Management of Medicines - a resource developed by the Department of Health to support implementation of the wider aspects of medicines management for the National Service Frameworks for Diabetes Renal Services and Long-Term Conditions. One of the other tools included in this is patients using their own drugs.

Consent and capacity

Recommendations	**19. Obtain and document informed consent from the patient, in accordance with:** • **in England, Department of Health policy and guidance (see www.dh.gov.uk/en/DH_103643)** • **in Wales, advice from the Welsh Government (see www.wales.nhs.uk/consent).** **20. Assess the patient's capacity to make each decision using the principles in the Mental Capacity Act (2005) (see www.dh.gov.uk/en/SocialCare/Deliveringsocialcare/MentalCapacity).**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	The GDG considered this recommendation to have no economic implications over those already required to act in accordance with the relevant policies.
Quality of evidence	The GDG referred to existing policy from the Department of Health and the Mental Capacity Act (2005).
Other considerations	The GDG recognised the importance of obtaining and documenting informed patient consent from the patient themselves or a family member or carer if this is not possible. It is important for this to be done in accordance with existing Department of Health guidance. When it is felt that the patient lacks capacity to give consent or in decision making , it was felt necessary to assess the patients using the principles in the Mental Capacity Act (2005), to ensure that correct actions are taken.

8 Tailoring healthcare services for each patient

8.1 Introduction

The development of evidence based healthcare and the need to deliver efficient care risks industrialising the processes of care and potentially jeopardising the essential human nature of these interactions. In order to ensure that the human nature of health care is not lost, it is necessary to understand what aspects of individuality and service responsiveness are important and valued by patients.

To provide the best experience of care health care professionals and health services must tailor services to recognise patients as individuals and to respond to their needs, preferences, and values, taking into account both shared requirements and individual characteristics (such as individuals' expectations of service, their cultural background, gender, and even subtle issues such as preferences for humour etc).

Services should recognise that the evaluation of patient experiences is complex and evolving. While patient-reported outcomes measures often have a history of robust development, the robustness of patient experiences measures, in terms of properties such as reliability and validity, is often less clear. Satisfaction as a concept that reflects the way in which patients evaluate their care has been challenged and further work is needed to develop instruments that better capture the ways In which patients want to report their experiences[20,118,119].

8.2 Evidence reviews and other inputs

Each of the following sources of evidence and information has been used to inform the recommendations on responsiveness of service – an individualised approach and a discussion of this is presented in section Recommendations and link to evidence.

8.2.1 Patient experience scoping study - a focused thematic qualitative overview review

The patient experience scoping study (please see Appendix B for the full report) identified aspects related to the patient as an individual in all the three areas examined. The findings are summarized in Table 11 below.

Table 11: Sub-themes from the patient experience scoping study related to Tailoring healthcare services for each patient

Cancer (Main theme: Support)	**Cardiovascular disease** (Main theme: Knowledge, understanding and making sense)	**Diabetes** (Main theme: Responsiveness)
Support of family/friends	Being left to figure it out yourself	Time spent with health professionals
Individualised approach	Translating knowledge into action	Time waiting
Responsiveness to needs		Response times
		Convenience
		Follow up
		Mistakes
		Tailoring care for individual rather than diabetes
		Satisfaction

In developing an individualised approach to service provision, health services should regularly seek feedback and act on results, to ensure the care they provide is patient-centred. While major re-configurations in service provision can be difficult and costly, sometimes providing an individualised approach can be about the small things. For example ensuring consultations don't feel rushed so patients feel able to ask questions. Studies have found that where more time was allowed, patients felt care was more personal and they were able to participate[9,42,43,47,105-107,120].

8.2.2 Existing NICE recommendations

The following recommendations, related to the responsiveness of services, are already in existence in other published NICE guidelines (please see Appendix C for more details on existing NICE recommendations):

- Accept that patients may have different views from healthcare professionals about the balance of risks, benefits and side effects of medicines.
  (From 'Medicines Adherence', R1.1.13)[79]
- Accept that the patient has the right to decide not to take a medicine, even if you do not agree with the decision, as long as the patient has the capacity to make an informed decision and has been provided with the information needed to make such a decision.
  (From 'Medicines Adherence', R1.1.15)[79]
- Assess the patient's capacity to make each decision using the principles in the Mental Capacity Act (2005) (www.opsi.gov.uk/ACTS/acts2005/ukpga_20050009_en_1). To lack capacity patients must: (a) have an impairment of or disturbance or malfunction of brain and mind, and (b) demonstrate lack of capacity to:
  - understand the information relevant to the decision
  - retain information for long enough to use it in the decision
  - use or weigh information as part of the process of making the decision
  - communicate the decision (whether by talking, using sign language or any other means).

  (From 'Medicines adherence', R 1.1.16)[79]
- Review patient knowledge, understanding and concerns about medicines, and a patient's view of their need for medicine at intervals agreed with the patient, because these may change over time. Offer repeat information and review to patients, especially when treating long-term conditions with multiple medicines.
  (From 'Medicines Adherence', R 1.3.1)[79]
- The named midwife or doctor should tell the woman about relevant services (such as drug and alcohol misuse support services) and encourage them to access these according to her individual needs.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.2.9)[85]

8.3 Recommendations and link to evidence

An individualised approach to services

Recommendations	**21. Adopt an individualised approach to healthcare services that is tailored to the patient's needs and circumstances, taking into account their ability to access services, personal preferences and coexisting conditions. Review the patient's needs and circumstances regularly.** **22. Inform the patient about healthcare services and social services (for example, smoking cessation services) that are available locally and nationally. Encourage and support them to access services according to their individual needs and preferences.** **23. Give the patient information about relevant treatment options and services that they are entitled to, even if these are not provided locally.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	The GDG considered that while tailoring services may require greater resource use than if this is not done, this is an essential part of good patient care. Other recommendations were considered to have minimal economic implications.
Quality of evidence	The evidence used was from the patient experience scoping study and consensus to develop the recommendations.
Other considerations	The GDG recognised that services are generally developed to cater for populations but considered that care must be taken to tailor services to individuals who require them. The GDG emphasised the importance of the patient being the centre of the healthcare service and as a consequence the healthcare professionals should respond to the patient's situation and requirement as much as possible. A common experience is for patients to be given appointments at times that are difficult for them and not to be given option of where they receive treatment. The GDG were clear that treatment and services needed to be centred on the individual rather than on the condition. For patients with multiple problems this requirement is particularly important. The GDG considered that patients have a right to be made aware of different treatment options even if the local service does not have the expertise or equipment to deliver that treatment. The individual patient need should be considered and the patient fully informed.

Patient views and preferences

Recommendations	**24. Hold discussions in a way that encourages the patient to express their personal needs and preferences for care, treatment, management and self-management. Allow adequate time so that discussions do not feel rushed.** **25. Review with the patient at intervals agreed with them:** • **their knowledge, understanding and concerns about their condition and treatments** • **their view of their need for treatment.** **26. Accept that the patient may have different views from healthcare professionals about the balance of risks, benefits and consequences of treatments.** **27. Accept that the patient has the right to decide not to have a treatment, even if you do not agree with their decision, as long as they have the capacity to make an informed decision (see recommendation 20) and have been given and understand the information needed to do this.** **28. Respect and support the patient in their choice of treatment, or if they decide to decline treatment.** **29. Ensure that the patient knows that they can ask for a second opinion from a different healthcare professional, and if necessary how they would go about this.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	Most of these recommendations are about attitudes to patients' preferences and as such the GDG considered them not to have economic implications. The GDG considered that while allowing adequate time for discussions and regular reviews may require greater resource use than if this is not done, this is an essential part of good patient care to ensure patients are adequately informed.
Quality of evidence	The GDG used evidence from the patient experience scoping study and consensus to develop the recommendations.
Other considerations	Allowing patients to express their personal needs and preferences is a pre-requisite to tailoring services to the individual patient. There can be an imbalance both in power and knowledge between healthcare professionals and patients. Effort is therefore required to both inform patients but also to ensure that they can express their personal needs and preferences. Attention to the environment such as adequate privacy and adequate time may need to be available to ensure the patient can express their needs and preferences.

Involvement of family members and carers

Recommendations	**30. Clarify with the patient at the first point of contact whether and how they would like their partner, family members and/or carers to be involved in key decisions about the management of their condition. Review this regularly. If the patient agrees, share information with their partner, family members and/or carers.** **31. If the patient cannot indicate their agreement to share information, ensure that family members and/or carers are kept involved and appropriately informed, but be mindful of any potentially sensitive issues and the duty of confidentiality.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	The GDG considered these recommendations to have minimal economic implications.
Quality of evidence	
Other considerations	Patients vary in regards to whether or not they wish for family and friends to be involved in their healthcare encounters and how much involvement they want their family and friends to have. This can only be ascertained by asking individual patients and should be clarified regularly with all patients. The GDG recognised the importance of confidentiality of patient information and the need to obtain consent, but considered the difficulties involved when family and friends need information but the patient cannot give consent to share information. The GDG had experience of healthcare professionals being obstructive when carers might need information to help them in their care of a relative.

Feedback and complaints

Recommendations	**32. Encourage the patient to give feedback about their care. Respond to any feedback given.** **33. If necessary, provide patients with information about complaints procedures and help them to access these.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	The GDG considered that while this may require a greater resource use than if this is not done, this is an essential part of good patient care. It was noted that complaint systems should already be in place as part of healthcare governance.
Quality of evidence	The GDG used evidence from the patient experience scoping study and consensus to develop the recommendations.
Other considerations	Individual healthcare practitioners and services need information and feedback about compliments and complaints to assess how well they are addressing patients' need. The GDG did not review evidence on methods of feedback but were aware that different methods can elicit different aspects of feedback and therefore multiple formats should be available and used.

9 Continuity of care and relationships

9.1 Introduction

In this review we have conceptualised continuity of care according to the definitions provided in the 2010 King's Fund report "continuity of care and the patient experience"[24]. Co-ordination of services is integral to this understanding. The types of continuity outlines are:

Relationship continuity: the ongoing therapeutic relationship with a healthcare professional.

Management continuity: continuous and consistent clinical management, including appropriate information transfer and care planning, as well as any necessary co-ordination of care required by the patient. This is relevant whenever a patient is receiving care from more than one clinician or provider.

Continuity of care is a concept relevant to all stages of the patient pathway and includes aspects of co-ordination, access or barriers to accessing services and the availability of services. There is potential overlap between continuity and the themes of treating the individual and responsiveness of services as services may need to respond to each individuals need for continuity. Continuity may rely on the development of good relationships and trust with health care professionals, which can take time to develop. Ensuring continuity of care in patients with multiple co-morbidities, as well as those who are aging or socially vulnerable, may be particularly important.

9.2 Evidence reviews and other inputs

Each of the following sources of evidence and information has been used to inform the recommendations on continuity of care and a discussion of this is presented in section 0.

9.2.1 Patient experience scoping study - a focused thematic qualitative overview review

The patient experience scoping study (see appendix B) identified continuity of care as a key theme in two of three therapy areas examined (cardiovascular disease and cancer). In the third, diabetes, continuity of care was a sub-theme within the key theme 'Relationships/partnership'. The sub-themes found are outline in Table 12 below.

Table 12: Sub-themes for continuity from patient experience scoping study

Sub-themes for diabetes	Sub-themes for cardiovascular disease	Sub-themes for cancer
Continuity of care not identified as a key theme – continuity of care was a sub-theme within the theme 'Relationships/partnership'.	Lack of continuity	Co-ordination
	Experiences of continuity	Availability/accessibility
	Poor communication between health care professionals and poorly coordinated services	Integration
	Feeling secure	Abandonment
		Relationship with health care professional
		Responsiveness to needs

9.2.2 NHS surveys

NHS Surveys are used to assess patient experience, to examine how the NHS performs and to identify which aspects of patient experience are most important to patients. Further information on patient surveys is in Section 5.4.

Findings from a survey by the Picker Institute Europe of inpatients which asked patients to score the importance of 82 aspects of care (Boyd 2007[5]) found that aspects relating to continuity of care were within the top ten. These were:

6. The doctors know enough about my medical history and treatment.
7. The nurses know enough about my medical history and treatment.

Secondary analysis of NHS surveys of inpatient and outpatient care was carried out to develop 'core domains'[112,113]. The questions that particularly contributed to the domain 'Consistency and co-ordination' for inpatients are listed below. In addition for outpatients, there were questions related to continuity of care listed as particularly contributing to the domain 'Information as discharge' and 'Doctors'. These questions are listed below.

Consistency and co-ordination (domain for inpatients)

Did members of staff say different things?

How would you rate how well the doctors and nurses worked together?

Information as discharge (domain for outpatients)

Did a member of staff tell you who to contact if you were worried about your condition or treatment after you left hospital?

Doctors (domain for outpatients)

Did the doctor seem aware of your medical history?

9.2.3 Existing NICE recommendations

The following recommendations pertaining to continuity of care were identified in recent NICE guidelines (see Appendix C for the full list of recommendations in all areas relating to Patient Experience) and used to inform recommendations pertaining to patient experience in general terms.

- At the booking appointment, give the woman a telephone number to enable her to contact a healthcare professional outside of normal working hours, for example the telephone number of the hospital triage contact, the labour ward or the birth centre.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.1.13)[85]
- Work with social care professionals to overcome barriers to care for women who misuse substances. Particular attention should be paid to:
  - integrating care from different services
  - ensuring that the attitudes of staff do not prevent women from using services
  - addressing women's fears about the involvement of children's services and potential removal of their child, by providing information tailored to their needs
  - addressing women's feelings of guilt about their misuse of substances and the potential effects on their baby.
    (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.2.1)[85]
- Healthcare commissioners and those responsible for providing local antenatal services should work with local agencies, including social care and third-sector agencies that provide substance misuse services, to coordinate antenatal care by, for example:

  - jointly developing care plans across agencies
  - including information about opiate replacement therapy in care plans
  - co-locating services
  - offering women information about the services provided by other agencies.
    (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.2.2)[85]
- Offer the woman a named midwife or doctor who has specialised knowledge of, and experience in, the care of women who misuse substances, and provide a direct-line telephone number for the named midwife or doctor.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.2.4)[85]
- Use a variety of methods, for example text messages, to remind women of upcoming and missed appointments.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.2.8)[85]
- The named midwife or doctor should tell the woman about relevant additional services (such as drug and alcohol misuse support services) and encourage her to use them according to her individual needs.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.2.9)[85]
- At the booking appointment discuss with the woman the importance of keeping her hand-held maternity record with her at all times.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.3.8)[85]
- Offer the young woman aged under 20 a named midwife, who should take responsibility for and provide the majority of her antenatal care, and provide a direct-line telephone number for the named midwife.
  (From 'Pregnancy and complex social factors', R 1.4.4)[85]
- Offer patients the opportunity to see the same specialist healthcare team more than once to agree treatment.
  (From 'Barrett's oesophagus - ablative therapy', R 1.1.11)[91]
- Every hospital with a cancer centre or unit should assign a CUP specialist nurse or key worker to patients diagnosed with MUO or CUP. The CUP specialist nurse or key worker should:
  - take a major role in coordinating the patient's care in line with this guidance
  - liaise with the patient's GP and other community support services
  - ensure that the patient and their carers can get information, advice and support about diagnosis, treatment, palliative care, spiritual and psychosocial concerns.
  - meet with the patient in the early stages of the pathway and keep in close contact with the patient regularly by mutual agreement and
  - be an advocate for the patient at CUP team meetings.
    (From 'Metastatic malignant disease of unknown primary origin', R 1.1.1.3)[67]
- Refer outpatients with MUO to the CUP team immediately using the rapid referral pathway for cancer, so that all patients are assessed within 2 weeks of referral. A member of the CUP team should assess inpatients with MUO by the end of the next working day after referral. The CUP team should take responsibility for ensuring that a management plan exists which includes:
  - appropriate investigations
  - symptom control
  - access to psychological support and
  - providing information.
    (From 'Metastatic malignant disease of unknown primary origin', R 1.1.1.4)[67]
- Healthcare professionals involved in the care of patients with advanced breast cancer should ensure that the organisation and provision of supportive care services comply with the recommendations made in 'Improving outcomes in breast cancer: manual update' (NICE cancer

service guidance [2002]) and 'Improving supportive and palliative care for adults with cancer' (NICE cancer service guidance [2004]), in particular the following two recommendations:

- 'Assessment and discussion of patients' needs for physical, psychological, social, spiritual and financial support should be undertaken at key points (such as diagnosis; at commencement, during, and at the end of treatment; at relapse; and when death is approaching).'
- 'Mechanisms should be developed to promote continuity of care, which might include the nomination of a person to take on the role of "key worker" for individual patients.'
  (Breast cancer – advanced', R 1.4.1)[65]

- All patients with breast cancer should be assigned to a named breast care nurse specialist who will support them throughout diagnosis, treatment and follow-up.
  (From 'Breast cancer – early and locally advanced', R 1.2.2)[66]
- Offer people with Rheumatoid Arthritis an annual review to:
  - assess disease activity and damage, and measure functional ability (using, for example, the Health Assessment Questionnaire [HAQ])
  - check for the development of comorbidities, such as hypertension, ischaemic heart disease, osteoporosis and depression
  - assess symptoms that suggest complications, such as vasculitis and disease of the cervical spine, lung or eyes
  - organise appropriate cross referral within the multidisciplinary team
  - assess the need for referral for surgery (see section 1.6)
  - assess the effect the disease is having on a person's life.
    (From 'Rheumatoid arthritis', R 1.5.1.4)[72]
- People with Rheumatoid Arthritis should have access to a named member of the multidisciplinary team (for example, the specialist nurse) who is responsible for coordinating their care.
  (From 'Rheumatoid arthritis', R 1.3.1.2)[72]
- Offer people with satisfactorily controlled established Rheumatoid Arthritis review appointments at a frequency and location suitable to their needs. In addition, make sure they:
  - have access to additional visits for disease flares,
  - know when and how to get rapid access to specialist care, and
  - have ongoing drug monitoring.
    (From 'Rheumatoid arthritis', R 1.5.1.3)[72]
- To ensure continuity of care, healthcare professional(s) with the appropriate competencies
  - Ensure the short-term and medium-term rehabilitation goals are reviewed, agreed and updated throughout the patient's rehabilitation care pathway. should coordinate the patient's rehabilitation care pathway. Key elements of the coordination are as follows.
  - Ensure the delivery of the structured and supported self-directed rehabilitation manual, when applicable.
  - Liaise with primary/community care for the functional reassessment at 2–3 months after the patient's discharge from critical care.
  - Ensure information, including documentation, is communicated between hospitals and to other hospital-based or community rehabilitation services and primary care services.
  - Give patients the contact details of the healthcare professional(s) on discharge from critical care, and again on discharge from hospital.
    (From 'Critical illness rehabilitation', R 1.1.1)[88]
- Ensure that the transfer of patients and the formal structured handover of their care are in line with 'Acutely ill patients in hospital' (NICE clinical guideline 50). This should include the formal handover of the individualised, structured rehabilitation programme.
  (From 'Critical illness rehabilitation', R 1.1.12)[88]

- Give patients the following information before, or as soon as possible after, their discharge from critical care. Also give the information to their family and/or carer, unless the patient disagrees.
  - Information about the rehabilitation care pathway.
  - Information about the differences between critical care and ward-based care. This should include information about the differences in the environment, and staffing and monitoring levels.
  - Information about the transfer of clinical responsibility to a different medical team (this includes information about the formal structured handover of care recommended in 'Acutely ill patients in hospital' (NICE clinical guideline 50).
  - If applicable, emphasise the information about possible short-term and/or long-term physical and non-physical problems that may require rehabilitation.
  - If applicable, information about sleeping problems, nightmares and hallucinations and the readjustment to ward-based care.
    (From 'Critical illness rehabilitation', R 1.1.13)[88]
- Give patients the following information before their discharge to home or community care. Also give the information to their family and/or carer, if the patient agrees.
  - Information about their physical recovery, based on the goals set during ward-based care if applicable.
  - If applicable, information about diet and any other continuing treatments.
  - Information about how to manage activities of daily living including self-care and re-engaging with everyday life.
  - If applicable, information about driving, returning to work, housing and benefits.
  - Information about local statutory and non-statutory support services, such as support groups.
  - General guidance, especially for the family and/or carer, on what to expect and how to support the patient at home. This should take into account both the patient's needs and the family's/carer's needs.
  - Give the patient their own copy of the critical care discharge summary.
    (From 'Critical illness rehabilitation', R 1.1.22)[88]
- Antenatal care should be provided by a small group of healthcare professionals with whom the woman feels comfortable. There should be continuity of care throughout the antenatal period.
  (From 'Antenatal care', R 1.2.2.1)[80]
- A system of clear referral paths should be established so that pregnant women who require additional care are managed and treated by the appropriate specialist teams when problems are identified.
  (From 'Antenatal care', R 1.2.2.2)[80]
- Women with diabetes who are planning to become pregnant should be advised:
  - that the risks associated with pregnancies complicated by diabetes increase with the duration of diabetes
  - to use contraception until good glycaemic control (assessed by HbA1c2
  - that glycaemic targets, glucose monitoring, medications for diabetes (including insulin regimens for insulin-treated diabetes) and medications for complications of diabetes will need to be reviewed before and during pregnancy) has been established
  - that additional time and effort is required to manage diabetes during pregnancy and that there will be frequent contact with healthcare professionals. Women should be given information about the local arrangements for support, including emergency contact numbers.
    (From 'Diabetes in pregnancy', R 1.1.1.2)[81]
- In order to encourage the person to participate in reducing their CVD risk, the healthcare professional should:

- find out what, if anything, the person has already been told about their CVD risk and how they feel about it
- explore the person's beliefs about what determines future health (this may affect their attitude to changing risk)
- assess their readiness to make changes to their lifestyle (diet, physical activity, smoking and alcohol consumption), to undergo investigations and to take medication
- assess their confidence in making changes to their lifestyle, undergoing investigations and taking medication
- inform them of potential future management based on current evidence and best practice
- involve them in developing a shared management plan
- check with them that they have understood what has been discussed.
  (from 'Lipid modification', R 1.2.5)[77]

- A young person with ADHD receiving treatment and care from CAMHS or paediatric services should be reassessed at school-leaving age to establish the need for continuing treatment into adulthood. If treatment is necessary, arrangements should be made for a smooth transition to adult services with details of the anticipated treatment and services that the young person will require. Precise timing of arrangements may vary locally but should usually be completed by the time the young person is 18 years.
  (From 'Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder', R 1.6.1.1)[73]

9.2.4 Literature review

9.2.4.1 What is the effectiveness of interventions to improve the continuity of care of patients in the National Health Service?

9.2.4.2 Clinical evidence

We searched for systematic reviews of RCTs and/or cohort studies assessing the effectiveness of interventions that might be applied to operationalise continuity of care with patient-focussed outcomes (for example: key workers, hand-held records, etc). The approach to searching and selection of interventions was deliberately kept broad in the hope the literature was well organised with patient-focussed outcomes that we could examine across as many interventions as possible in the time available to support guidance recommendations. Systematic reviews of efficacy data on nurse-led care, team-based interventions, the role of the pharmacist, discharge arrangements, shared care, midwife-led care, and nursing record systems were found. Most of these interventions were multifaceted and complex models of care with few patient-focussed outcome measures.

Midwife-led care was selected for review as there was a clear mechanism for operationalising continuity of care in that clinical area that was well defined in the literature. The applicability and transferability of these findings for a generic guidance would then be considered by the Guidance Development Group. It was not possible to conduct a review across all clinical areas to identify all potentially relevant studies and so mid-wife led care was viewed as a good proxy area which was likely to include many generic components. The aim of this review was to identify components of care that specifically improve continuity that could be generalised across disease areas.

One systematic review/meta-analysis by Devane 2011[16] that compared midwife-led models of care with other models of care for childbearing women and their infants was found. The systematic review was of good quality and included 17 RCTs (for details of the review and included studies, see Appendix F). See Table 13 for a summary of the primary results.

Table 13: Results of midwife-led models versus other models of care for childbearing women and their infants

Outcome	N	Effect size	Direction of effect
Mean number of antenatal visits	1 study, 405 participants	Mean difference (MD) 1.50; 95% CI 0.96 to 2.04	Women randomised to midwife led care had significantly more visits
Antenatal hospitalisation	6 trials, 5990 participants	Relative Risk 0.96; 95% CI 0.89 to 1.03,	Favour midwifery
Antepartum haemorrhage	5 trials, 5308 participants	RR 0.87; 95% CI 0.66 to 1.14,	Favours midwifery
Fetal loss/neonatal death before 24 weeks	11 trials, 16213 participants	RR 0.88; 95% CI 0.73 to 1.05,	Favours midwifery
Fetal loss/neonatal death equal to/after 24 weeks	12 trials, 17927 participants	RR 1.16; 95% CI 0.81 to 1.66,	Favours other models
Overall fetal loss and neonatal death	13 trials, 18129 participants	RR 0.93; 95% CI 0.79 to 1.09	Favours midwife led
Amniotomy	6 trials, 6068 participants	RR 0.80; 95% CI 0.75 to 0.85,	Favours midwifery
Augmentation/artificial oxytocin during labour	14 trials, 19035 participants	RR 0.85; 95% CI 0.81 to 0.89	Favours midwifery
No intrapartum analgesia/anaesthesia	8 trials, 11693 participants	RR 1.17; 95% CI 1.07 to 1.28	Favours midwifery
Regional analgesia (epidural/spinal)	16 trials, 19418 participants	RR 0.82; 95% CI 0.78 to 0.87	Favours midwifery
Opiate analgesia	14 trials, 17723 participants	RR 0.92; 95% CI 0.88 to 0.95	Favours midwifery
Mean labour length	4 trials, 5089 participants	MD 0.49; 95% CI 0.26 to 0.72	Favours other models
Induction of labour	13 trials, 17987 participants	RR 0.94; 95% CI 0.89 to 1.01	Favours midwifery
Attendance at birth by known midwife	6 trials, 5225 participants	RR 7.99; 95% CI 7.03 to 9.08	Favours midwifery
High perceptions of control during labour and childbirth	1 trial, 471 participants	RR 1.74; 95% CI 1.32 to 2.30	Favours midwifery
Caesarean birth	17 trials, 20010 participants	RR 0.94; 95% CI 0.87 to 1.02	Favours midwifery
Instrumental vaginal birth (forceps/vacuum assisted births)	16 trials, 19737 participants	RR 0.86; 95% CI 0.80 to 0.93	Favours midwifery
Spontaneous vaginal birth (as	14 trials,	RR 1.04; 95% CI 1.02 to 1.06	Favours

Outcome	N	Effect size	Direction of effect
defined by trial authors)	17117 participants		midwifery
Episiotomy	17 trials, 19866 participants	RR 0.86; 95% CI 0.8 2 to 0.90	Favours midwifery
Perineal laceration requiring suturing	9 trials, 12052 participants	RR 0.97; 95% CI 0.94 to 1.01	Favours midwifery
Intact perineum	11 trials, 14360 participants	RR 1.06; 95% CI 1.00 to 1.11	Favours midwifery
Postpartum haemorrhage (as defined by trial authors)	10 trials, 12979 participants	RR 0.99; 95% CI 0.87 to 1.12	Favours midwifery
Maternal death	1 trial, 2801 participants	RR 1.50; 95% CI 0.06 to 36.88	Favours mother models
Low birth weight (< 2500 g)	7 trials, 11528 participants	RR 0.97; 95% CI 0.83 to 1.15	Favours midwifery
Preterm birth (< 37 weeks)	7 trials, 11528 participants	RR 0.95; 95% CI 0.81 to 1.11	Favours midwifery
5-minute Apgar score below or equal to 7	13 trials, 12039 participants	RR 1.01; 95% CI 0.79 to 1.31	Favours midwifery
Admission to special care nursery/neonatal intensive care unit	14 trials, 19155 participants	RR 0.99; 95% CI 0.90 to 1.09	Favours midwifery
Mean length of neonatal hospital stay (days)	3 trials, 1912 participants	MD -1.83 (days); 95% CI -1.97 to -1.69	Favours midwifery
Neonatal convulsions (as defined by trial authors)	3 trials, 4738 participants	RR 1.43; 95% CI 0.38 to 5.34	Favours other models
Duration of postnatal hospital stay (days)	3 trials, 3597 participants	MD -0.10; 95% CI -0.21 to 0.01	Favours midwifery
Postpartum depression	1 trial, 1213 participants	RR 1.94; 95% CI 0.18 to 21.32	Favours other models
Breastfeeding initiation	3 trials, 3205 participants	RR 1.01; 95% CI 0.97 to 1.05	Favours other models
Prolonged backache (as defined by trial authors)	1 trial, 1822 participants	RR 1.40; 95% CI 0.62 to 3.13	Favours control

9.2.4.3 Economic evidence

The approach taken to the economic literature review was to undertake targeted searches following the identification of specific interventions in the clinical review of systematic reviews. A search was therefore undertaken to look to economic evaluations about mid-wife led care compared to other models of maternity care.

Five studies were included that examined costs or outcomes of midwife-led care versus usual care[4,32,34,109,127]. These are summarised in the economic evidence profile below. See also the full study evidence tables in Appendix G.

Three potentially includable economic analyses were excluded due to either being judged not applicable to the current NHS or having very serious methodological limitations[6,16,22].

Table 14: Economic evidence profile – midwife-led care versus usual care

Study	Applicability (a)	Limitations (b)	Other comments	Incremental cost (c)	Incremental effects (d)	ICER	Uncertainty
Begley 2009[4] (Ireland)	Partially applicable (e) (g)	Potentially serious limitations (l)(n)(m)	• Cost consequence analysis • Within-RCT analysis • Clinical study report – same publication	-£237(i)	• As safe • Less intervention • Higher satisfaction	n/a	• CI: NR • Deterministic sensitivity analysis around resource use and cost assumptions
Homer 2001[32] (Australia)	Partially applicable (e)(f)(g)	Potentially serious limitations (l)(n)(m)	• Cost consequence analysis • Within-RCT analysis • Clinical study report – Homer 2001[31]	-£438(j)	• Reduced caesareans	n/a	• CI: NR • Results sensitive to caesarean rate but still a cost saving when equivalent rate modelled
Hundley 1995[34] (Scotland)	Partially applicable (f)(g)	Potentially serious limitations (l)(n)(m)	• Cost consequence analysis • Within-RCT analysis • Clinical study report - Hundley 1994[35]	£40.71	• Significant differences in monitoring, fetal distress, analgesia, mobility, use of episiotomy; No difference in fetal outcome	n/a	• CI: NR • Deterministic scenario analysis: 2/9 scenarios resulted in cost saving.
Rowley 1995[109] (Australia)	Partially applicable (e)(f)(g)	Potentially serious limitations (l)(n)(m)	• Cost consequence analysis • Within-RCT analysis • Clinical study report – same publication • Inpatient care only	-£76(k)	• Higher satisfaction • Fewer adverse maternal and neonatal outcomes	n/a	• CI: NR • No sensitivity analysis
Young 1997[127] (Scotland)	Partially applicable (f)(g)	Potentially serious limitations (l)(n)(m)	• Cost consequence analysis • Within-RCT analysis • Clinical study report - Turnbull 1996[123]	£6.5	• Clinically safe and efficacious • Increased satisfaction • Enhanced continuity of care	n/a	• CI: NR • Increased caseload for midwives reduced difference in post-natal costs

CI = confidence interval; DCS = decisional conflict score; EQ5D = Euroqol five dimensions; ICER = incremental cost effectiveness ratio (incremental costs ÷ incremental effects); n/a not applicable; RCT = randomised clinical trial

(a) Directly applicable; partially applicable; not applicable

(b) Minor limitations; potentially serious limitations; serious limitations

(c) Difference in mean per patient

(d) For cost-consequence analyses (costs and various health outcomes reported separately and not combined into a cost-effectiveness ratio) only selected incremental effects are presented – see evidence table for full information about studies.
(e) Some uncertainty about applicability of non-UK resource use and costs
(f) Some uncertainty about applicability of resource use and costs from over 10 years ago
(g) QALYs not used
(h) Discount rates used not in line with NICE methodological guidance
(i) Converted from 2009 Euros (Ireland) using purchasing power parities[101]
(j) Converted from 2000 Australian dollars using purchasing power parities[101]
(k) Converted from 1999 Australian dollars using purchasing power parities[101]
(l) RCT-based analysis so from one study therefore by definition not reflecting all evidence in area
(m) Some limitations in cost estimation
(n) Limited sensitivity analysis

9.2.4.4 Evidence statements

Clinical — One systematic review[16] found evidence of benefit and an absence of evidence of harm for midwife-led models of care for childbearing women. Midwife-led care was shown to significantly increase continuity of care (as defined by attendance at birth by known midwife).

Economic — Of five within-RCT cost consequence analyses (Begley 2009[4], Homer 2001[32], Hundley 1995[34], Rowley 1995[109], Young 1997[127] – all partially applicable, potentially serious limitations), three found that average costs per person were reduced with midwife-led care (-£76 to -£438), and two found that costs were modestly increased (£6.5 to £40.71), with benefits to patients such as higher satisfaction and reduced intervention rates. Statistical significance of cost differences was not assessed.

9.3 Recommendations and link to evidence

Recommendations	**34. Assess each patient's requirement for continuity of care and how that requirement will be met. This may involve the patient seeing the same healthcare professional throughout a single episode of care, or ensuring continuity within a healthcare team.** **35. For patients who use a number of different services (for example, services in both primary and secondary care, or attending different clinics in a hospital), ensure effective coordination and prioritisation of care to minimise the impact on the patient.** **36. Ensure clear and timely exchange of patient information:** • **between healthcare professionals (particularly at the point of any transitions in care)** • **between healthcare and social care professionals (with the patient's consent).** **37. All healthcare professionals directly involved in a patient's care should introduce themselves to the patient.** **38. Inform the patient about:** • **who is responsible for their care and treatment** • **the roles and responsibilities of the different members of the healthcare team** • **the communication about their care that takes place between members of the healthcare team.** **39. Give the patient (and their family members and/or carers if appropriate) information about what to do and who to contact in different situations, such as 'out of hours' or in an emergency.**
Relative values of different outcomes	The GDG considered continuity of care important to patients as identified by NHS survey, framework analysis and consensus. Continuity of care can mean a number of different things to people. The 2010 King's Fund report[24] defines continuity of care as constituting both "relationship continuity" (a continuous therapeutic relationship with a

	clinician) and "management continuity" (continuity and consistence of clinical management, including providing and sharing information and care planning, and any necessary co-ordination of care required by the patient). The GDG noted that few continuity of care outcomes had been reported and where they were, they focussed on a single aspect of continuity, for example, chronology of a patient's contact with healthcare providers over time, or relationship continuity only. Outcome data from the included review of midwife-led care evaluated the intervention, including a crude measure of continuity of care, but did not examine what things about continuity of care specifically impacted outcome.
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered the importance of continuity of care in relation to patient experience and discussed how there is often a trade-off between rapid access to care and seeing a healthcare worker of their choice. The GDG agreed the importance of different aspects of continuity of care might vary according to a patient's personal circumstances and that they should be given the choice to decide what is best for them. The GDG considered midwife-led care as an example of an intervention that improves continuity of care, that has good evidence of benefit and an absence of evidence of harm. They highlighted how the 2008 Cochrane report on Midwife-led care[29] reported greater levels of maternal satisfaction associated with this model of care. The GDG considered the existing recommendations pertaining to continuity of care from published NICE guidelines. They discussed how a number of the recommendations were based on evidence reviews from specific disease areas and may not be suitable for generalising across all settings and populations (for example key workers such as breast cancer nurses and named mid-wives for women with complex social factors). The GDG agreed these recommendations highlighted key themes that were generic to all patient experience of continuity of care: • Continuity of care can mean different things to different people and what is important for one person may not be for another, nor consistently important in all circumstance (for example, a patient might prefer rapid access to care as opposed to seeing their usual clinician of choice). • The communication and transfer of information between clinicians managing care, healthcare services (such as secondary to primary care), and to the patient themselves is imperative to ensuring continuity of care. They acknowledged sometimes discontinuity of care is inevitable (for example: discharge is done by another clinician), but the key is to ensure information is exchanged smoothly at the point of handover process, and there is consistency of understanding in order to mitigate against discontinuity of care.
Economic considerations	Improving continuity of care for patients may require an investment in developing systems that facilitate this. However, midwife-led care illustrates that an alternative model of care that offers more continuity of care does not necessary mean increased costs. Providing patients with better continuity of care may result is other benefits to the health service – better coordinated care may be more efficient and so save money in the long term. For example, the GDG were aware of an economic analysis commissioned by the department of health regarding providing one-to-one support for cancer patients with the aim of improving continuity of care that suggested that additional costs were likely be offset by cost savings due to improvements in quality and coordination of care[25]. Providing patients with information about who was responsible for their care and who to contact under different circumstances was considered to have minimal resource implications. In addition it may have cost savings if people access healthcare more appropriately; for example if they contact an assigned

	nurse instead of going to A&E.
Quality of evidence	Continuity of care is an important theme in patient experience as indicated by the review of patient frameworks, the patient experience scoping study, information from NHS surveys and the GDG. The systematic review on midwife-led care was of good methodological quality. The review assumed midwife-led care assumed enduring contact with a provider is linked to stronger relationships, better information transfer and more consistent management. It did not test this association directly.
Other considerations	The GDG considered how interventions to improve continuity of care are often complex and multifaceted, and combine components such as interdisciplinary care, education and involvement in decision-making, implementation of care plans, assessment of care needs and integration of care as a person transits through the health system. The approach to this review was iterative and aimed to identify as much relevant literature by adopting a broad search strategy and focussing only on systematic reviews. When considering the interventions that were found (for example, discharge planning, shared care and nursing records) it was difficult to identify key factors/facilitators of continuity of care that improved outcome, as the associations were not directly tested and definitions varied across studies. Midwife-led care was chosen for further consideration as it is thought to enable both relationship (i.e. known carer) and management continuity (for example, coordination of care) and the definition of continuity of care was clear. The review did not reveal key facilitators for continuity of care that can be generalised across disease areas so recommendations were based on the GDG's professional and personal experiences. The GDG acknowledge the limitations of their search which was based on continuity of care terms, meaning all papers retrieved must have mentioned continuity of care in their title/abstract. Searches were not conducted for specific interventions and we excluded qualitative literature. In general the GDG noted little attention has been given to the patient's perspective on continuity of care but considered it key to a good patient experience based on the information found in the NHS survey and GDG consensus. More research is needed that focuses on continuity of care using outcomes that are important to patients. Members of the GDG discussed their experiences of visiting multiple healthcare providers for the care of comorbidites and how important it was that information was effectively exchanged between these services as well as the relevant healthcare professionals. Patient with co-morbidities also often receive multiple appointments which conflict or result in them having to visit the same centre multiple times. The GDG recognised the difficult in co-ordination across specialities but considered that the impact on patient experience of a lack of co-ordination is unacceptable. Prioritisation may also be required to individualise care for patients with multiple problems. The GDG discussed the importance of building relationships with a usual professional who can help to coordinate care and relate to them as an individual who is experiencing their condition in a unique way.

10 Enabling patients to actively participate in their care

10.1 Introduction

The importance of enabling patients to be active participants in their care has received extensive policy attention in the last few years[10,116]. Patients have the primary responsibility for managing their health in the context of their wider lives and this needs to be recognised within the provision of services and in the ways health care professionals interact with patients.

While not all patients want an active role, health care professionals and services need to recognise that many individuals want to be active participants and partners in their own care. Patients are co-creators and co-managers of their own health when they are in receipt of services and not just recipients or receivers of services or advice. Health care professionals need to provide a context in which patients feel able to participate and to share decisions if they want to, thus ensuring a good experience for those patients.

The content of the recommendations in this area is divided into communication, information, decision making and education programmes. There is inevitable overlap in these areas and some recommendations might belong in several areas. The division is intended only to help structure the reviews and recommendations.

10.2 Communication

10.2.1 Evidence reviews and other inputs

Each of the following sources of evidence and information has been used to inform the recommendations on communication and a discussion of this is presented in section 10.2.2.

10.2.1.1 Patient experience scoping study – a focused thematic qualitative overview

The patient experience scoping study (see appendix B) differed from frameworks such as IOM framework by separating communication from information for the purposes of identifying the themes within each dimension which emerged from studies. We do acknowledge these are closely linked and overlap. Communication included the style and content of verbal and non-verbal communication between patients and health care professionals and it was recognised that the style of communication can be an important way in which patients are enabled or indeed disabled in participating in their care. The sub themes found in the three areas examined in the scoping study are outline below.

Table 15: Sub-themes for communication from patient experience scoping study

Sub themes for diabetes	Sub themes for cardiovascular disease	Sub themes for cancer
Importance of communication	Openness	Patient-centred communication
Quality of communication	Communication style	Individualised approach
Listening/paying attention/acknowledging patient expertise	Consistent information	Context
Language	Barriers to communication	Responsibility/control
Questions and answers	Importance of communication	Character of health care

Sub themes for diabetes	Sub themes for cardiovascular disease	Sub themes for cancer
		professional
Explanations	Consequences of poor communication	Reassurance/hope
Brusque manner	Characteristics of patient communication	Psychosocial needs
	Wanting more opportunity for communication with health care professionals	Humour
	Staff communication skills	Support of family and friends
	Content of communication with health care professionals	
	Communication aids	
	Reassurance	

10.2.1.2 NHS surveys

NHS Surveys are used to assess patient experience, to examine how the NHS performs and to identify which aspects of patient experience are most important to patients. Further information on patient surveys is in Section 3.4.

Findings from a survey by the Picker Institute Europe of inpatients which asked patients to score the importance of 82 aspects of care (Boyd 2007[5]) found that aspects relating to communication rated highly. Within the top ten were:

(a) The doctors can answer questions about my condition and treatment in a way that I can understand.

(b) Before my operation or procedure, I get a clear explanation of what will happen.

(c) The risks and benefits of my operation or procedure are explained to me in a way that I can understand.

(d) The doctors and nurses are open with me about my treatment or condition.

Secondary analysis of NHS surveys of inpatient and outpatient care was carried out to develop 'core domains' [112 113]. The questions which contributed to the theme 'Doctors' were largely questions about communication. The individual items contributing to the domains of 'Nurses' and 'Other professionals' also included aspects of communication as seen below:

Doctors (domains for inpatients)

When you had important questions to ask a doctor, did you get answers that you could understand?

Doctors (domain for outpatients)

Did you have enough time to discuss your health or medical problem with the doctor?

Did the doctor explain the reasons for any treatment or action in a way that you could understand?

Did the doctor listen to what you had to say?

If you had important questions to ask the doctor, did you get answers that you could understand?

Other professionals (outpatients)

If you had important questions to ask [the other professional], did you get answers that you could understand?

10.2.1.3 Existing NICE recommendations

NICE recommendations do not usually cover attitudes and skills required for good communication. These are primarily covered in training and competencies of healthcare professionals and covered by professional codes. Recommendations covering good communication practice are found in some guidelines particularly in Medicines Adherence guideline which was a generic guideline (please see Appendix C for more details on existing NICE recommendations):

- Establish the most effective way of communicating with each patient and, if necessary, consider ways of making information accessible and understandable (for example, using pictures, symbols, large print, different languages, an interpreter or a patient advocate).
  (From 'Medicines Adherence', R1.1.3)[79]
- Use words the patients will understand; confirm understanding by questions; define unfamiliar words; write down key words; draw diagrams and keep a copy in the medical notes.
  (From 'Chronic heart failure', R 1.5.5.2)[55]
- Provide the most important information first.
  (From 'Chronic heart failure', R 1.5.5.2)[55]
- Ask patients open-ended questions because these are more likely to uncover patients' concerns.
  (From 'Medicines Adherence', R 1.1.5)[79]
- All members of the breast cancer clinical team should have completed an accredited communication skills training programme.
  (From 'Breast cancer –early and locally advanced', R 1.2.1)[66]
- Be aware that the consultation skills needed for increasing patient involvement can be improved.
  (From 'Medicines Adherence', R 1.1.6)[79]

10.2.2 Recommendations and link to evidence

Recommendations	**40. Ensure that the environment is conducive to discussion and that the patient's privacy is respected, particularly when discussing sensitive, personal issues.** **41. Maximise patient participation in communication by, for example:** • **maintaining eye contact with the patient (if culturally appropriate)** • **positioning yourself at the same level as the patient** • **ensuring that the patient is appropriately covered (if applicable).** **42. Ask the patient how they wish to be addressed and ensure that their choice is respected and used.** **43. Establish the most effective way of communicating with each patient and explore ways to improve communication. Examples include using pictures, symbols, large print, Braille, different languages, sign language or communications aids, or involving an**

	interpreter, a patient advocate or family members. **44. Ensure that the accent, use of idiom and dialect of both the patient and the healthcare professionals are taken into account when considering communication needs.** **45. Avoid using jargon. Use words the patient will understand, define unfamiliar words and confirm understanding by asking questions.** **46. Use open-ended questions to encourage discussion.** **47. Summarise information at the end of a consultation and check that the patient has understood the most important information.**
Relative values of different outcomes	The GDG considered that good communication was an essential aspect of good patient care. Other important aspects of good patient experience will be undermined if communication is not appropriate.
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	The replacement of poor communication with better communication was not considered to have additional costs. Any additional cost required by extra time or use of interpreters was considered likely to be offset by better patient understanding and the need for fewer repeated consultations.
Quality of evidence	The GDG used evidence reviews from Medicines Adherence guideline and findings of NHS surveys to inform the recommendations.
Other considerations	The GDG used their own professional and personal experiences to inform these recommendations. They considered that good communication is an area that all involved in healthcare need to consider. This includes hospital porters, cleaning staff, reception, clerical or administrative staff all of whom interact with patients. Some skills are more important in clinical consultations e.g. summarising information, but not using jargon, using appropriate eye contact, asking the patient how they wish to be addressed for example, are relevant in all settings and for all personnel. There is a requirement under equality and diversity considerations to ensure that patients who need help with communication receive that help.

Recommendation	**48. Offer the patient copies of letters between healthcare professionals. These should be in a form that is accessible to the patient and if possible use language that they will understand. Answer any questions the patient may have about these.**
Relative values of different outcomes	The GDG considered that access to information about them was a patient's right and was included in the NHS plan. It is also included as a pledge in the NHS constitution. Copying of letters improves both communication and information
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered that the benefits outweighed any harms and that good practice guidelines were developed by the department of health to consider areas such as harm to the patient, third party information and mental capacity. http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_4007561
Economic considerations	The GDG considered that while this may require greater resource use than if this is not done it is an essential part of good patient care as evidenced by being part of the NHS plan and constitution.

Quality of evidence	No specific evidence was reviewed for this recommendation but the GDG considered it important to include a recommendation to support patient's rights under the NHS constitution.
Other considerations	

Recommendation	**49. All staff involved in providing NHS services should have demonstrated competency in relevant communication skills.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered there were no harms likely.
Economic considerations	The GDG considered that there is a potential cost to the provision of training in communication skills. However communication is now an integral part of most professional courses and most healthcare professionals are required to take part in professional development. Prioritising communication skills in induction and professional development training would not necessarily add costs.
Quality of evidence	The GDG drew on the evidence review for Medicine Adherence which indicated that communication skills can be improved.
Other considerations	Communication issues are highlighted by patients as being important yet the GDG were all aware of poor practice in this area. The GDG considered that although communication skills are taught to healthcare professionals in training and continuing development, there is the potential for attitudes and skills learnt in these settings to be forgotten when delivering healthcare. Poor communication practices are also common and the impact of exposure to this is potentially more powerful than formal courses. The continued need to demonstrate competency should therefore be required of all members of the healthcare team having contact with patients.

10.3 Information

10.3.1 Evidence reviews and other inputs

Each of the following sources of evidence and information has been used to inform the recommendations on information and a discussion of this is presented in section 10.3.2.

10.3.1.1 Patient experience scoping study - a focused thematic qualitative overview

The patient experience scoping study (see Appendix B) differed from frameworks such as the IOM framework by separating communication from information. There is however overlap between communication, information and decision-making. Information is a pre-requisite for self care and for involvement in decision-making. Patients however also need to make sense of their health and information is required for this. Information needs to be individualised to the patient. There was a sub theme in all clinical areas examined of patients not wanting or being ambivalent about information or knowledge. This highlights the need to consider the timing of information and how to deliver the information. Sources of information and support outside healthcare services were also important to patients. The sub themes in the individual areas are listed below.

Table 16: Sub themes for information from patient experience scoping study

Sub themes for diabetes	Sub themes for cardiovascular disease	Sub themes for cancer
Importance of information and advice	Satisfaction with information: Feeling informed	Individualised approach
Problems with information	Importance of information	Honesty/realism
Not wanting information	Wanting more information	Reassurance/hope
Feedback on condition	Wanting individualised information	Format and quality
Sources of further help	Format	Responsibility/control
Education and groups	Delivery	Information: Diagnosis
Peer support	Timing	Information: Treatment
Need for emotional support	Not wanting to know	Information: Prognosis
	Recall	
	Sources	
	Involvement of family/friends	
	Changing information	
	Inconsistent information	
	Sharing information	

10.3.1.2 NHS surveys

NHS Surveys are used to assess patient experience, to examine how the NHS performs and to identify which aspects of patient experience are most important to patients. Further information on patient surveys is in Section 5.4.

Secondary analysis of NHS surveys of inpatient and outpatient care was carried out to develop 'core domains' [112 113]. The questions which contributed to the theme 'Doctors' were largely questions about communication. The individual items contributing to the domains of 'Nurses' and 'Other professionals' also included aspects of information giving as seen below:

Involvement (domains for inpatient)

Were you involved as much as you wanted to be in decisions about your care and treatment?

How much information about your condition or treatment was given to you?

Did you feel you were involved in decisions about your discharge from hospital?

Doctors (domains for inpatient)

When you had important questions to ask a doctor, did you get answers that you could understand?

Dealing with the issue (domains for outpatient)

While you were in the Outpatients Department, how much information about your condition or treatment was given to you?

Were you involved as much as you wanted to be in decisions about your care and treatment?

Doctors (domains for outpatients)

Did the doctor explain the reasons for any treatment or action in a way that you could understand?

Other professionals (domains for outpatients)

If you had important questions to ask [the other professional], did you get answers that you could understand?

Information about discharge (domains for outpatients)

Did a member of staff tell you about medication side effects to watch out for?

Did you receive copies of letters sent between hospital doctors and your family doctor (GP)?

Did a member of staff tell you about what danger signals regarding your illness or treatment to watch for after you went home?

Information about treatment (domains for outpatients)

Before the treatment did a member of staff explain what would happen?

Before the treatment did a member of staff explain any risks and/or benefits in a way you could understand?

10.3.1.3 Existing NICE recommendations

Information and support for patients is part of core content of the majority of NICE clinical guidelines. The review of existing NICE guidelines found a large number of recommendations about the provision of information for patients. 'Saturation' was rapidly reached when reviewing guidelines i.e. further review of guidelines did not locate any additional themes and recommendations (please see Appendix C for more details on existing NICE recommendations):

- Provide people with advice and information to promote self-management of their low back pain. (From 'Low back pain', R 1.2.1)[78]
- Offer patients and carers clear, consistent information and advice throughout all stages of their care. This should include the risks of surgical site infections, what is being done to reduce them and how they are managed.
  (From 'Surgical site infection', R 1.1.1)[83]
- Pregnant women should be offered information based on the current available evidence together with support to enable them to make informed decisions about their care. This information should include where they will be seen and who will undertake their care.
  (From 'Antenatal care', R 1.1.1.4)[80]
- Offer people with CKD education and information tailored to the stage and cause of CKD, the associated complications and the risk of progression.
  (From 'Chronic Kidney Disease', R 1.3.1)[69]
- Give patients verbal and written information about their diagnosis, available treatments, patient support groups and the uncertainty of the long-term outcomes of ablative therapies. Give patients time to consider this information when making decisions about their care.
  (From 'Barrett's oesophagus - ablative therapy', R 1.1.9)[91]
- Offer people the opportunity to discuss their diagnosis, prognosis and treatment, and provide them with relevant information in an accessible format at initial and subsequent visits.
  (From 'Glaucoma', R 1.6.1)[62]

- Patients (or home carers) should be given appropriate information to enable them to fully understand the correct use of medications, including oxygen, before discharge.
  (From 'Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease', R 1.3.11.5)[56]
- Healthcare professionals should be aware of local cardiac support networks and provide this information to patients and carers.
  (From 'Chronic heart failure', R 1.5.7.1)[55]
- Men with prostate cancer should be offered advice on how to access information and support from websites (for example, UK Prostate Link – www.prostate-link.org.uk), local and national cancer information services, and from cancer support groups.
  (From 'Prostate cancer', R 1.1.3)[64]
- Suggest where patients might find reliable information and support after the consultation: for example, by providing written information or directing them to other resources (for example, NHS Choices [www.nhs.uk]).
  (From 'Medicines adherence', R 1.1.31)[79]

10.3.2 Recommendations and link to evidence

Recommendations	**50. Give the patient information, and the support they need to make use of the information, in order to promote their active participation in care and self-management.** **51. Give the patient both oral and written information.** **52. Give the patient information in an accessible format, at the first and subsequent visits. Possible formats include using written information, pictures, symbols, large print, Braille and different languages.** **53. Explore the patient's preferences about the level and type of information they want. Based on this, give the patient (and their family members and/or carers if appropriate) clear, consistent, evidence-based, tailored information throughout all stages of their care. This should include, but not be limited to, information on:** • **their condition and any treatment options** • **where they will be seen** • **who will undertake their care** • **expected waiting times for consultations, investigations and treatments.** **54. Ensure that mechanisms are in place to:** • **provide information about appointments to patients who require information in non-standard formats** • **alert services of any need for interpreters and non-standard formats to be available when patients move between services.** **55. Ask the patient whether they want to be accompanied at consultations by a family member, friend, or advocate, and whether they would like to take notes and/or an audio recording of the consultation.**

Relative values of different outcomes	Information is an outcome in itself but is also an integral part of patient involvement in their care.
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered that rate of delivery and type of information provided to patients has to be made according to the needs and wishes of individual patients but that information per se was unlikely to harmful.
Economic considerations	Patients with needs for information in different formats have a right to access information. There are potential cost implications to the provision of information in a variety of formats. However, providing adequate information in a format that is useful to patients may also have cost offsets for example fewer healthcare visits due to improved understanding.
Quality of evidence	The need for information in a number of areas was an important theme in the patient experience scoping study.
Other considerations	The GDG used professional and personal experience to develop these recommendations. The GDG considered it essential to provide information in different formats. They were concerned that patients who need information in alternate formats have access to this before they are seen in a service for example: information about appointments. If it is not available access to services may be affected. The GDG considered it important that patients are informed about the process of care as well as their condition and its treatment. They should therefore be given information about who is/will provide care and as much information on waiting times for investigations and treatments. The GDG recognised that it is common for patients to report not remembering what was said in a consultation. Exploration with the patient of mechanisms that may help them retain information such as taking notes, making a recording or having someone accompany them should be instigated and encouraged by healthcare professionals.

Recommendation	**56. Give the patient (and/or their family members and carers) information to enable them to use any medicines and equipment correctly. Ensure that the patient and their family members and carers feel adequately informed, prepared and supported to use medicines and equipment and to carry out self-care and self-management.**
Relative values of different outcomes	The GDG considered that adequate information is an outcome in itself but is also a necessary step for patients to be able to use medicines and equipment.
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG did not consider there were any harms.
Economic considerations	If this is not being done adequately at present, providing this information has potential time, and so cost, implications. . However, this is an essential part of safe and effective patient care and it is potentially more costly to provide medication or equipment which will not or cannot be used by patients and carers.
Quality of evidence	This recommendation was developed by consensus of the GDG and existing recommendations.
Other considerations	The recommendation was influenced by the professional and personal experiences of the GDG. The GDG discussed existing recommendations and they acknowledged the need to understand how medications and equipment should be correctly used to enable their greatest effect.

Recommendation	57. Advise the patient where they might find reliable high-quality information and support after consultations, from sources such as national and local support groups, networks and information services.
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered that people should be directed to known sources of quality information rather than be without guidance and use any source. There is potentially more harm if patients are not given some direction.
Economic considerations	There are no significant costs to this recommendation.
Quality of evidence	The requirement for direction to outside sources of information was an important theme in the patient experience scoping study of patient experiences. It has also been identified as an important area for recommendations in topic specific NICE guidelines.
Other considerations	Patients could be informed about the certification provided by the department of health via The Information Standard Scheme which provides a recognised "quality mark" which indicates that an organisation is a reliable source of health and social care information. http://www.theinformationstandard.org/

Recommendation	58. Give the patient regular, accurate information about the duration of any delays during episodes of care.
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	This recommendation was considered to have minimal economic implications.
Quality of evidence	Evidence from the scoping study indicated the importance of this for patient experience.
Other considerations	The experience of the GDG was that patients are often not adequately informed about what is happening both when receiving and awaiting treatment. It is a common experience for patients to be kept waiting for attention or treatment but not to be updated about how long they may have to wait. The GDG considered that such information was rarely shared with patients, that honesty was important and that information is helpful for patients to prevent false expectations and allow them to manage time well.

10.4 Shared decision making

10.4.1 Evidence reviews and other inputs

Each of the following sources of evidence and information has been used to inform the recommendations on decision making and a discussion of this is presented in section 10.4.2.

10.4.1.1 Patient experience scoping study - a focused thematic qualitative overview

The scoping study (see appendix B) identified decision making as a key theme in one of the three therapy areas examined (cancer). In the other areas, diabetes and cardiovascular disease, decision making was not identified as a key theme; however, in diabetes, shared decision making was identified as a sub-theme within the key theme 'Relationships/partnership'. The sub-themes found are outlined in Table 17 below.

Table 17: Sub-themes for communication from patient experience scoping study

Sub-themes for diabetes	Sub-themes for cardiovascular disease	Sub-themes for cancer
Decision making was not identified as a key theme – shared decision making was a sub-theme within the key theme 'Relationships/partnership'.	Decision making not identified as a key theme or subtheme.	Individualised approach
		Support of family-friends
		Responsibility/control
		Trust in expertise
		Relationship with health care professional
		Medical uncertainty

10.4.1.2 NHS surveys

NHS Surveys are used to assess patient experience, to examine how the NHS performs and to identify which aspects of patient experience are most important to patients. Further information on patient surveys is in Section 5.4.

Secondary analysis of NHS surveys of inpatient and outpatient care was carried out to develop 'core domains' [112] [113]. The questions which contributed to the domains 'Involvement' (for inpatients) and 'Dealing with the issue' (for outpatients) included some about decision making:

Involvement (domain for inpatients)

Were you involved as much as you wanted to be in decisions about your care and treatment?

Did you feel you were involved in decisions about your discharge from hospital?

Dealing with the issue (domain for outpatients)

Were you involved as much as you wanted to be in decisions about your care and treatment?

10.4.1.3 Existing NICE recommendations

The following recommendations, related to the decision making, are already in existence in other published NICE guidelines (please see Appendix C for more details on existing NICE recommendations):

- Explain the risks and benefits of treatment options to people with RA in ways that can be easily understood. Throughout the course of their disease, offer them the opportunity to talk about and agree all aspects of their care, and respect the decisions they make.
  (From 'Rheumatoid arthritis', R 1.2.11)[72]
- The risks and benefits of treatment options, taking into account comorbidities, should be communicated to the patient in ways that can be understood.
  (From 'Osteoarthritis', R 1.1.6)[70]
- Healthcare professionals should use everyday, jargon-free language to communicate information on risk. If technical terms are used, these should be clearly explained.
  (From 'Lipid modification' R 1.2.1)[77]
- Adequate time should be set aside during the consultation to provide information on risk assessment and to allow any questions to be answered. Further consultation may be required.
  (From 'Lipid modification', R 1.2.2)[77]
- People should be offered information about their absolute risk of CVD and about the absolute benefits and harms of an intervention over a 10-year period. This information should be in a form that:
  - presents individualised risk and benefit scenarios
  - presents the absolute risk of events numerically
  - uses appropriate diagrams and text.
    (From 'Lipid modification', R 1.2.4)[77]
- Healthcare professionals have a duty to help patients to make decisions about their treatment based on an understanding of the likely benefits and risks rather than on misconceptions.
  (From 'Medicines adherence', R 1.1.12)[79]
- To help men decide whether to have a prostate biopsy, healthcare professionals should discuss with them their PSA level, DRE findings (including an estimate of prostate size) and comorbidities, together with their risk factors (including increasing age and black African or black Caribbean ethnicity) and any history of a previous negative prostate biopsy. The serum PSA level alone should not automatically lead to a prostate biopsy.
  (From 'Prostate cancer', R 1.2.1)[64]
- Be aware of the potential risk of developing side effects (including non-fatal pneumonia) in people with COPD treated with inhaled corticosteroids and be prepared to discuss with patients.
  (From 'Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease', R1.2.2.3)[56]
- Offer information about the risks of diagnostic testing, including any radiation exposure.
  (From 'Chest pain of recent onset', R 1.1.1.5)[54]
- Offer patients clear information about the risks and benefits of the treatments offered so that they can make informed choices about management strategies. Information should be appropriate to the patient's underlying risk of a future adverse cardiovascular event and any comorbidities.
  (From 'Unstable angina and NSTEMI', R 1.1.1)[52]
- The choice of treatment should be made after discussion between the responsible clinician and the woman about the risks and benefits of each option. Factors to consider when making the choice include whether the woman has received tamoxifen before, the licensed indications and side-effect profiles of the individual drugs and, in particular, the assessed risk of recurrence.
  (From 'Breast cancer – early and locally advanced', R 1.7.7)[66]
- Perform investigations only if:
  - the results are likely to affect a treatment decision
  - the patient understands why the investigations are being carried out
  - the patient understands the potential benefits and risks of investigation and treatment and

- the patient is prepared to accept treatment.
  (From 'Metastatic malignant disease of unknown primary origin', R 1.3.1.2)[67]

- Before starting non-invasive ventilation, the multidisciplinary team should carry out and coordinate a patient-centred risk assessment, after discussion with the patient and their family and carers. This should consider:
  - the most appropriate type of non-invasive ventilator and interfaces, based on the patient's needs and lifestyle factors
  - the patient's tolerance of the treatment
  - the risk, and possible consequences, of ventilator failure
  - the power supply required, including battery back-up
  - how easily the patient can get to hospital
  - risks associated with travelling away from home (especially abroad)
  - whether a humidifier is required
  - issues relating to secretion management
  - the availability of carers.
    (From 'Motor neurone disease - non-invasive ventilation', R 1.1.17)[93]
- Before starting VTE prophylaxis, offer patients and/or their families or carers verbal and written information on:
  - the risks and possible consequences of VTE
  - the importance of VTE prophylaxis and its possible side effects
  - the correct use of VTE prophylaxis (for example, anti-embolism stockings, foot impulse or intermittent pneumatic compression devices).
  - how patients can reduce their risk of VTE (such as keeping well hydrated and, if possible, exercising and becoming more mobile).
    (From 'Venous thromboembolism - reducing the risk', R 1.7.2)[60]
- Offer adjuvant radiotherapy to patients with DCIS following adequate breast conserving surgery and discuss with them the potential benefits and risks (see recommendation in section 1.3.1)
  (From 'Breast cancer – early and locally advanced', R 1.11.2)[66]
- Discuss the benefits and risks of stopping treatment with people with OHT or suspected COAG who have both:
  - a low risk of ever developing visual impairment within their lifetime
  - an acceptable IOP.

  If a person decides to stop treatment following discussion of the perceived risks of future conversion to COAG and sight loss, offer to assess their IOP in 1 to 4 months' time with further monitoring if considered clinically necessary.
  (From 'Glaucoma', R 1.2.11)[62]
- Men and their partners or carers should be given information, support and adequate time to decide whether or not they wish to undergo prostate biopsy. The information should include an explanation of the risks (including the increased chance of having to live with the diagnosis of clinically insignificant prostate cancer) and benefits of prostate biopsy.
  (From 'Prostate cancer', R 1.2.2)[64]
- In order to encourage the person to participate in reducing their CVD risk, the healthcare professional should:
  - find out what, if anything, the person has already been told about their CVD risk and how they feel about it
  - explore the person's beliefs about what determines future health (this may affect their attitude to changing risk)

- assess their readiness to make changes to their lifestyle (diet, physical activity, smoking and alcohol consumption), to undergo investigations and to take medication
- assess their confidence in making changes to their lifestyle, undergoing investigations and taking medication
- inform them of potential future management based on current evidence and best practice
- involve them in developing a shared management plan
- check with them that they have understood what has been discussed.
  (From 'Lipid modification', R 1.2.5)[77]

- When lipid-modifying drug therapy is first considered for women and girls, the risks for future pregnancy and the fetus while taking lipid-modifying drug therapy should be discussed. This discussion should be revisited at least annually.
  (From 'Familial hypercholesterolaemia', R 1.4.2.1)[76]

10.4.1.4 Literature review: risk communication

Communicating risk to patients is a vital role for clinicians as it is important for patients to understand risk in order to make an informed choice and give consent to treatment. There is little guidance on how risk is communicated so this review examines available evidence pertaining to the format of presenting risk (for example: percentage [1% risk of adverse effect] or frequencies [1 in 100 risk of adverse effect]), whether individualising the risk to the patient has an effect, and framing. Framing can be positive (99 out of 100 risk that there will no adverse effect) or negative (1 in a 100 change of an adverse effect).

Review question: What methods of presenting information improve a patient's understanding of the risks and benefits associated with their treatment options?

Clinical evidence

There was no time limit placed on the literature search for systematic reviews addressing of methods of presenting information improve a patient's understanding of the risks and benefits associated with their treatment options. There were no limitations on type of studies included in the systematic review.

Systematic reviews were included which considered adults over the ages of 16 years old. Systematic reviews were excluded which included people using health services specifically for the treatment of mental health problems. Seven systematic reviews/meta-analyses [1,2,18,19,46,114,122] were identified which addressed the question and were included in the review. A summary of these reviews is presented in Table 18.

Table 18: Summary of systematic reviews

Study	Population	Type of communication
Akl 2011[1]	Chronic disease, genetic testing, vaccination	Types of statistical presentation or formats for standard information – comparing risk frequencies; relative risk reduction or absolute risk reduction to risk probabilities; absolute risk reduction or numbers needed to treat
Albada 2009[2]	Cancer knowledge and screening behaviour	Individualised compared to general information – Intervention groups receiving tailored information, based on more than one variable (behavioural change variables, cultural constructs, cancer risk factors); control groups receiving no information, standard information or usual care
Edwards	Epilepsy, cancer treatment,	"Framing" effects – comparing negative framing (for

Study	Population	Type of communication
2001[19]	immunisation, screening	example: chance of death) to positive framing (for example: change of survival); loss framing (for example: disadvantage of not undertaking screening) to gain framing (for example: advantage of screening); numerical and graphical information to numerical only; more data points to fewer data points; numerical information compared to verbal (qualitative) information (for example: frequently", "rarely"); relative risk compared to absolute risk or number needed to treat; vivid portrayal (for example: detailed or personalised vignette) compared to abstract or general risk information; lay terminology (for example: loss of appetite) compared to medical terminology (for example: anorexia); Larger denominators compared to smaller denominators
Edwards 2006[18]	Screening for cancer, antenatal, genetic, cardiovascular, neonatal	Individualised compared to general information – personalised risk communication based on individual's risk factors (presented as absolute or relative risk or risk score or high/medium/low risk categories). Could come before screening, at the time of screening, or at the time of counselling or promotion of screening; could be oral, written, video or electronic compared to generalised risk information (for example: population risk estimate, general info on risk factors, general encouragement to acknowledge risks or change risk behaviour)
Lopez 2008[46]	Contraception	Types of statistical presentation or formats for standard information - Methods of communicating contraceptive effectiveness to consumers (educational programmes or materials and counselling sessions as individuals or groups) compared to usual practice or an alternative method
Smerecnik 2009[114]	Impact of genetic counselling on risk perception accuracy.	Types of statistical presentation or formats for standard information – genetic counselling: 4 studies used a protocol; 2 used standardised script; 3 used audiotapes to content check the counselling session; 12 did not mention any of these measures of content; the quality of the genetic counselling descriptions was poor compared to pre- to post-counselling measures of risk perception accuracy
Trevena 2006[122]	Effective formats for communicating probabilistic information	Effectiveness of different formats for communicating probabilistic information

Individualised compared to general information

Two systematic reviews[2,18] considered individualised information compared to general information. The two systematic reviews are presented individually below.

The first systematic review[2] considered the effects are found of tailored interventions on risk perception, cancer knowledge and screening behaviour the review included 40 studies considering people at risk of developing cancer.

The review included studies that compared groups receiving tailored information, based on more than one variable (behavioural change variables, cultural constructs, cancer risk factors) to groups receiving no information, standard information or usual care; the review considered the outcomes of cancer risk perception or knowledge or behaviour related to cancer screening.

The Table 19 below summarises the results reported in the review.

Table 19: Tailoring information

Outcome measure	Type of cancer/ screening/ outcome	Type of tailoring variables	Control group	No. of studies	Significant positive effect (p<0.05)	Best evidence synthesis
Knowledge of	Breast cancer and mammography	Risk factors and behavioural constructs	Standard reminder	1	2 low quality RCTs. At 24 months, intervention significantly improved knowledge compared to control; no difference at 12 months	indicative findings
	Breast cancer and heredity	Risk factors, behavioural constructs and information processing constructs	Standard info	1	1 low quality RCT: at 2-week follow up, intervention group had greater improvement in knowledge (p<0.0001)	indicative findings
	Melanoma	Risk factors	No intervention	1	1 high quality RCT: 6 months post-intervention: higher increase in knowledge (OR 0.51, 95% CI 0.30-0.72, p<0.001) in intervention group compared to control	limited evidence
Risk perception	Accuracy of perceived cancer risks	Risk factors	Standard info	2	1 moderate quality: no significant effects and 1 moderate quality RCT: group receiving personalised relative and absolute risk had greater improvement on relative risk accuracy than control (risk information only) p<0.01, as did a third group receiving absolute risk presentation only p<0.001	indicative findings
		Risk factors	No intervention	1	None	no evidence
		Risk factors and behavioural constructs	Standard reminder/ no intervention	2	2 low quality RCTs: 1 data not shown; the other found that individualised risk feedback reduced perceived cancer risk among over-estimators: OR 1.36,	indicative findings

Outcome measure	Type of cancer/ screening/ outcome	Type of tailoring variables	Control group	No. of studies	Significant positive effect (p<0.05)	Best evidence synthesis
					p<0.05 at 6 months	
Screening for (adherence to recommended screening interval)	Breast cancer (mammography)	Risk factors	Standard or personalised (i.e. named for that person but not with tailoring) info	3	1 low quality RCT: higher increase in mammography rate in intervention group (10.2% vs. 2.5% with standard info; p=0.05) 1 moderate quality RCT: women receiving personalised tailored letter had lower pap-test and mammography rate compared to control group and women receiving personalised form letter with risk factor information on BC and cervical cancer. Latter group had higher screening rates than control (p <0.001)	insufficient evidence
		Behavioural constructs	Standard info	4	none	no evidence
			No intervention	10	6 low quality RCTs: OR for screening ranged from 1.07 to 1.72 in the 4 studies reporting this; 1 study reported an ARR of 1.29 but it is unclear what this is referring to.	indicative findings
		Risk factors and behavioural constructs	Standard reminder/ no intervention	2	none	no evidence
		Behavioural and cultural constructs	No intervention	1	1 moderate quality RCT: OR for screening 2.6, 95% CI 1.1-6.1 at 17 months post-intervention	indicative findings
	Cervical cancer (pap test)	Risk factors	Personalised info	1	none	no evidence
		Behavioural	No intervention	2	none	no evidence

Outcome measure	Type of cancer/ screening/ outcome	Type of tailoring variables	Control group	No. of studies	Significant positive effect (p<0.05)	Best evidence synthesis
		constructs				
	Colorectal cancer (faecal occult blood test)	Risk factors	Standard info	1	none	no evidence
		Risk factors and behavioural constructs	Standard info	1	none	no evidence
	Skin cancer (mole checking)	Risk factors	No intervention	1	1 high quality RCT: 6 months post-intervention: higher mole checking (OR 1.67, 95% CI 1.04-2.70) in intervention group	limited evidence

The second systematic review[18] considered different types of personalised/ individualised risk communication for consumers making decisions about screening tests. The review included 22 studies considering people making real life decisions about whether to undergo healthcare screening tests.

The review included studies that compared personalised risk communication based on individual's risk factors (presented as absolute or relative risk or risk score or high/medium/low risk categories). Could come before screening, at the time of screening, or at the time of counselling or promotion of screening; could be oral, written, video or electronic to generalised risk information (for example, population risk estimate, general info on risk factors, general encouragement to acknowledge risks or change risk behaviour). The outcomes reported were cognitive, affective or behavioural, health status outcomes/ quality of life measures and, economic outcomes. See Table 20 and Table 21 for results.

Table 20: Personalised/individualised risk communication for decisions about screening tests.

	Overall		**Pap smears**		**Mammography**		**Cholesterol tests**	
Outcome	Studies/ people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size
Knowledge regarding screening test/ condition concerned	2/568	MD:2.45 (1.94 to 2.96)			1/804	OR:1.44 (0.95 to 2.19)		
Perceiving self as appropriate candidate for test	1/214	OR: 0.65 (0.35 to 1.19)						
Accurately perceived risk	3/1264	OR: 1.46 (1.13 to 1.88)			1/804	OR:1.17 (0.86 to 1.60)		
Anxiety	2/499	MD:-0.03 (-0.30 to +0.25)						
Intention to take screening test	5/2016	OR: 0.86 (0.71 to 1.03)	1/984	OR:0.58 (0.45 to 0.74)	1/478	OR: 0.53 (0.36 to 0.76)		
Uptake of screening test	14/7341	OR: 1.13 (1.02 to 1.24)	3/1552	OR:0.62 (0.50 to 0.77)	11/5234	OR: 1.11 (0.98 to 1.24)	1/276	OR: 0.98 (0.57 to 1.65)
Appropriate use of cholesterol test	1/3152	OR: 1.32 (1.14 to 1.55)					1/3152	OR: 1.32 (1.14 to 1.55)
Smoking	1/204	OR: 1.04 (0.60 to						

	Overall		Pap smears		Mammography		Cholesterol tests	
		1.82)						
Improvement in risk comprehension / perception	1/200	OR: 1.64 (0.83 to 3.25)						
Making a recommended behaviour change	1/890	OR: 0.98 (0.76 to 1.28)						

Table 21: Personalised/individualised risk communication for decisions about screening tests.

	High risk people		Colorectal screening		Prostate cancer screening	
Outcome	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size
Knowledge regarding screening test/ condition concerned	2/568	MD: 2.45 (1.94 to 2.96)				
Perceiving self as appropriate candidate for test	1/214	OR: 0.65 (0.35 to 1.19)				
Accurately perceived risk	2/460	OR: 2.25 (1.44 to 3.53)				
Anxiety	2/499	MD: -0.03 (-0.30 to +0.25)				
Intention to take screening test	2/540	OR: 0.84 (0.55 to 1.27)				
Uptake of screening test	5/3145	OR: 1.45 (1.23 to 1.71)	1/278	OR: 2.09 (0.76 to 5.75)	1/413	OR: 2.56 (1.70 to 3.84)

Types of statistical presentation or formats for standard information

Four systematic reviews[1,46,114,122] considered types of statistical presentation or formats for standard information.

The first systematic review[114] considered the impact of genetic counselling on risk perception accuracy, the review included 19 studies considering people at risk (not intermediaries, for example genetic counsellors or nurses).

The review included studies which compared genetic counselling using protocols or standard script or audiotapes to content check the counselling session to pre- to post-counselling measures of risk perception accuracy. The review considered the outcomes of the effect of genetic counselling on risk perception accuracy through changes in proportion of individuals who accurately perceive their risk or the degree of overestimation or underestimation of risk.

Table 22 and Table 23 below summarises the results reported in the review.

Table 22: Studies of changes in proportion of individuals who accurately perceive their risk

Study	N	Measurement moment	Accurate (%)	Underestimation (%)	Overestimation (%)	p value
Bjorvatn 2007	213	Pre-counselling Immediately post-counselling	81 86	9 9	10 5	p<0.001
Hopwood 2003	158	Pre-counselling 3 months post-counselling 6 months post-counselling 9 months post-counselling 12 months post-counselling	7 68 63 63 61	52 9 9 9 9	38 20 25 25 25	p<0.001
Hopwood 2004	256	Pre-counselling 1 month post-counselling 12 months post-counselling	63 71 73	27 21 21	9 8 7	NS
Huiart 2002	397	 Pre-counselling 1-7 days post-counselling Pre-counselling 1-7 days post-counselling	Low risk: 6.3 23.8 High risk: 87.7 89.5	 0 0 12.3 10.5	 93.7 76.3 0 0	p<0.001 NS
Lidén 2003	86	Pre-counselling Post-counselling 1 year post	17 54 28	36 18 33	47 28 39	p<0.01
Lobb 2004	89	Pre-counselling Post-counselling	50 70	27 20	23 10	not stated
Meiser 2001	218	Pre-counselling 12 months post-counselling	54 54	12 14	34 31	NS
Nordin 2002	63	Pre-counselling Post-counselling	18 57	38 18	44 25	not stated
Pieterse 2006	51	Pre-counselling Post-counselling	48 51	not reported	not reported	NS
Rimes 2006	150	Pre-counselling 6 months post-counselling	12.6 18	3.3 4.0	84.1 78.0	NS
Rothemund 2001	44	Post counselling counselees Controls	39 38	0 14	48 48	NS (Note figures do not add up to 100% - may be error in paper)

Table 23: Studies of the degree of overestimation or underestimation of risk

Study	n	Time	Mean overestimation (SD)	p value
Bowen 2006	211	Pre-counselling 6 months post-counselling	19 6	p<0.001
Codori 2005	101	Pre-counselling Immediately post-counselling	30 30	not stated
Gurmankin 2005	108	Pre-counselling 1-7 days post-counselling	42% 19	p<0.001
Kaiser 2004	123	Pre-counselling Post-counselling	14.94 7.8	p<0.0005
Kelly 2003	99	Pre-counselling 1-2 days post-counselling	23 16.6	not stated
Kent 2000	90	Pre-counselling 3 month post-counselling 6 months post-counselling	not given	NS
Tercyak 2001	129	Pre-counselling Post-counselling	11.5 7.8	p<0.001
Van Dijk 2003	241	Low risk: post-counselling High risk: post-counselling	43.86 no data	not stated reported as NS

The second systematic review[46] considered strategies for communicating to people the effectiveness of contraceptives in preventing pregnancy, the review included five studies considering people or potential users (male or female) of the contraceptive methods.

The review included studies that compared methods of communicating contraceptive effectiveness to consumers through educational programmes or materials and counselling sessions as individuals or groups to usual practice or an alternative method. The review considered the outcomes of knowledge of contraceptive effectiveness, attitude about contraception or towards any particular contraceptive, choice or use of contraceptive method.

Table 24: Communicating contraceptive effectiveness

Study	n/sample	No. of sessions	Comparison	Outcomes	Results (OR; 95% CI)
Kraft 2007	301 heterosexual couples with risk factor for STD in US	Intervention group: 3 sessions of 2.5 hours each; control: 1 standard session of 1.5–2 hours	Control group had education about HIV, STDs and contraception including sample contraceptive methods, method use and effectiveness for preventing pregnancy and disease and	Use of effective contraceptives (effective or not); psychosocial factors affecting contraceptive use; relationship factors relevant to contraception. 6	Groups were similar at 6 months on perceived pregnancy risk; importance of not becoming pregnant; expectations for partner's support for contraception; participation in contraceptive

Study	n/sample	No. of sessions	Comparison	Outcomes	Results (OR; 95% CI)
			question and answer session; intervention group as above plus activities and discussion regarding perceived risk, expectations, norms, skills, self-efficacy regarding prevention	month follow-up	decision making
Marshall 1984	100 women requesting contraception in US	1	Information on conception and 6 methods of reversible birth control (advantages and disadvantages; effectiveness rates) conveyed through 5 different media: 1) pamphlet to read before exam; 2) AV presentation with unfamiliar voice; 3) AV presentation narrated by own physician (and informed it was own doctor); 4) personal communication by own physician of standard info in AV presentation; 5) combination of AV (as per group 3), pamphlet and oral communication from own physician	Knowledge gained pre- to post-test (20 items); satisfaction with educational medium (including perceived learning) from 6 items; patients assessment of knowledge gain; physician's assessment of time spent with patient and time discussing contraceptives. Assessments conducted prior to intervention (pre-test) and after medical examination (post-test)	Knowledge gain favoured intervention 2 (mean difference -19.00, -27.52 to -10.48); other groups were similar in knowledge gain. All groups similar for satisfaction with method.
Omu1989	1012 women in Nigeria with 4 or more previous deliveries attending prenatal clinic	Intervention group: 4 sessions; control: standard family planning counselling in 1 session	Treatment group received information and education on health effects of high parity, benefits of family planning, all methods of contraception; voluntary sterilisation covered in detail with more in-depth counselling for those interested in sterilisation.	Percent sterilized; choice of contraceptive method and attitude towards sterilisation; use of specific contraceptive method at 6 weeks postpartum	Women in intervention group more likely to agree that sterilisation was safe (OR 9.15, 6.77 to 12.36), that a woman would still be strong after sterilisation (OR 9.67, 7.14 to 13.10), that sex drive would not change (OR 11.02, 8.08 to 15.03) and that a woman's status would not

Study	n/sample	No. of sessions	Comparison	Outcomes	Results (OR; 95% CI)
			Control group received standard family planning counselling at the clinic, including contraception methods available but not risks of high parity		change (OR 9.19, 6.86 to 12.31). They were more likely to be sterilised (OR 4.26, 2.46 to 7.37) and to use a "modern" or "effective" method (OR 2.35, 1.82 to 3.03) and were less likely to use no method by 6 weeks post-partum (OR 0.44, 0.32 to 0.61).
Steiner 2003	461 women recruited in 5 shopping malls across US	1	3 tables presenting info: 1) US FDA – 2 columns of numbers; 2) WHO – as 1 but methods grouped into 3 categories of effectiveness; 3) Developed by researchers – 3 categories of effectiveness along with limited info on STD prevention	Knowledge on effectiveness; perception of amount of information and whether easy to understand. Questions asked before randomisation and while looking at the assigned table.	For knowledge that hormone injections more effective than pills: Categories table vs. numbers table: OR 2.42 (1.43 to 4.12) Categories table vs. categories plus numbers table: OR 2.58 (1.50 to 4.42) For knowledge that combined pills more effective than condoms: Categories table vs. numbers table: OR 2.19 (1.21 to 3.97) Categories table vs. categories plus numbers table: OR 2.03 (1.13 to 3.64) For finding tool hard to understand: Categories table vs. numbers table: OR 0.29 (0.13 to 0.63) Categories table vs. categories plus numbers table: OR 0.38 (0.17 to 0.85)
Steiner 2006	900 women in Jamaica and India with basic English literacy	1	3 charts representing contraceptive methods by effectiveness categories: 1) from WHO – 3 categories stratified by a)	Knowledge on effectiveness; perception of amount of information and whether easy to understand. Questions asked	Groups similar in understanding pregnancy risk. For feeling the chart gave enough information: Categories table vs. stratified table: OR

Study	n/sample	No. of sessions	Comparison	Outcomes	Results (OR; 95% CI)
			average and b) correct and consistent users; 2) WHO – 4 categories of effectiveness; 3) methods on continuum from least to most effective	pre-intervention and while looking at assigned table.	1.97 (1.13 to 3.44) For feeling the chart was easy to understand: Categories table vs. stratified table: OR 1.47 (1.03 to 2.10) Categories group similar to continuum group for these items.

The third systematic review[1] considered the effects of using alternative statistical presentations of the same risks and risk reductions on understanding, perception, persuasiveness and behaviour of health professionals, policy makers and "consumers", the review included 35 studies considering people with chronic diseases, genetic testing and or having vaccinations.

The review included four comparisons, detailed in the table below and considered the outcomes of objective understanding; perception of effectiveness of intervention; persuasiveness; actual decisions or behaviours. For results see Table 25.

Table 25: Alternative statistical presentations for communicating risk

Comparison	Outcome	No. of studies	Overall results (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	No. of points difference on 10-point Likert scale	P value	Heterogeneity	Quality of evidence	Subgroup: consumers (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	Subgroup: health professionals (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	Sensitivity analysis
a) Natural frequencies vs. probabilities	Understanding	5	0.69 (0.45 to 0.93) in favour of natural frequencies	1.4	p=0.11	I2=43%,	Moderate	0.60 (0.31 to 0.88)	0.94 (0.53 to 1.34)	none
b) RRR vs. ARR	Understanding	2	0.02 (-0.39 to +0.43) NS all consumers	<0.1	p<0.007	I2=80%,	Moderate	all consumers: 0.02 (-0.39 to +0.43) NS	none	1 high quality study: SMD 0.33 (0.03 to 0.62) in favour of RRR
	Perception	4	0.41 (0.03 to 0.79) in favour of RRR perceived as larger	0.8	p<0.00001	I2=89%,	Low	0.44 (-0.68 to +1.57)	0.39 (-0.04 to +0.82)	2 high quality comparisons: SMD 0.42 (-0.34 to +1.19)
	Persuasiveness	23	0.66 (0.51 to 0.81) in favour of RRR	1.3	p<0.00001	I2=93%,	Moderate	0.62 (0.42 to 0.83)	0.71 (0.49 to 0.93)	4 high quality comparisons: 0.67 (0.57 to 0.76)
c) RRR vs. NNT	Understanding	1	all consumers: 0.73 (0.43 to 1.04) in favour of RRR	1.5	NA	NA	Moderate	all consumers: 0.73 (0.43 to 1.04)	none	none
	Perception	3	all health professionals: 1.15 (0.80 to	2.3	p=0.004	I2=82%,	Moderate	none	all health professionals: 1.15 (0.80 to	none

Comparison	Outcome	No. of studies	Overall results (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	No. of points difference on 10-point Likert scale	P value	Heterogeneity	Quality of evidence	Subgroup: consumers (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	Subgroup: health professionals (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	Sensitivity analysis
			1.50) in favour of RRR						1.50)	
	Persuasiveness	21	0.65 (0.51 to 0.80) in favour of RRR	1.3	p<0.00001	I2=91%,	Moderate	0.66 (0.46 to 0.86)	0.65 (0.42 to 0.87)	3 high quality comparisons: 0.62 (0.46 to 0.78)
d) ARR vs. NNT	Understanding	1	all consumers 0.42 (0.12 to 0.71) in favour of ARR	0.8	NA	NA	Moderate	all consumers 0.42 (0.12 to 0.71)	none	none
	Perception	3	all health professionals: 0.79 (0.43 to 1.15) in favour of ARR	1.6	p=0.002	I2=84%,	Moderate	none	all health professionals: 0.79 (0.43 to 1.15)	none
	Persuasiveness	19	0.05 (-0.04 to +0.15)	0.1	p<0.00001	I2=75%,	Moderate	0.05 (-0.04 to +0.14)	0.07 (-0.10 to +0.24)	8 high quality comparisons: 0.06 (-0.06 to +0.17)

The fourth systematic review[122] considered strategies for the effective communication of probabilistic information. The review included 15 RCTs that considered the effectiveness of different formats for communicating probabilistic information.

Table 26: Strategies for the effective communication of probabilistic information

Strategy	Level of evidence	Source of evidence	Results
Numeric representation of probabilities	Level II	Two RCTs (Marteau et al. 2000; Man-Son-Hing et al. 2000)	For both written and verbal information, patients have a more accurate perception of risk if probabilistic information is presented as numbers although some may not prefer them.
Probabilities expressed as natural frequencies (i.e. event rates)	Level II	One RCT (Gigerenzer & Hoffrage 1995)	Expressing probabilities as an event rate out of 100, 1000 or 10,000 is better understood by most people compared with a probability format.
Represent changes in risk in absolute terms or relative terms with baseline risk	Level II	Two RCTs (Christensen et al. 2003; Sheridan et al. 2003)	Absolute risk reduction or relative reduction with baseline risk information is better understood than number needed to treat and other formats.
Represent difference in proportions as vertical bar graphs	Level II	Two RCTs (Feldman-Stewart et al. 2000; Hollands & Spence 2001)	Although numerical information is the most accurate method of estimating differences in proportions, vertical bar graphs are the quest and most accurate for discriminating general differences (compared with horizontal bars, pie charts, systematic and random ovals).
Balanced information about benefits and harms	Level I, II	Two RCTs (Inglis & Farnill 1993; Garrud et al. 2001)	In some settings, detailed written risk information (including harms) increases knowledge and satisfaction without changing anxiety.
Use of illustrations and/or cartoons	Level II	Two RCTs (Michielutte et al. 1992; Delp & Jones 1996)	Illustrations (particularly cartoons in one study) increased understanding, adherence and recall in patients leaving emergency departments compared with text only information. There was a greater effect in patients from low educational backgrounds.
Survival curves	Level II	One RCT (Armstrong et al. 2001)	Patients can understand survival curves, when given more than one opportunity to do so.
Framing information as harms or benefits	Level II	One RCT (O'Connor 1989; Gurm & Litaker 2000)	Framing of information in terms of either benefits or harms can affect patient preferences.

"Framing" effects

One systematic review[19] considered "framing" of risk information affects key patients outcomes in a clinical setting, the review included 24 studies considering people with epilepsy, cancer treatment, immunisation, screening, in a healthcare setting including real or hypothetical choices about treatment or behaviour, or where choices are of current medical relevance (for example: skin cancer risks).

The review included nine comparisons, detailed in the table below and considered the outcomes of knowledge, anxiety, risk perception, intentions and actual behaviour: effect sizes calculated. For results see Table 27.

Table 27: "Framing" of risk information

Comparison	No. of studies	Significant effects found (including effect size [ES]); no. of studies showing significant effect [method scores]	Non-significant findings reported [method scores]	Narrative synthesis
1: Negative framing vs. Positive framing	4	Subjects more likely to choose lung cancer treatment option that was riskier in the short term if outcomes positively framed (42% vs. 25%, p<0.0001, ES 0.45); 1 study [low quality score 8/22]	Change in preference for epilepsy treatment 59.4% vs. 56.7%, p=0.83 [8/22]; 1% increase in uptake of influenza vaccine, p=0.86 [14/22]; 6.7% more patients agreed to participate in treatment trial in colorectal cancer, p=0.592 [17/22]	No clear pattern of effects evident from studies in this category
2: Loss framing vs. Gain framing	7	6 studies of detection behaviour (uptake of screening): Meta-analysis of 4 RCTs with a binary outcome for screening uptake: 601/1337 vs. 535/1316; OR 1.18 (95% CI 1.01 to 1.38). [quality scores 15/22, 17/22, 14/22, 8/22] 1 described as "quasi-experimental" but not RCT was not included in meta-analysis because of this study design; showed increased perceived risk, p=0.037, ES 0.09 (i.e. very small effect) [13/22] 1 used continuous outcome measure and found increase in breast self examination (mean change 0.68, p=0.046, ES 0.6), more positive attitudes to BSE (mean change 1.56, p=0.04, ES 0.61) and greater intention to perform BSE (mean change 1.53, p=0.044, ES 0.61) [8/22] 1 study of prevention behaviour (use of sunscreens): 1 study on collection of sunscreen in beach visitors: 18% increase in collection of sunscreens, p<0.01, ES 0.32; intention to use sunscreen also increased, p<0.01) but other intentions and anxiety not significantly different [11/22]	none	Clear pattern among the 6 studies of detection behaviour (uptake of screening) that supports the greater effect of loss framing; the study of prevention behaviour (use of sunscreens) found some evidence of the greater effect of loss framing.
3: Numerical and graphical informati	1	none	No significant differences in intention to change general health behaviour; little data reported [low quality 9/22]	NA

Comparison	No. of studies	Significant effects found (including effect size [ES]); no. of studies showing significant effect [method scores]	Non-significant findings reported [method scores]	Narrative synthesis
on vs. Numerical only				
4: More data points vs. Fewer data points	3	One study compared the presentation of 6 vs. 3 data points for survival/ mortality rates; more of those with more data intended to choose the long-term survival option (84% vs.49%, p=0.00002, ES 0.73) [12/22]. One study compared "limited explanation" (discussion of 3 data points) vs. "extensive explanation" (five key point) on a graph of survival; more with extensive explanation changed previously specified treatment choice (44% vs. 13%, p=0.00006, ES 0.67) [15/22]	The third paper compared more information vs. current standard information on side effects of carbamazepine; no significant difference on knowledge, anxiety or compliance [16/22]	2 out of 3 studies showed people were more cautious when presented with more data.
5: Numerical information vs. Verbal (qualitative) information	2	One study gave female cancer patients numerical or verbal descriptions of risks of treatment in chemotherapy trial; intention to choose the trial was lower in the numerical than the verbal group (34.7% vs.52.4%, p=0.01, ES 0.46) [16/22] The other study provided information on the risks of anaesthetics; correct knowledge of the risk of death was higher after numerical information (55% vs. 15%, p=0.008, ES 0.82) [19/22]	none	Patients were more wary when negatively framed risk information was presented numerically
6: Relative risk vs. Absolute risk/NNT	3	All three papers in this section are included in the Akl 2011 review so not data extracted again	-	-
7: Vivid portrayal vs. Abstract or general risk information	2	none	One study found no significant differences in accuracy of recall of information, perceived vulnerability, or actual calcium intake [14/22] The other study found no differences in "concern" or "value of the information" ; there was a small difference suggesting the vivid case history was more "persuasive" (mean change 0.94, p<0.02) but no differences at follow up in	These papers do not support the theoretical predictions that vivid information is more persuasive or effective

Comparison	No. of studies	Significant effects found (including effect size [ES]); no. of studies showing significant effect [method scores]	Non-significant findings reported [method scores]	Narrative synthesis
			recall of risk factors or adoption of recommendations. [13/22]	
8: Lay vs. Medical terminology	1	none	No significant differences in knowledge of risks and benefits, or anxiety, of simpler version of drug insert [14/22]	Insufficient evidence to judge the effect of simpler package inserts
9: Larger vs. Smaller denominators	1	Assessed the effect of manipulating information in relation to 11 common causes of death which were then ranked; rated judged more risky when denominator larger ($p<0.05$ for 7/11 causes of death) [7/16]	none	The results suggest that "base rate neglect" occurs and individuals' judgements have been influenced more by altering anchor points

Economic evidence

An economic evidence review was not undertaken for this question.

Evidence statements

Clinical

One systematic review (Albada 2009[2]) found tailoring information based on behavioural constructs (for example: attitudes, intentions, stages of change) is more effective than tailoring information based on risk factors only (for example: family history) when communicating risk.

One systematic review (Edwards 2006[18]) found personalising risk information may have a small effect on increasing uptake of screening tests and there is only limited evidence that the interventions have promoted or achieved informed decision making by consumers.

Four systematic reviews looking at different types of statistical presentation or formats for standard information found:

- genetic counselling has a positive impact on risk perception accuracy, sustained even at follow up 1 year later, but some studies observed no effect (several of these had small sample sizes), or only in low-risk individuals (Smerecnik 2009[114]).
- there was limited evidence about what helps people choose an appropriate method of contraception (Lopez 2008[46]).
- Natural frequencies are better understood than probabilities when communicating risk (Akl 2011[1]).
- Relative risk reduction may be perceived to be larger than absolute risk reduction and numbers needed to treat (Akl 2011[1]).

One systematic review (Edwards 2001[19]) found no clear evidence of differences in outcome depending on how information about risks is framed.

10.4.1.5 Literature review: decision aids

Both patients and clinicians may need support to deliver effective engagement of patients in decisions where there are reasonable treatment or care options. The International Patient Decision Aids Standards (IPDAS) Collaboration[21] describes patient decision aids as evidence-based tools designed to prepare patients to participate in making specific and deliberated choices among healthcare options. Patient decision aids do not replace, but may act as an adjunct to good clinical practice. Patient decision aids are not necessary to deliver good shared decision-making, but where well developed patient decision aids exist, they facilitate patient engagement and can be used before, during or after a consultation to enable patient participation.

Review question: What is the clinical and cost-effectiveness of decision aids versus no intervention, usual care, alternative interventions, or a combination?

Clinical evidence

The GDG obtained the Cochrane Review on patient decision aids for people facing health treatment or screening decisions. [115] As this was a 2011 review of the literature on this topic, the GDG accepted if for inclusion in the review and did not update the searches due to time and resource constraints.

The Stacey 2011[115] systematic review contains 86 RCTs from eight countries (Australia, Canada, China, Finland, Germany, Netherlands, United Kingdom and United States). All but 11 studies randomised individual patients. The studies evaluated decision aids focussed on 35 different decisions, the most common being prostate screening (n=12), hormone replacement therapy for menopausal women (n=10), breast cancer genetic testing (n=8), colon cancer screening (n=5), prenatal screening (n=5), medication for atrial fibrillation (n=3), and surgery (n=11).

Results were pooled across the studies where there were a) similar outcomes measures used and b) the effects were expected to be independent of the type of decision studied. Studies comparing usual care to decision aids were analysed separately from studies comparing simple to more detail decision aids. Results of the pooled outcomes are presented in Table 28, Table 29, Table 30, Table 31 and Table 32. Data about patient-practitioner communication and satisfaction was not pooled – see Table 33.

Table 28: Summary of pooled outcomes

Outcome	Type of comparison	Number of studies	N for main intervention	N for comparison	Effect size (95% CI)	Statistical significance
Knowledge						
Knowledge (0 to 100 scale)	DA vs usual care	26	2578	2527	MD 13.77 (11.40 to 16.15)	P<0.001*
Knowledge (0 to 100 scale)	Detailed vs simple DA	15	1173	1201	MD 4.97 (3.22 to 6.72)	P<0.001*
Decisional conflict: Decision aid versus usual care	DA vs usual care	19	1981	1979	MD -5.66 (-7.68 to -3.64)	P<0.001*
Decisional conflict – uncertainty sub-scale	DA vs usual care	18	2000	2029	MD -1.73 (-3.58 to 0.11)	P=0.07
Decisional conflict – uninformed sub-scale	DA vs usual care	17	1803	1815	MD -6.43 (-9.16 to -	P<0.001*

Outcome	Type of comparison	Number of studies	N for main intervention	N for comparison	Effect size (95% CI)	Statistical significance
					3.70)	
Decisional conflict – unclear values sub-scale	DA vs usual care	14	1561	1568	MD -4.81 (-7.23 to -2.40)	P<0.001*
Decisional conflict – unsupported sub-scale	DA vs usual care	14	1562	1564	MD -4.70 (-7.26 to -2.13)	P<0.001*
Decisional Conflict – Ineffective choice sub-scale	DA vs usual care	16	1655	1702	MD -4.95 (-7.51 to -2.39)	P<0.001*
Decisional conflict: detailed vs simple decision aid						
Decisional Conflict (0 to 100 scale) - total	Detailed vs simple DA	14	1152	1183	MD -2.09 (-3.07 to -1.11)	P<0.0001*
Decisional Conflict – Uncertainty sub-scale	Detailed vs simple DA	13	1023	1047	MD -2.21 (-4.55 to 0.14)	P=0.06
Decisional Conflict – Uninformed sub-scale	Detailed vs simple DA	9	597	607	MD -2.58 (-4.71 to -0.45)	P=0.02*
Decisional conflict – unclear values	Detailed vs simple DA	9	595	605	MD -2.79 (-5.18 to -0.41)	P=0.02*
Decisional conflict – unsupported sub-scale	Detailed vs simple DA	9	602	606	MD -2-24 (-5.81 to 1.33)	P=0.22
Decisional conflict – ineffective choice sub-scale	Detailed vs simple DA	8	745	736	MD -1.07 (-2.99 to 0.84)	P=0.27
Participation in decision making						
Participation in decision making (DM) – patient controlled	DA vs usual care	10	933	824	RR 1.37 (1.05 to 1.79)	P=0.02*
Participation in DM - Shared	DA vs usual care	10	933	788	RR 0.95 (0.80 to 1.13)	P=0.57
Participation in DM – Practitioner controlled	DA vs usual care	11	1013	915	RR 0.61 (0.49 to 0.77)	P<0.0001*
Behaviour: Remaining undecided						
Remaining undecided	DA vs usual care	10	1235	1252	RR 0.57 (0.44 to 0.74)	P<0.001*
Remaining undecided	Detailed vs simple	2	148	144	RR 1.04 (0.66 to 1.62)	P=0.87
Preference of uptake of option: DA versus usual care						

Outcome	Type of comparison	Number of studies	N for main intervention	N for comparison	Effect size (95% CI)	Statistical significance
Preference or uptake of option – Surgery (ITT analysis)	DA vs usual care	11	1239	1268	RR 0.80 (0.64 to 1.00)	P=0.05*
Preference or uptake of option – Surgery without prophylactic surgery (ITT analysis)	DA vs usual care	10	1139	1154	RR 0.76 (0.61, 0.96)	P=0.02*
Preference or uptake of option – Prostate Specific Antigen testing	DA vs usual care	7	1387	1303	RR 0.85 (0.74 to 0.98)	P=0.03*
Preference or uptake of option – Colon cancer screening	DA vs usual care	5	656	524	RR 1.20 (0.90 to 1.61)	P=0.22
Preference or uptake of option – Breast cancer genetic testing	DA vs usual care	4	448	501	RR 1.01 (0.83 to 1.22)	P=0.94
Preference or uptake of option: Detailed versus simple DA						
Preference or uptake of option – surgery (ITT analysis)	Detailed vs simple DA	3	288	296	RR 0.82 (0.63 to 1.08)	P=0.16
Preferemce or uptake of option – Prostate Specific Antigen testing	Detailed vs simple DA	3	336	341	RR 0.97 (0.81 to 1.17)	P=0.78
Preference or uptake of option – Hormone replacement therapy	Detailed vs simple DA	3	181	176	RR 0.73 (0.55 to 0.98)	P=0.04*
Preference or uptake of option – Prenatal diagnostic testing	Detailed vs simple DA	2	216	227	RR 0.94 (0.85 to 1.04)	P=0.22
Accurate risk perceptions						
Accurate risk perceptions	DA with outcomes and probabilities vs no outcome probabilities	14	1865	1830	RR 1.74 (1.46 to 2.08)	P<0.00001*
Accurate risk perceptions	- numbers	11	1355	1398	RR 1.93 (1.58 to 2.37)	P<0.00001*
Accurate risk perceptions	- Words	3	510	432	RR 1.27 (1.09 to 1.48)	P=0.002*
Informed values-based decision		8	980	960	1.25 (1.03, 1.52)	P=0.002*

DA = Decision Aid; MD = Mean Difference; RR = Relative Risk; CI = Confidence Interval

Table 29: Decision aids versus usual care

Outcome or subgroup	Studies	Participants	Statistical Method	Effect Estimate
Knowledge: DA vs usual care	26	5105	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	13.77 [11.40,16.15]
Satisfaction with the decision: DA vs usual care	7		Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	No totals
Satisfaction with the decision making process: DA vs usual care	4		Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	No totals
Participation in decision making: DA vs usual care	11		Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	Subtotals only
Patient controlled decision making	10	1757	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.37 [1.05, 1.79]
Shared decision making	10	1721	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.95 [0.80, 1.13]
Practitioner controlled decision making	11	1928	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.61 [0.49, 0.77]
Decisional conflict: DA vs usual care	23		Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	Subtotals only
Uncertainty sub-scale	18	4029	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-1.73 [-3.58, 0.11]
Uninformed sub-scale	17	3618	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-6.43 [-9.16, -3.70]
Unclear values sub-scale	14	3129	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-4.81 [-7.23, -2.40]
Unsupported sub-scale	14	3126	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-4.70 [-7.26, -2.13]
Ineffective choice sub-scale	16	3357	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-4.95 [-7.51, -2.39]
Total decisional conflict score	19	3960	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	5.66 [7.68, 3.64]
Behaviour: Reduced proportion remaining undecided, DA vs usual care	10	2487	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.57 [0.44, 0.74]
Choice: Surgery over conservative option: DA vs usual care	11		Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	Subtotals only
As treated analysis	11	2245	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.82 [0.64, 1.06]
Intention to treat analysis	11	2507	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.80 [0.64, 1.00]
Intention to treat analysis: major surgery without prophylactic surgery	10	2293	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.76 [0.61, 0.96]
Intention to treat analysis: prophylactic surgery	1	214	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.37 [0.73, 2.57]
Choice: PSA screening: DA vs usual care	7	2690	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.85 [0.74, 0.98]
Choice: Colorectal cancer screening: DA vs usual care	5	1180	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.20 [0.90, 1.61]

Outcome or subgroup	Studies	Participants	Statistical Method	Effect Estimate
Choice: Breast cancer genetic testing: DA vs usual care	4	949	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.01 [0.83, 1.22]

Table 30: Detailed versus simple decision aids

Outcome or subgroup	Studies	Participants	Statistical Method	Effect Estimate
Knowledge: Detailed vs simple decision aids	15	2374	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	4.97 [3.22, 6.72]
Decisional conflict: Detailed vs simple decision aid	16		Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	Subtotals only
Uncertainty sub-scale	13	2070	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-2.21 [-4.55, 0.14]
Uninformed sub-scale	9	1204	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-2.58 [-4.71, -0.45]
Unclear values sub-scale	9	1200	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-2.79 [-5.18, -0.41]
Unsupported sub-scale	9	1208	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-2.24 [-5.81, 1.33]
Ineffective choice sub-scale	8	1481	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-1.07 [-2.99, 0.84]
Total decisional conflict score	14	2335	Mean difference (IV random, 95% CI)	-2.09 [-3.07, -1.11]
Participation in decision making: Detailed vs simple decision aid	1		Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	No totals
Patient controlled decision making	1		Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	No totals
Shared decision making	1		Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	No totals
Practitioner controlled decision making	1		Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	No totals
Behaviour: Reduced proportion remaining undecided: Detailed vs simple decision aids	2	292	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.04 [0.66, 1.62]
Choice: Surgery over conservative option: Detailed vs simple decision aid	3		Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	Subtotals only
As treated analysis	3	513	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.82 [0.63, 1.08]
Intention to treat analysis	3	584	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.82 [0.63, 1.08]
Intention to treat analysis: major surgery without prophylactic	2	453	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.78 [0.57, 1.07]
Intention to treat analysis: prophylactic surgery	1	131	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.98 [0.56, 1.73]
Choice: PSA screening: Detailed vs simple decision	3	677	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.97 [0.81, 1.17]

Outcome or subgroup	Studies	Participants	Statistical Method	Effect Estimate
aid				
Choice: Hormone Replacement Therapy: Detailed vs simple decision aid	3	357	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.73 [0.55, 0.98]
Choice: Prenatal diagnostic testing: Detailed vs simple decision aid	2	443	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	0.94 [0.85, 1.04]

Table 31: Accurate risk perceptions: Decision aid with outcome probabilities versus no outcome probability information

Outcome or subgroup	Studies	Participants	Statistical Method	Effect Estimate
Accurate risk perceptions	14	3695	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.74 [1.46, 2.08]
Accurate risk perceptions – numbers	11	2753	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.93 [1.58, 2.37]
Accurate risk perceptions - words	3	942	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.27 [1.09, 1.48]

Table 32: Informed values-based decision

Outcome or subgroup	Studies	Participants	Statistical Method	Effect Estimate
Informed values-based choice	8	1940	Risk ratio (M-H, Random, 95% CI)	1.25 [1.03, 1.52]

Table 33: Patient-practitioner communication and satisfaction

Patient-practitioner communication							
Sheridan 2006	Discussed CHD with doctor	patient reported immediately post	16/41 decision aid pre-consult with summary report to bring to consult		8/34 usual care		absolute difference 16%; 95% CI -4% to 37%
	Plan to reduce CHD risk and discussed with doctor	patient reported immediately post	15/41 decision aid preconsult with summary report to bring to consult		8/34 usual care		absolute difference 13%; 95% CI -7 to 34%
	Plan to reduce CHD risk and not discussed with doctor	patient reported immediately post	37/41 decision aid pre-consult with summary report to bring to consult		25/34 usual care		
Weymiller 2007	OPTION Scale	analysis of the consultation using video-recorded consultations	1/2 used decision aid prior to consult and 1/2 used it during		usual care		Greater patient participation (MD 4.4; 95% CI 2.9 to 6.0) in decision aid compared to usual care
Mullan 2009	OPTION Scale	analysis of the consultation using video-recorded consultations	48 used decision aid within consultation	49.7% (SD 17.74)	37 usual care	27.7% (SD 11.75)	MD 21.8 (95% CI 13.0, 30.5) for decision aid vs usual care. Of 12 items, 2 favoured the decision aid.
Satisfaction							
Deyo 2000	Satisfaction with decision making process 7-item scale (5 point response).	3 months	171	separate responses provided with no total	172	separate responses provided with no total	No difference except DA more likely to report they had as much information as

	Detailed versus simple decision aid						they wanted and less likely to report having relied too much on physician's opinion
Laupacis 2006	Satisfaction with information received sub-scale 4-item (0 to 100; low to high) Decision aid versus usual care	average 10 days	54	76 (15.5SD)	56	59 (23.3 SD)	P = 0.001
	Satisfaction with practitioner treatment during decision process sub-scale 4-item (0 to 100; low to high). Decision aid versus usual care.	average 10 days	54	69 (25.3 SD)	56	54 (26.7 SD)	P = 0.004
Green 2004	Effectiveness of consultation patient assessment. Single item 1 (not at all effective) to 7 (extremely effective). Decision aid versus usual genetic counselling		106	6.6	105	6.6	No difference
	Effectiveness of consultation			5.9		5.8	No difference

	counsellor assessment. Single item 1 to 7. Decision aid versus usual genetic counselling.						
Kuppermann 2009	Satisfaction with involvement in decision making (3 questions). Detailed versus simple decision aid without explicit values clarification	26 to 30 weeks gestation	244	44.8; 44.3; 72.6	252	49.2; 48.1; 79.9	P=0.40; P=0.45; P=0.10
Miller 2005	Satisfaction with cancer information service 1-item (1 to 5; low to high)	2 weeks		4.37 (0.84 SD)		4.38 (0.86 SD)	No difference
	Decision aid versus usual care	6 months		4.51 (0.75 SD)		4.51 (0.64 SD)	No difference
Oakley 2006	Satisfaction with information about medicines. Decision aid versus usual care.	4 months post	16	10.4 (2.9 SD)	17	10.1 (2.2 SD)	No difference
Hunter 2005	Satisfaction with genetic counselling 11 item short form (range 4 to 44; low to high).	immediately post	116	37.27 (5.74 SD)	126	40.48 (4.26 SD)	P<0.001 higher satisfaction with individual counselling compared to decision aid

	Decision aid versus individual genetic counselling						
Vodermaier 2009	- MD help me understand; - MD understood important to me; - MD answered questions; - satisfied with involvement; - satisfied MD involvement; - satisfied with process	1 week follow-up	53	49 (92.5%); 47; 47; 44; 36; 42	56	53 (94.6%); 50; 51; 45; 36; 50	High satisfaction

Economic evidence

Six studies were included that examined costs or cost effectiveness of decision aids versus a comparator. All were within-RCT analyses. Four were included in the Cochrane review (Kennedy 2002[39], Murray 2001[49], Murray 2001a[50], Vuorma 2004[125]). One (Kennedy 2003[40]) was a second analysis based on an RCT included in the Cochrane review – as this reported a cost-utility analysis using QALYs this is reported over the cost-consequence analysis [Kennedy 2002[39]]). One (Hollinghurst 2010[30]) is a economic analysis published after the Cochrane cut-off date but from an RCT that is included in the Cochrane review and so was included. These are summarised in the economic evidence profile below (Table 34). See also Evidence Tables in Appendix G.

One study (Van der Wilt 2005[124]) was excluded due to not meeting the inclusion criteria of being based on data from randomised clinical trials.

Table 34: Economic evidence profile – decision aids versus usual care

Study	Applicability (a)	Limitations (b)	Other comments	Incremental cost (c)	Incremental effects (d)	ICER	Uncertainty
Hollinghurst 2010[30] UK	Partially applicable(e)	Potentially serious limitations(h)	• Delivery among women with previous caesarean section • RCT-based analysis (43 weeks) • Cost-consequence analysis	DA1: £95(l) DA2: -£5(m)	DA1 & 2 reduced mean DCS	n/a	• DA1: 95% CI -£72 to £205 • DA2: 95% CI -£172 to £107
Kennedy 2003[40] UK	Partially applicable(f)	Minor limitations(i)	• Menorrhagia treatment • RCT-based analysis (2 years) • Cost-utility analysis (QALYs)	DA1: -£477(n) DA2: -£799(o)	DA1: -0.006 DA2: 0.009	DA2 dominant(q)	• Probability cost effective (£20,000/QALY threshold) = 84%
Murray 2001[49] UK	Partially applicable(e) (f)	Potentially serious limitations(j)	• Benign prostatic hypertrophy treatment • RCT-based analysis (9 months) • Cost-consequence analysis	£405	No difference in EQ5D Reduced mean DCS	n/a	• 95% CI £225 to £585 • Excluding cost of trial technology reduced cost difference: £122 (95% CI -£59 to £302)
Murray 2001a[50] UK	Partially applicable(e) (f)	Potentially serious limitations(j)	• Hormone replacement therapy • RCT-based analysis (9 months) • Cost-consequence analysis	£216	No difference in EQ5D Reduced mean DCS	n/a	• 95% CI £203 to £228 • Excluding cost of trial technology made cost difference non-significant (data not reported)
Vuorma	Partially	Potentially	• Menorrhagia treatment	-£358(p)	Improvement in	n/a	• CI not reported, p=0.2 for

Study	Applicability (a)	Limitations (b)	Other comments	Incremental cost (c)	Incremental effects (d)	ICER	Uncertainty
2004[125] Finland	applicable(e) (g)	serious limitations(k)	• RCT-based analysis (1 year) • Cost-consequence analysis		Rand-36 'emotional role functioning'		cost difference

CI = confidence interval; DCS = decisional conflict score; EQ5D = Euroqol five dimensions; ICER = incremental cost effectiveness ratio (incremental costs ÷ incremental effects); n/a not applicable; RCT = randomised clinical trial

(a) Directly applicable; partially applicable; not applicable

(b) Minor limitations; potentially serious limitations; serious limitations

(c) Mean per patient

(d) For cost-consequence analyses (costs and various health outcomes reported separately and not combined into a cost-effectiveness ratio) only selected incremental effects are presented – see evidence table for full information about studies.

(e) Cost per QALY analysis not used

(f) Some uncertainty about applicability of resource use and costs from over 10 years ago

(g) Some uncertainty about applicability of Finnish resource use and costs from over 10 years ago

(h) Quality of life not assessed; cost of developing decision aid not incorporated; limited sensitivity analyses undertaken.

(i) Unclear if short time horizon will omit longer term quality of life differences but this is considered unlikely to impact conclusion; limited sensitivity analysis.

(j) Unclear if short time horizon will omit longer term quality of life differences; EQ5D assessed but not reported quantitatively; cost of intervention likely to be too high as out of date technology; only limited sensitivity analysis undertaken.

(k) Unclear if short time horizon will omit longer term quality of life differences; quality of life not assessed by a utility measure ; unclear if intervention cost includes development costs; only limited sensitivity analyses undertaken.

(l) Decision aid 1: information programme – risks/benefits numerical/pictorial via website

(m) Decision aid 2: decision analysis program – values of different outcomes elicited from patients then combined with probabilities to suggest a preferred option

(n) Decision aid 1: information only

(o) Decision aid 2: information plus interview

(p) Converted from 1999 Euros (Finland) using purchasing power parities

(q) Dominant – lower costs and higher QALYs than other options

Evidence statements

Clinical

One systematic review of the effectiveness of patient decision aids (Stacey 2001[115]) found decision aids increase patient knowledge, reduce decisional conflict, provide patients with more realistic expectations of outcomes, improve the accuracy of patients' risk perception, increase patient participation in decisions, and increase the match between informed patient values and the choices they make. Decision aids were found to have little or no impact on satisfaction, anxiety, health outcomes, length of consultation, regret, or adherence to treatment.

Economic

A within-RCT cost utility analysis (Kennedy 2003[40], partially applicable, minor limitations) found that a decision aid plus interview was cost effective compared to the decision aid alone or usual care – reducing costs and marginally increasing QALYs.

Two within-RCT cost consequence analyses (Murray 2001[49], Murray 2001a[50], partially applicable, potentially serious limitations) found a significant increase in costs with decision aids and no difference in EQ5D score.

A within-RCT cost consequence analysis (Vuorma 2004[125], partially applicable, potentially serious limitations)) found costs were reduced, although not significantly; quality of life as assessed by RAND-36 showed a significant improvement in 'emotional role functioning' but not other domains.

A within-RCT cost consequence analysis (Hollinghurst 2010[30], partially applicable, potentially serious limitations) found costs with decision aids were similar compared with usual care; quality of life was not an outcome.

10.4.2 Recommendations and link to evidence

Recommendations	**59. When discussing decisions about investigations and treatment, do so in a style and manner that enables the patient to express their personal needs and preferences.** **60. Give the patient the opportunity to discuss their diagnosis, prognosis and treatment options.** **61. When offering any investigations or treatments:** • **explain the medical aims of the proposed care to the patient** • **openly discuss and provide information about the risks, benefits and consequences of the investigation or treatment options (taking into account factors such as coexisting conditions and the patient's preferences)** • **clarify what the patient hopes the treatment will achieve and discuss any misconceptions with them** • **set aside adequate time to allow any questions to be answered, and ask the patient if they would like a further consultation .** **62. Accept and acknowledge that patients may vary in their views about the balance of risks, benefits and consequences of treatments.**
Relative values of different outcomes	The GDG discussed how difficult it is to know if a patient understands risk, but that the communication of risk was very important for the patient experience and ensuring clear expectations.
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	The recommendations were considered to have minimal economic implications.
Quality of evidence	The GDG considered the existing NICE recommendations, themes identified in the patient experience scoping study and their clinical and personal experience as a basis for these recommendations on communicating risk.
Other considerations	The GDG agreed that how information about the risks and benefits of a treatment or test is communicated is very important for patient experience. Clinicians should communicate risk without bias and personal anecdotal information is not always appropriate. The GDG noted that while clinicians bring their clinical prospective and expertise to the consultation, both clinicians and patients have a role and responsibility for contributing to the decision process. Specifically clinicians contribute information about diagnosis, cause of disease, prognosis, treatment options and outcome probabilities, whereas patients contribute the experience of their illness, social circumstances, attitudes to risk, values and preferences. Enabling open and direct communication throughout the decision-making process, taking into consideration when and where the communication takes place, and allowing adequate time to discuss the risks and benefits of a treatment or test are integral to ensuring good patient experience. The GDG agreed that as well as risks and benefits, the consequences of treatment for example: what the treatment may entail has to be adequately explained to patients.

Recommendation	**63. Use the following principles when discussing risks and benefits with a patient:** • **personalise risks and benefits as far as possible** • **use absolute risk rather than relative risk (for example, the risk of an event increases from 1 in 1000 to 2 in 1000, rather than the risk of the event doubles)** • **use natural frequency (for example, 10 in 100) rather than a percentage (10%)** • **be consistent in the use of data (for example, use the same denominator when comparing risk: 7 in 100 for one risk and 20 in 100 for another, rather than 1 in 14 and 1 in 5)** • **present a risk over a defined period of time (months or years) if appropriate (for example, if 100 people are treated for 1 year, 10 will experience a given side effect)** • **include both positive and negative framing (for example, treatment will be successful for 97 out of 100 patients and unsuccessful for 3 out of 100 patients)** • **be aware that different people interpret terms such as rare, unusual and common in different ways, and use numerical data if available** • **think about using a mixture of numerical and pictorial formats (for example, numerical rates and pictograms).**
Relative values of different outcomes	The GDG discussed how difficult it is to measure a patient's understanding of risk, but that the communication of risk was very important for the patient experience and ensuring clear expectations.
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	The GDG considered no harms were likely.
Economic considerations	It was considered that there was a potential time, and therefore cost, implication of personalising risks and benefits however it was considered that this was outweighed by the benefits to patients in terms of understanding and engagement.
Quality of evidence	The quality of evidence pertaining to the technicalities of how best to communicate risk was generally of low to moderate quality. The GDG also contributed their professional and personal experiences in developing parts of this recommendation.
Other considerations	The GDG agreed that how information about the risks and benefits of a treatment or test is communicated is very important for patient experience. The GDG considered/acknowledged the following: • Information pertaining to the risks and benefits of treatments and tests can be difficult to understand and communicate • Presenting risks in relative terms can lead to more misunderstanding in both patients and clinicians than use of absolute risks. Patients and clinicians might be more willing to recommend or undertake a treatment if the benefits are presented in relative compared to absolute risk terms, therefore information should be presented in absolute terms • Risk information is not always readily available in a format that is suitable for communication to the patient • People have different preferences in how they absorb information so the

	information should be presented in various formats • It is not expected that information is presented in all of the different formats in every situation – elicit from the patient what their preferred method of communication is. • Consideration should be made about where the communication takes place as clinicians need to be sensitive to the psychological impact of a diagnosis and the patient's ability to assimilate risk information. • As patients' perception and acceptance of risk varies, risk should be communicated in a clear and unbiased way so patients can choose between options.

Recommendations	**64. Offer support to the patient when they are considering options. Use the principles of shared decision making:** • **ensure that the patient is aware of the options available and explain the risks, benefits and consequences of these** • **check that the patient understands the information** • **encourage the patient to clarify what is important to them, and check that their choice is consistent with this.** **65. Be aware of the value and availability of patient decision aids and other forms of decision support such as counselling or coaching. If suitable high-quality decision aids are available, offer them to the patient.** **66. Give the patient (and their family members and/or carers if appropriate) adequate time to make decisions about investigations and treatments.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	Many health decisions require trading off benefits and harms while considering scientific uncertainty, and decision aids prepare patients to discuss decisions with their clinician. Patient decision aids are used an adjunct to counselling to prepare patients to discuss decisions and reach the goal of a well-informed decision. They describe options and outcomes relevant to the patient's health status and incorporate implicit methods to clarify values. The review found decision aids improved decision quality specifically, higher knowledge scores, more realistic expectations (probabilities) and a better match between values & choices. The GDG discussed how the quality of decision aids can vary and agreed only high quality tools should be used. The use of an inferior quality decision aid might reduce amount and quality of information available to support the decision making process and negatively impact the patient experience. International standards can be used to help evaluate the quality of available decision aids[21].
Economic considerations	Most studies did not assess cost effectiveness in terms of cost per QALY, and it was judged questionable as to whether the QALY would adequately capture the benefits of decision aids. However, one study that did do this found decision aids to be cost-effective. Published cost analyses were inconsistent in terms of whether decision aids reduced or increased overall costs. The GDG noted that the cost of using a specific decision aid in the NHS setting will depend on how it is developed,

	delivered and maintained. For example: some decision aids are already be available but may require a licensing cost to be paid; a decision aid may cost more to deliver if in DVD format compared to paper-based; some decision aids are available via NHS direct and so can be provided by hospitals to patients freely via the internet, but are developed and maintained by the NHS. Costs will also depend on whether additional time is required by healthcare professionals when decision aids are used. While there may be a perception that using a decision aid might increase the consultation time (and therefore have a resource use implication) the Cochrane review did not support this. It was also noted that use of formal decision aids may provide better documentation of informed consent and so potentially reduce litigation costs. The Cochrane review looked for evidence about impact on litigation costs but none was identified. Overall the GDG considered that there may be some additional costs of delivering decision aids but that this was likely to be small relative to the benefit to patients in terms of improved decision quality when effective decision aids are used.
Quality of evidence	The studies in the Cochrane review looked at a range of tools in a range of different conditions for a range of populations. There was variability in risk of bias across studies. There was significant heterogeneity in the results but consistency in the direction of effect. There was variability in populations, measures, time frames and usual care interventions.
Other considerations	One GDG member noted it is important to distinguish between shared decision-makings and decision aids. Shared decision-making is a technique that can be used and get value from without decision aids. Decision aids can be part of the shared decision making process.

10.5 Patient education programmes

Education programmes aim to improve health outcomes by addressing a person's knowledge and attitudes and helping them to understand their condition and treatment and manage their risk factors. They may include components that teach the skills required to enable individuals to better care for themselves through self-monitoring and self-management. In some conditions they may form part of a rehabilitation programme that also contains physical therapy (for example cardiac rehabilitation).

10.5.1 Evidence reviews and other inputs

Each of the following sources of evidence and information has been used to inform the recommendations on education programmes of care and a discussion of this is presented in section 10.5.2.

10.5.1.1 Patient experience scoping study - a focused thematic qualitative overview

The scoping study (see appendix B) did not identify education programmes specifically as a key theme or subtheme; however the theme and subthemes related to information are relevant here also.

10.5.1.2 Existing NICE recommendations

- Specific educational packages should be developed for patients with COPD. Suggested topics for inclusion are listed in appendix C of the full guidance (see section 5 for details of the full guidance). The packages should take account of the different needs of patients at different stages of their disease.
  (From 'Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease', R 1.2.12.19)[56]

- Do not assume that the patient information leaflets (PILs) that patients receive with their medicines will meet each patient's needs. Address concerns that patients may have after reading the standard PILs.
  (From 'Medicines adherence', R 1.1.28)[79]
- Include an educational component consistent with this guidance as part of other interventions, but do not offer stand-alone formal education programmes.
  (From 'Low back pain', R 1.2.3)[78]
- Select a patient-education programme that meets the criteria laid down by the Department of Health and Diabetes UK Patient Education Working Group3. Any programme should be evidence-based and suit the needs of the individual. The programme should have specific aims and learning objectives, and should support development of self-management attitudes, beliefs, knowledge and skills for the learner, their family and carers. The programme should have a structured curriculum that is theory driven and evidence-based, resource-effective, has supporting materials, and is written down. The programme should be delivered by trained educators who have an understanding of education theory appropriate to the age and needs of the programme learners, and are trained and competent in delivery of the principles and content of the programme they are offering. The programme itself should be quality assured, and be reviewed by trained, competent, independent assessors who assess it against key criteria to ensure sustained consistency. The outcomes from the programme should be regularly audited.
  (from 'Type 2 Diabetes - newer agents', R 1.1.2)[90]
- Offer group education programmes as the preferred option. Provide an alternative of equal standard for a person unable or unwilling to participate in group education.
  (from 'Type 2 Diabetes - newer agents', R 1.1.4)[90]
- Pregnant women should be offered opportunities to attend participant-led antenatal classes, including breastfeeding workshops.
  (Antenatal care R 1.1.16)[80]
- Offer people with CKD high quality information or education programmes at appropriate stages of their condition to allow time for them to fully understand and make informed choices about their treatment.
  (From 'Chronic Kidney Disease', R 1.3.3)[69]
- Healthcare professionals providing information and education programmes should ensure they have specialist knowledge about CKD and the necessary skills to facilitate learning.
  (From 'Chronic Kidney Disease', R 1.3.4)[69]

10.5.1.3 Literature review: generic components of education programmes

Recent NICE guidelines have made a number of recommendations about education programmes for specific conditions. However, outcomes are likely to vary by specific intervention and specific condition (for example, people with more severe conditions may be more willing to make behavioural changes) and so consideration of whether or not to implement specific education programmes is best retained within condition-specific guidelines.

In this review we therefore aimed to undertake a focused search to explore whether there was evidence about generic components of patient education programmes that improve patient-related outcomes and are transferable across disease populations. An economic search was not be undertaken for this review question as useful cost effectiveness analysis would not be able to be performed for generic components and disease specific analyses would not be generalisable.

Review question: What generic components of patient education programmes improve patient experience?

There was no date limit placed on the literature search for systematic reviews investigating the efficacy of different education programme components. Systematic reviews that included RCT and cohort design studies of adults over the age of 16 years were considered for inclusion.

Systematic reviews were excluded if their included studies were predominantly focusing on people using the health services for the treatment of mental health problems.

One systematic review[48] was identified that addressed the question. The systematic review[48] considered interventions to improve knowledge, adherence, and clinical outcomes in patients with chronic conditions. 70 studies conducted between 1961 and 1984 were included. 20 addressed hypertension, 13 diabetes, 9 mental problems, 6 asthma, 4 hormone therapy, 4 congestive heart failure and other cardiac conditions, 3 rehabilitation therapy, 2 anticoagulant therapy, and 1 each tuberculosis, epilepsy, renal transplants, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, hyperlipoproteinemic conditions, chronic renal failure, hemophilia, glaucoma, and mixed chronic illnesses.

See Appendix F for details of studies that were included in the Mullens systematic review. The overall group of 27 studies that measured knowledge were not homogeneous (H=81.68, p<0.05). See Table 35 for a summary of results.

Table 35: Knowledge effects and test of homogeneity for each intervention

Strategy type	Number of studies	Pooled effect size (SD)	95% confidence interval	Test of homogeneity (χ^2)
One-to-one counselling	3	1.13 (0.15)	0.83 to 1.41	2.20
Group education	3	0.75 (0.17)	0.38 to 1.05	2.13
Written and/or other audiovisual, except patient package insert	6	0.42 (0.09)	0.24 to 0.58	7.25
Patient package insert	6	-0.03 (0.10)	-0.25 to 0.13	0.26
Counselling or group plus materials	8	0.73 (0.12)	0.50 to 0.97	13.88
Behaviour modification	2	0.51 (0.21	-0.04 to 0.86	1.04

(a) A positive score favours the intervention, a negative score favours the control; Effect size values are interpreted as values from a standard normal distribution where the mean is 0, and the variance is 1.

A weighted least squares analysis was performed to test the impact of various strategy groups on effect size values in conjunction with other study variables that might have exerted an influence (study design, measurement quality, type of comparison group used, difference in educational rating score for the experimental and control groups, length of time the results were observed, strategy group, education rating score, type of ES calculation formula used). The residual sum of squares = 25.77, 24df, P<0.05, adjusted R^2 = 0.82.

See Table 36 for results of the analysis.

Table 36: Weighted least-squares analysis for knowledge effects

Variable (a)	β	Standard error of β	95% simultaneous confidence interval
Rating of educational quality	0.048	0.0007	±0.016
Patient package inserts	-0.757	0.122	±0.272
Written and/or other	-0.343	0.114	±0.254

Variable (a)	β	Standard error of β	95% simultaneous confidence interval
audiovisual materials			
Rating of measurement quality	-0.252	0.092	±0.207

(a) Significant at P<0.05

Adherence was defined as probability or percentage of drug errors. For results of the analysis see Table 37 and Table 38.

Table 37: Drug utilisation errors and test of homogeneity for intervention grouping

Strategy type	Number of studies	Pooled effect size (SD)	95% confidence interval	Test of homogeneity (χ^2)
One-to-one counselling	8	-0.43 (0.09)	-0.24 to -0.61	9.47
Group education	11	-0.34 (0.13)	-0.28 to -0.41	14.53
Written and/or other audiovisual, except patient package insert	2	-0.43 (0.17)	0.08 to -0.77	1.02
Patient package insert	4	-0.01 (0.12)	0.23 to -0.25	1.75
Counselling or group plus materials	13	-0.44 (0.08)	-0.28 to -0.60	10.17
Labels, special containers, or memory aids	3	-0.42 (0.15)	-0.13 to -0.71	3.23
Labels, containers, or memory aids plus counselling or group	6	-0.47 (011)	-0.25 to -0.70	1.93
Behaviour modification/self-administration	8	-0.50 (0.09)	-0.33 to -0.67	4.73

Table 38: Weighted least square analysis for drug errors

Variable[a]	β	Standard error of β	95% simultaneous confidence interval
Rating of educational quality	-0.024[b]	0.003	±0.007
Patient package inserts	0.391	0.131	±0.293
Rating of measurement quality	0.070	0.026	±0.058
Group education	0.101	0.056	±0.125

[a] Significant at P<0.05
[b] The negative sign indicates this variable was positively associated with reduction in drug errors.

Evidence statements

Clinical — One systematic review found evidence for one-to-one counselling, group education and one or both strategies in combination with audio-visual materials had the largest effect on increasing knowledge. Educational rating score was the strongest predictor of effect sizes for both knowledge and drug errors.

10.5.2 Recommendations and link to evidence

Recommendations	**67. Ensure that patient-education programmes:** • **are evidence-based** • **have specific aims and learning objectives** • **meet the needs of the patient (taking into account cultural, linguistic, cognitive and literacy considerations)** • **promote the patient's ability to manage their own health if appropriate.** **68. Give the patient the opportunity to take part in evidence-based educational activities, including self-management programmes, that are available and meet the criteria listed in recommendation 67.**
Relative values of different outcomes	
Trade off between clinical benefits and harms	Recent NICE guidelines have made a number of recommendations about education programmes for specific conditions. The GDG considered that patient education programmes had an important role to play in certain conditions where they had been implemented following consideration of the evidence on effective and cost effective. However, it was noted that outcomes were likely to vary by specific intervention and specific condition (for example, people with more severe conditions may be more willing to make behavioural changes) and so this consideration was best retained within condition-specific guidelines. The GDG considered that although the literature review found positive effect sizes for one-to one counselling, group education, written/audiovisual information, and counselling or group plus material on knowledge, the quality of the evidence was not good enough to recommend these be included in all education programmes, particularly as the clinical and cost-efficacy have been shown to vary depending on the disease area and associated risk in existing NICE guidelines. The GDG agreed there was no evidence of clinical harm so patients should be given the opportunity to participate in educational programmes if they already exist and meet the criteria specified in the recommendation.
Economic considerations	Effective patient education programmes have the potential to improve patients' health and reduce healthcare resource use. However, as noted above, consideration of the effectiveness and cost effectiveness of specific interventions was considered best retained within condition-specific guidelines. The recommendation made promoting use of evidence-based education programmes is not considered to have additional economic considerations.
Quality of evidence	In the systematic review identified there was a problem with incomplete descriptions of interventions in individual studies, making it difficult to assess authors' claims of what they were testing. The authors of individual studies rarely specified a reason for selecting a specific intervention or combination of interventions in their study. Many studies were conducted within special subgroups within the population which impacts our ability to generalise the findings to other target groups of patients.
Other considerations	The GDG considered that even when appropriate evidence-based education programmes were available, patients did not always get access to them, so made a recommendation that where available, patients should be offered the opportunity to take part in education programmes.

11 Glossary

Abstract	Summary of a study, which may be published alone or as an introduction to a full scientific paper.
Algorithm (in guidance)	A flow chart of the clinical decision pathway described in the guidance, where decision points are represented with boxes, linked with arrows.
Baseline	The initial set of measurements at the beginning of a study (after run-in period where applicable), with which subsequent results are compared.
Bias	Systematic (as opposed to random) deviation of the results of a study from the 'true' results that is caused by the way the study is designed or conducted.
Blinding	Keeping the study participants, caregivers, researchers and outcome assessors unaware about the interventions to which the participants have been allocated in a study.
Carer (caregiver)	Someone other than a health professional who is involved in caring for a person with a medical condition.
Clinical efficacy	The extent to which an intervention is active when studied under controlled research conditions.
Clinical effectiveness	The extent to which an intervention produces an overall health benefit in routine clinical practice.
Clinician	A healthcare professional providing direct patient care, for example doctor, nurse or physiotherapist.
Cochrane Review	The Cochrane Library consists of a regularly updated collection of evidence-based medicine databases including the Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (reviews of randomised controlled trials prepared by the Cochrane Collaboration).
Cohort study	A retrospective or prospective follow-up study. Groups of individuals to be followed up are defined on the basis of presence or absence of exposure to a suspected risk factor or intervention. A cohort study can be comparative, in which case two or more groups are selected on the basis of differences in their exposure to the agent of interest.
Comparability	Similarity of the groups in characteristics likely to affect the study results (such as health status or age).
Confidence interval (CI)	A range of values for an unknown population parameter with a stated 'confidence' (conventionally 95%) that it contains the true value. The interval is calculated from sample data, and generally straddles the sample estimate. The 'confidence' value means that if the method used to calculate the interval is repeated many times, then that proportion of intervals will actually contain the true value.
Confounding	In a study, confounding occurs when the effect of an intervention on an outcome is distorted as a result of an association between the population or intervention or outcome and another factor (the 'confounding variable') that can influence the outcome independently of the intervention under study.
Consensus methods	Techniques that aim to reach an agreement on a particular issue. Consensus methods may used when there is a lack of strong evidence on a particular topic.
Control group	A group of patients recruited into a study that receives no treatment, a treatment of known effect, or a placebo (dummy treatment) - in order to provide a comparison for a group receiving an experimental treatment, such as a new drug.
Cost benefit analysis	A type of economic evaluation where both costs and benefits of healthcare treatment are measured in the same monetary units. If benefits exceed costs,

Abstract	Summary of a study, which may be published alone or as an introduction to a full scientific paper. the evaluation would recommend providing the treatment.
Cost-consequences analysis (CCA)	A type of economic evaluation where various health outcomes are reported in addition to cost for each intervention, but there is no overall measure of health gain.
Cost-effectiveness analysis (CEA)	An economic study design in which consequences of different interventions are measured using a single outcome, usually in 'natural' units (For example, life-years gained, deaths avoided, heart attacks avoided, cases detected). Alternative interventions are then compared in terms of cost per unit of effectiveness.
Cost-effectiveness model	An explicit mathematical framework, which is used to represent clinical decision problems and incorporate evidence from a variety of sources in order to estimate the costs and health outcomes.
Cost-utility analysis (CUA)	A form of cost-effectiveness analysis in which the units of effectiveness are quality-adjusted life-years (QALYs).
Discounting	Costs and perhaps benefits incurred today have a higher value than costs and benefits occurring in the future. Discounting health benefits reflects individual preference for benefits to be experienced in the present rather than the future. Discounting costs reflects individual preference for costs to be experienced in the future rather than the present.
Dominance	An intervention is said to be dominated if there is an alternative intervention that is both less costly and more effective.
Drop-out	A participant who withdraws from a trial before the end.
Economic evaluation	Comparative analysis of alternative health strategies (interventions or programmes) in terms of both their costs and consequences.
Effect (as in effect measure, treatment effect, estimate of effect, effect size)	The observed association between interventions and outcomes or a statistic to summarise the strength of the observed association.
Effectiveness	See 'Clinical effectiveness'.
Efficacy	See 'Clinical efficacy'.
Epidemiological study	The study of a disease within a population, defining its incidence and prevalence and examining the roles of external influences (For example, infection, diet) and interventions.
EQ-5D (EuroQol-5D)	A standardise instrument used to measure a health outcome. It provides a single index value for health status.
Evidence	Information on which a decision or guidance is based. Evidence is obtained from a range of sources including randomised controlled trials, observational studies, expert opinion (of clinical professionals and/or patients).
Exclusion criteria (literature review)	Explicit standards used to decide which studies should be excluded from consideration as potential sources of evidence.
Exclusion criteria (clinical study)	Criteria that define who is not eligible to participate in a clinical study.
Extended dominance	If Option A is both more clinically effective than Option B and has a lower cost per unit of effect, when both are compared with a do-nothing alternative then Option A is said to have extended dominance over Option B. Option A is therefore more efficient and should be preferred, other things remaining equal.
Extrapolation	In data analysis, predicting the value of a parameter outside the range of observed values.
Follow-up	Observation over a period of time of an individual, group or initially defined

Abstract	Summary of a study, which may be published alone or as an introduction to a full scientific paper.
	population whose appropriate characteristics have been assessed in order to observe changes in health status or health-related variables.
Generalisability	The extent to which the results of a study based on measurement in a particular patient population and/or a specific context hold true for another population and/or in a different context. In this instance, this is the degree to which the guidance recommendation is applicable across both geographical and contextual settings. For instance, guidelines that suggest substituting one form of labour for another should acknowledge that these costs might vary across the country.
Harms	Adverse effects of an intervention.
Health economics	The study of the allocation of scarce resources among alternative healthcare treatments. Health economists are concerned with both increasing the average level of health in the population and improving the distribution of health.
Health-related quality of life (HRQoL)	A combination of an individual's physical, mental and social well-being; not merely the absence of disease.
Heterogeneity or lack of homogeneity.	The term is used in meta-analyses and systematic reviews when the results or estimates of effects of treatment from separate studies seem to be very different – in terms of the size of treatment effects or even to the extent that some indicate beneficial and others suggest adverse treatment effects. Such results may occur as a result of differences between studies in terms of the patient populations, outcome measures, definition of variables or duration of follow-up.
Idiom	A phrase, saying or expression that has a meaning not deducible from those of the individual words (e.g. over the moon, see the light). It may be a form of expression natural to a language, person, or group of people and includes the dialect of a people or part of a country.
Inclusion criteria (literature review)	Explicit criteria used to decide which studies should be considered as potential sources of evidence.
Incremental analysis	The analysis of additional costs and additional clinical outcomes with different interventions.
Incremental cost	The mean cost per patient associated with an intervention minus the mean cost per patient associated with a comparator intervention.
Incremental cost effectiveness ratio (ICER)	The difference in the mean costs in the population of interest divided by the differences in the mean outcomes in the population of interest for one treatment compared with another.
Incremental net benefit (INB)	The value (usually in monetary terms) of an intervention net of its cost compared with a comparator intervention. The INB can be calculated for a given cost-effectiveness (willingness to pay) threshold. If the threshold is £20,000 per QALY gained then the INB is calculated as: (£20,000 x QALYs gained) – Incremental cost.
Intervention	Healthcare action intended to benefit the patient, for example, drug treatment, surgical procedure, psychological therapy.
Length of stay	The total number of days a participant stays in hospital.
Licence	See 'Product licence'.
Life-years gained	Mean average years of life gained per person as a result of the intervention compared with an alternative intervention.
Markov model	A method for estimating long-term costs and effects for recurrent or chronic conditions, based on health states and the probability of transition between

Abstract	Summary of a study, which may be published alone or as an introduction to a full scientific paper. them within a given time period (cycle).
Meta-analysis	A statistical technique for combining (pooling) the results of a number of studies that address the same question and report on the same outcomes to produce a summary result. The aim is to derive more precise and clear information from a large data pool. It is generally more reliably likely to confirm or refute a hypothesis than the individual trials.
Multivariate model	A statistical model for analysis of the relationship between two or more predictor (independent) variables and the outcome (dependent) variable.
Number needed to treat (NNT)	The number of patients that who on average must be treated to prevent a single occurrence of the outcome of interest.
Observational study	Retrospective or prospective study in which the investigator observes the natural course of events with or without control groups; for example, cohort studies and case–control studies.
Odds ratio	A measure of treatment effectiveness. The odds of an event happening in the treatment group, expressed as a proportion of the odds of it happening in the control group. The 'odds' is the ratio of events to non-events.
Opportunity cost	The loss of other health care programmes displaced by investment in or introduction of another intervention. This may be best measured by the health benefits that could have been achieved had the money been spent on the next best alternative healthcare intervention.
Outcome	Measure of the possible results that may stem from exposure to a preventive or therapeutic intervention. Outcome measures may be intermediate endpoints or they can be final endpoints. See ‘Intermediate outcome’.
P-value	The probability that an observed difference could have occurred by chance, assuming that there is in fact no underlying difference between the means of the observations. If the probability is less than 1 in 20, the P value is less than 0.05; a result with a P value of less than 0.05 is conventionally considered to be ‘statistically significant’.
Placebo	An inactive and physically identical medication or procedure used as a comparator in controlled clinical trials.
Power (statistical)	The ability to demonstrate an association when one exists. Power is related to sample size; the larger the sample size, the greater the power and the lower the risk that a possible association could be missed.
Primary care	Healthcare delivered to patients outside hospitals. Primary care covers a range of services provided by general practitioners, nurses, dentists, pharmacists, opticians and other healthcare professionals.
Primary outcome	The outcome of greatest importance, usually the one in a study that the power calculation is based on.
Product licence	An authorisation from the MHRA to market a medicinal product.
Prognosis	A probable course or outcome of a disease. Prognostic factors are patient or disease characteristics that influence the course. Good prognosis is associated with low rate of undesirable outcomes; poor prognosis is associated with a high rate of undesirable outcomes.
Prospective study	A study in which people are entered into the research and then followed up over a period of time with future events recorded as they happen. This contrasts with studies that are retrospective.
Publication bias	Also known as reporting bias. A bias caused by only a subset of all the relevant data being available. The publication of research can depend on the nature and direction of the study results. Studies in which an intervention is not found to be effective are sometimes not published. Because of this, systematic reviews that fail to include unpublished studies may overestimate

Abstract	Summary of a study, which may be published alone or as an introduction to a full scientific paper. the true effect of an intervention. In addition, a published report might present a biased set of results (e.g. only outcomes or sub-groups where a statistically significant difference was found.
Quality of life	See 'Health-related quality of life'.
Quality-adjusted life year (QALY)	An index of survival that is adjusted to account for the patient's quality of life during this time. QALYs have the advantage of incorporating changes in both quantity (longevity/mortality) and quality (morbidity, psychological, functional, social and other factors) of life. Used to measure benefits in cost-utility analysis. The QALYs gained are the mean QALYs associated with one treatment minus the mean QALYs associated with an alternative treatment.
Randomisation	Allocation of participants in a research study to two or more alternative groups using a chance procedure, such as computer-generated random numbers. This approach is used in an attempt to ensure there is an even distribution of participants with different characteristics between groups and thus reduce sources of bias.
Randomised controlled trial (RCT)	A comparative study in which participants are randomly allocated to intervention and control groups and followed up to examine differences in outcomes between the groups.
RCT	See 'Randomised controlled trial'.
Relative risk (RR)	The number of times more likely or less likely an event is to happen in one group compared with another (calculated as the risk of the event in group A/the risk of the event in group B).
Reporting bias	See publication bias.
Resource implication	The likely impact in terms of finance, workforce or other NHS resources.
Retrospective study	A retrospective study deals with the present/ past and does not involve studying future events. This contrasts with studies that are prospective.
Review question	In guidance development, this term refers to the questions about treatment and care that are formulated to guide the development of evidence-based recommendations.
Secondary outcome	An outcome used to evaluate additional effects of the intervention deemed a priori as being less important than the primary outcomes.
Selection bias	A systematic bias in selecting participants for study groups, so that the groups have differences in prognosis and/or therapeutic sensitivities at baseline. Randomisation (with concealed allocation) of patients protects against this bias.
Sensitivity analysis	A means of representing uncertainty in the results of economic evaluations. Uncertainty may arise from missing data, imprecise estimates or methodological controversy. Sensitivity analysis also allows for exploring the generalisability of results to other settings. The analysis is repeated using different assumptions to examine the effect on the results. One-way simple sensitivity analysis (univariate analysis): each parameter is varied individually in order to isolate the consequences of each parameter on the results of the study. Multi-way simple sensitivity analysis (scenario analysis): two or more parameters are varied at the same time and the overall effect on the results is evaluated. Threshold sensitivity analysis: the critical value of parameters above or below which the conclusions of the study will change are identified. Probabilistic sensitivity analysis: probability distributions are assigned to the uncertain parameters and are incorporated into evaluation models based on decision analytical techniques (For example, Monte Carlo simulation).

Abstract	Summary of a study, which may be published alone or as an introduction to a full scientific paper.
Shared decision making	Shared decision making is an approach where clinicians and patients communicate together using the best available evidence when faced with the task of making decisions, where patients are supported to deliberate about the possible attributes and consequences of options, to arrive at informed preferences in making a determination about the best action and which respects patient autonomy, where this is desired, ethical and legal.
Significance (statistical)	A result is deemed statistically significant if the probability of the result occurring by chance is less than 1 in 20 ($p < 0.05$).
Stakeholder	Those with an interest in the use of the guidance. Stakeholders include manufacturers, sponsors, healthcare professionals, and patient and carer groups.
Systematic review	Research that summarises the evidence on a clearly formulated question according to a pre-defined protocol using systematic and explicit methods to identify, select and appraise relevant studies, and to extract, collate and report their findings. It may or may not use statistical meta-analysis.
Time horizon	The time span over which costs and health outcomes are considered in a decision analysis or economic evaluation.
Treatment allocation	Assigning a participant to a particular arm of the trial.
Utility	A measure of the strength of an individual's preference for a specific health state in relation to alternative health states. The utility scale assigns numerical values on a scale from 0 (death) to 1 (optimal or 'perfect' health). Health states can be considered worse than death and thus have a negative value.

Appendices

Appendix A: Scope

A.1 Title

Patient experience in adult NHS services: improving the experience of care for people using adult NHS services

A.1.1 Short title

Patient experience in generic terms

A.2 Introduction

A.2.1 Guidance

This guidance will make recommendations on the appropriate treatment and care of people within the NHS. The recommendations are based on the best available evidence.

This scope defines what the guidance will (and will not) examine, and what the guidance developers will consider. The scope is based on the referral from the Department of Health.

A.2.2 Quality standards

Quality standards are a set of specific, concise quality statements and measures that act as markers of high-quality, cost-effective patient care, covering the treatment and prevention of different diseases and conditions.

For this topic a NICE quality standard will be produced based on the guidance recommendations. The guidance and the quality standard will be published at the same time.

This scope defines the areas of care for which specific quality statements and measures will (and will not) be developed.

A.3 The remit

The Department of Health has asked NICE: 'to produce a quality standard and guidance on patient experience in generic terms'.

A.4 Need for guidance

A.4.1 Background

a) Over the past few years several documents and initiatives have highlighted the importance of the patient's experience and the need to focus on improving these experiences where possible.

- Lord Darzi's report 'High quality care for all' (2008) highlighted the importance of the entire patient experience within the NHS, ensuring people are treated with compassion, dignity and respect within a clean, safe and well-managed environment.

- The development of the NHS Constitution (2009) was one of several recommendations from Lord Darzi's report. The Constitution describes the purpose, principles and values of the NHS and illustrates what staff, patients and the public can expect from the service. Since the Health Act came into force in January 2010, service providers and commissioners of NHS care have had a legal obligation to take the Constitution into account in all their decisions and actions.

b) The King's Fund charitable foundation has developed a comprehensive policy resource – 'Seeing the person in the patient: the point of care review paper' (2008).

c) National initiatives aimed at improving patients' experience of healthcare include NHS Choices, a comprehensive information service that helps people to manage their healthcare and provides patients and carers with information and choice about their care. Local initiatives, such as patient advice and liaison services (PALS), have also been introduced.

d) Despite these initiatives, there is evidence to suggest that further work is needed to deliver the best possible experience for patients who use NHS services.

e) High quality care should be clinically effective, safe and be provided in a way that ensures the patient has the best possible experience of care. This guidance, and the quality standard that will be developed from it, will aim to ensure that patients have the best possible experience of care from the NHS.

A.4.2 Current practice

a) Current practice varies across all healthcare settings.

A.5 The guidance and quality standard

The guidance and quality standard will outline a level of service that people using the NHS should expect to receive. It is recognised that some people or groups may have had poor experiences of healthcare and need additional consideration in the delivery of high quality care (for example, because of their age, disability, race, religion or belief). The specific needs of such people or groups will not be addressed within this guidance and quality standard but the principles may be of use in local strategies to narrow inequalities in patient experience.

A.5.1 Population

A.5.1.1 Groups that will be covered

a) People who use adult NHS services.

A.5.1.2 Groups that will not be covered

a) People using NHS services for mental health.

b) Carers of people using NHS services. The guidance and quality standard will examine the role of carers in the experience of people using NHS services but will not address carers' experiences of services.

A.5.2 Healthcare setting

a) All settings in which NHS care is provided, except mental health care.

A.5.3 Objectives

a) Develop recommendations and quality standards to provide a framework that describes the key requirements for providing a high quality patient experience within the NHS. We do not expect the guidance to make recommendations on all elements of the framework.

b) Identify quality measures that set the expected degree of achievement. The NICE Quality Standards team will be responsible for the development of the quality measures.

c) Identify key areas for further research that are likely to improve our understanding of how to measure and improve the experience of care within the NHS.

A.5.4 Methods

a) The National Clinical Guidelines Centre will develop a framework of patient experience in the NHS.

b) A number of frameworks and reviews of frameworks already exist, developed and tested through differing approaches. The principles of these frameworks will be considered but a comparison will not be made between them.

c) The Guideline Development Group will consider these frameworks and their common themes, and agree a list of key themes from which recommendations will be developed. The quality standards will be framed by these recommendations. This process will be informed by the information gathered in 4.4 e and f.

d) NICE will also use the framework to develop quality measures.

e) A high level literature review will be conducted to identify and synthesise qualitative and quantitative studies that have examined patient experience and interventions to improve it.

f) NICE clinical guidelines and public health guidance published in the past 3 years will be reviewed to identify questions, evidence reviews and recommendations that the Guideline Development Groups considered important for improving patient experience.

g) The GDG will identify themes that underpin the experience of care for which quality standards will be developed. Statements will be developed to describe these themes. It is likely that these themes will already have been covered by recommendations in existing NICE guidelines, and will be ones for which there is an evidence base to inform quality standards. The GDG will choose areas for which the NCGC will develop reviews to inform quality standards.

h) Stakeholders will be invited to comment on the draft recommendations and quality standard through a formal consultation.

A.5.5 Economic aspects

Developers will take into account both the clinical and cost effectiveness of interventions. If interventions are identified that may improve patient experience, a cost impact analysis will be undertaken.

If there is sufficient evidence to offer a choice between alternative interventions, then a cost effectiveness analysis will be undertaken using existing NICE methods. The preferred unit of effectiveness for this will be the quality-adjusted life year (QALY), and the costs considered will usually be only from an NHS and personal social services (PSS) perspective.

A.5.6 Status

A.5.6.1 Scope

This is the final scope.

A.5.6.2 Timing

The development of guidance recommendations will begin in January 2011. There will be six guidance meetings. Publication of the guidance and quality standard is expected in October 2011.

A.6 Related NICE guidance

NICE is currently developing the following related guidance (details available from the NICE website):

- Service user experience in adult mental health. NICE guidance and quality standard. Publication expected October 2011.

Appendix B: Thematic qualitative review: scoping report

Sophie Staniszewska, Felicity Boardman, Lee Gunn, Julie Palmer, Diane Clay, Kate Seers, Jo Brett

January 2011

B.1 Executive Summary

Patient experiences have become an important part of health care evaluation, contributing insights into the acceptability, relevance, appropriateness and effectiveness of health care. This scoping study has reviewed patient experiences in three clinical area, cancer, cardiovascular disease and diabetes, all areas of significant disease burden. We have extracted patient experiences data from a range of peer-reviewed studies and analysed them thematically, building on the sub-themes identified in the studies to develop generic patient experiences themes. Based on this analysis, we have developed a Generic Patient Experiences Framework that has potential relevance for all patients, but would need to be more widely tested. The Generic Patient Experiences Framework represents a synthesis of a wide and complex evidence base, building on the IoM framework, with some adaptation, and the addition of important themes that have emerged in this scoping study. The generic themes include patients as potential active participants, responsiveness of service – an individual approach, lived experience, continuity of care and relationships, communication, information and support. A set of evidence tables are included, providing a clear audit trail from the Framework to the underpinning evidence base. The Generic Patient Experiences Framework has the potential to contribute to the development of the Patient Experiences Guidance and the Quality Standard.

B.2 Introduction

The RCN Research Institute at the University of Warwick was commissioned by the Royal College of Physicians to undertake a scoping study of patient experiences literature, with the aim of identifying generic dimensions of experience that have relevance for all patients. This study, reported here, aims to inform the work of the Patient Experiences Guidance Group and the Quality Standard against which NHS care will be commissioned and evaluated.

B.2.1 Background

Patient experiences have become an important part of health care evaluation, contributing insights into the acceptability, relevance, appropriateness and effectiveness of health care, alongside clinical and economic forms of evidence (Staniszewska 2010). There is a large and diverse body of literature which documents the experiences of a range of patients in a variety of clinical areas, reflected in the large number of studies identified by searches of literature undertaken for this study (appendix 4). Research focusing on the effectiveness of interventions that aim to improve patients' experiences has not been assessed for effectiveness in this review as this would have required a systematic review. In addition to published peer-reviewed studies of experience, valuable online sources of information and databases of patient experiences exist which aim to enhance our understanding of what it is like to live with a particular condition, for example Healthtalkonline (http://www.healthtalkonline.org/) which includes interviews with individuals about a range of conditions and PRIME, which focused on ME/CFS (http://www.prime-cfs.org/).

In an attempt to draw together and summarise our understanding of experiences, a number of frameworks have emerged that try to capture the key dimensions of patient experiences, for example the Institute of Medicine (2001). By dimensions we mean a theme or an area of experience, such as information or communication. However, it is not always clear how these dimensions of experiences have been abstracted from a wider and diverse body of research, or the extent to which patients and the public have been involved in developing or selecting these dimensions, or the extent to which the dimensions reflect patient-identified experiences, as opposed to those identified by researchers and clinicians. With these uncertainties about the underpinning of some of the existing frameworks, this scoping study aimed to identify a framework which captures generic dimensions of experiences and provides a very clear audit trail to the underpinning evidence in three clinical areas.

B.3 Aims

The overall objective of this scoping study was to:

- To identify generic themes and sub-themes of patient experience in three clinical areas: cardiovascular disease, diabetes and cancer, all areas of significant disease burden.
- To use the themes and sub-themes identified in the three clinical areas to develop an overall generic patient experiences framework that has potential relevance for all patients.

B.4 Methods

The aim of this scoping study was to sample from a range of patient experiences studies, with the intention of reaching a level of data saturation, in terms of the generic themes being identified for each group. Data saturation describes the point at which no new generic themes are being identified from studies (Ritchie and Lewis 2003). It is not an absolute measurement but a judgement made by the researcher. The intention was not to conduct a systematic review, which would have been unfeasible in the time-scale, but some elements of systematic reviewing were adopted, for example in the development of search strategies and in the extraction of data from papers (Centre for Reviews and Dissemination Guidance 2009).

B.4.1 Search strategy

The search strategies were developed and refined by an information specialist for each of the following key electronic databases: Medline, Cinahl, Assia, Embase and Psychinfo. Additional papers were identified from reference lists and specialist journals. Additional searches were carried out on PubMed and UK PubMed Central.

B.4.1.1 Inclusion criteria

Research papers that focus on exploring or identifying patient experiences in the three clinical areas: cardiovascular disease, diabetes and cancer. English language papers. **Search dates:**1995 – 2011.

B.4.1.2 Exclusion criteria:

Papers that primarily focus on interventions to enhance patient experiences. Papers that report development, testing or application of patient-reported outcome measures. Opinion articles or editorials about patient experience. Non-English language papers. Children's experiences. Carer's experiences. Grey literature.

B.4.1.3 Challenges in developing search strategies

In undertaking this study a number of challenges were identified with the development of search strategies. A key difficulty was the lack of MESH headings that relate to patient experiences, necessitating the use of free text searching, which can rely on poorly defined terminology sometimes inconsistently used across studies. The necessary use of many potentially relevant keywords initially produced a huge number of irrelevant hits that required refinement. The process of developing a search strategy was thus iterative and a range of combinations of key words were used in an attempt to maximise the relevance of the studies being identified. The complexity of searching for studies in patient experiences is illustrated by the initial strategies developed on Medline. A total of 10 strategies were recorded on the Medline database, but many more were trialled in an effort to obtain a manageable number of relevant results. A final version was decided on and in the Medline/Embase search, this strategy produced a relevancy rate of 20% in the area of cancer. The search strategy was then adapted for use with other databases, for example because none of the other databases had the refinements in terms of searching which were available on the Ovid versions of Medline and Embase. Other databases also posed problems because they did not always allow for the addition of particular filters to help refine the search in order to identify more manageable numbers of studies. Search strategies for each clinical area are included in section B.11.

B.4.1.4 Selection of papers

Titles and abstracts were read for relevance and papers judged to meet inclusion criteria were included in the study. While ideally, a second researcher would have cross-checked a sample of the studies for their relevance, in practice this was not possible because of the short time-scale and the large number of possible papers identified. However, the research team met regularly to discuss any ambiguous papers and a decision was reached about their inclusion. A number of key steps were followed in the identification and analysis of themes.

Data extraction of sub-themes and themes

Each paper that met the inclusion criteria was read in full by one researcher. Three researchers data extracted, each leading on one clinical area. As each paper was read, sub-themes were identified and linked to a generic theme. A sub-theme was defined as an aspect of patient experience, for example, patients experiencing poor information provision when making decisions. In this case the sub-theme would be linked to a broader generic theme of information. In some cases, sub-themes would relate to more than one generic theme. These themes and sub-themes were then recorded using a data extraction form, which provided a structured way of organising the information and an audit trail for how sub-themes and evolving generic themes were being linked. A key challenge in developing the themes and sub-themes was the varying level of detail provided in papers when describing sub-themes. Researchers undertook this analysis individually and any ambiguous sub-themes and their relationship to a broader generic theme were discussed within the research team. In addition to data about experiences, the data extraction sheet also recorded any key methodological limitations or fatal flaws (that would have justified exclusion), as a full quality assessment of studies was not possible within the timeframe of the study. The data extraction sheets that record all themes and sub-themes for each study are contained as a separate volume, which accompanies this report.

Developing themes and sub-themes for each clinical area

A summary evidence table of generic themes and underpinning sub-themes was then produced for each clinical area, with the references listed alongside each sub-theme. These summary tables brought together all the themes and sub-themes that emerged from the detailed data extraction sheets in a particular clinical area. See sections B.8, B.9 and B.10. A shortened version of these tables is provided in the results sections B.5.1, B.5.2 and B.5.3.

Developing the overall patient experiences framework

In order to develop the overall generic experiences framework and to manage the process of synthesising data extracted from studies, the next stage utilised the Institute of Medicine (2001) framework as a model against which to compare and contrast the themes identified in this study against the IoM framework (compassion, empathy and responsiveness, co-ordination and integration, information, communication and education, physical comfort, emotional support, relieving fear and anxiety and involvement of family and friends) identifying similarities and differences. Each element of the IoM (2001) framework was examined according to each clinical area, to review its validity, that is, whether there is evidence to support its inclusion in an overall framework. Each dimension of the IoM framework was broken down, for example information and communication were considered separately rather than amalgamating them into one category, in order to explore whether they should stand alone as themes. Once this process was complete, the research team then examined what generic themes might be missing in the IoM framework. It should be recognised that the final generic framework is by necessity a broad summary of a much wider body of evidence, with the underpinning evidence contained in the summary evidence tables in sections B.8, B.9 and B.10.

B.5 Results

Patient experiences varied across and within each clinical area. Each clinical area included a range of conditions including acute and chronic conditions, with patients accessing very different types of services. The first section reports the summary frameworks (generic and sub-themes) developed in each of the three clinical areas. The aim of these tables is to illustrate the generic themes and the sub-themes, with the detailed evidence tables presented in sections B.8, B.9 and B.10.

The second section reports the overall generic patient experiences framework developed in this scoping study.

B.5.1 Generic themes and sub-themes for Cancer

Generic theme	Sub-theme
Communication	Patient-centred communication
	Individualised approach
	Context
	Responsibility/control
	Character of health care professional
	Reassurance/hope
	Psychosocial needs
	Humour
	Support of family and friends
Information	Individualised approach
	Honesty/realism
	Reassurance/hope
	Format and quality
	Responsibility/control
	Information: Diagnosis
	Information: Treatment
	Information: Prognosis
Decision-making	Individualised approach
	Support of family-friends

	Responsibility/control
	Trust in expertise
	Relationship with health care professional
	Medical uncertainty
Continuity of care	Co-ordination
	Availability/ accessibility
	Integration
	Abandonment
	Relationship with health care professional
	Responsiveness to needs
Support	Facilitating coping strategies
	Identity
	Advocacy
	Relationship with health care professional/character of health care professional
	Support of family/friends
	Individualised approach
	Peer support/expert panels
	Preparation for diagnosis/treatment
	Stigma/taboos/culture
	Reassurance/hope
	Responsiveness to needs

The full evidence table is in section B.8.

B.5.2 Generic themes and sub-themes for Cardiovascular disease

Generic theme	Sub-theme
Accessing Services	Efficient, reliable access
	Waiting
	Absence of services
	Skills needed to access services
	Barriers to accessing services
	Interpreting symptoms and deciding to seek help
Communication	Openness
	Communication style
	Consistent information
	Barriers to communication
	Importance of communication
	Consequences of poor communication
	Characteristics of patient communication
	Wanting more opportunity for communication with health care professionals
	Staff communication skills
	Content of communication with health care professionals
	Communication aids

	Reassurance
Continuity of Care	Lack of continuity
	Experiences of continuity
	Poor communication between health care professionals and poorly coordinated services
	Feeling secure
Information	Satisfaction with information: Feeling informed
	Importance of information
	Wanting more information
	Wanting individualised information
	Format
	Delivery
	Timing
	Not wanting to know
	Recall
	Sources
	Involvement of family/friends
	Changing information
	Inconsistent information
	Sharing information
Knowledge, Understanding and making sense	Poor understanding
	Good knowledge and understanding
	Education
	Being left to figure it out yourself
	Importance of knowledge and understanding
	Translating knowledge into action
	Patients ways of making sense vary from biomedical explanations

The full evidence table is in section B.9.

B.5.3 Generic themes and sub-themes for Diabetes

Generic theme	Sub-themes
Patient as active participant	(Underpins all sub-themes)
Responsiveness (organisation of services to meet needs and preferences)	Time spent with health professionals
	Time waiting
	Response times
	Convenience
	Environment
	Co-ordination
	Resources
	Expertise
	Follow up
	Mistakes
	Tailoring care for individual rather than diabetes

	Satisfaction
Relationships/partnership (issues to do with the relationship between patients and health professionals)	Trust
	Power
	Control
	Shared decision-making
	Judgemental attitude
	Being seen as a person
	Respect
	Continuity of care
	Approachability
	Empathy
Communication (style and content of verbal and non-verbal communication between patients and health professionals – overlap with all other categories)	Importance of communication
	Quality of communication
	Listening/paying attention/acknowledging patient expertise
	Language
	Questions and answers
	Explanations
	Brusque manner
Information and support for self-care (resources provided or required, including information, education, emotional support and peer support)	Importance of information and advice
	Problems with information
	Not wanting information
	Feedback on condition
	Sources of further help
	Education and groups
	Peer support
	Need for emotional support
Lived experience	Everyday lives
	Perceived unrealistic goals
	Importance of families
	Cultural issues
	Interpretations, beliefs and meanings
	Psychological factors
	Perceived discrimination/injustice
	Complexity of diabetes and self-care

The full evidence table is in section B.9.

B.5.4 Generic framework of patient experiences

B.5.4.1 Analysis of IoM Framework

The IoM framework provided a useful starting point for the analysis of the themes and sub-themes identified in this study as it provided us with a point of comparison on which to map our own themes and sub-themes and to revise and amend the original IoM framework according to our findings. Table 1 provides a narrative commentary of how the IoM themes were adjusted and added to.

Table 39: An analysis of the IoM Framework

IoM theme	Narrative commentary
Compassion, empathy and responsiveness	Compassion and empathy were both important themes, but appeared in more subtle forms within a number of wider generic themes, for example communication. Responsiveness emerged as a generic theme but was focused on the responsiveness of the service and the need for an individualised approach.
Co-ordination and integration	These themes were important but fitted more appropriately into the wider generic themes of continuity of care and responsiveness.
Information, communication and education	Information and communication emerged as two key themes but were separated to reflect the different content of the sub-themes identified. Education appeared in a number of the generic themes in different ways, including within support and information.
Physical comfort	Physical comfort was important but appeared in other more substantive generic themes, including responsiveness and lived experience.
Emotional support, relieving fear and anxiety	Emotional support was included in a much larger category of support. Elements of fear and anxiety were more subtle and appeared as part of a broader lived experience.
Involvement of family and friends	The role of family and friends was important and appeared in broader themes of lived experience and support.

An important difference between the IoM framework and the framework developed from this scoping study was the role of patients as potentially active participants in their care and the importance of lived experience as underpinning health service experiences.

B.5.4.2 Generic Patient Experiences framework

Table 40: Generic Patient Experiences framework

Generic theme	Narrative description
Patient as active participant	Reflects the role of patients as potential active participants in their health care, co-creators and co-managers of their health and use of services; responsible for self-care, participators in healthcare, shared decision-makers, self-managers, risk managers, life-style managers. Confidence in self-management is critical. Associated with issues of power and control.
Responsiveness of services -an individualised approach	Needing to be seen as a person within the healthcare system. The responsiveness of health services in recognising the individual and tailoring services to respond to the needs, preferences, and values of patients, taking into account both shared requirements and individual characteristics (such as individuals' expectations of service cultural background, gender, and subtle issues such as preferences for humour). Includes how well clinical needs are met (for example pain management) and evaluation of how well services perform from a patient perspective.
Lived experience	The recognition that individuals are living with their condition and experiencing it in a unique way, that family and broader life need to be taken into account, and that all of these aspects of lived experience can affect self-care. Taking into account individual physical needs and cognitive needs because of condition. Everyday experiences, hopes, expectations, future uncertainty, feelings of loss, feelings of being morally judged, feelings of blame. Some of these experiences originate 'outside' of the health care system but are brought with the patient into the health system; other experiences may be affected by attitudes and expectations of health professionals.
Continuity of care and relationships	Initiating contact with services, interpretation of symptoms, co-ordination, access (barriers to), and availability of services, responsiveness of services, feelings of abandonment (when treatment ends or support is not made available). Being known as a person rather than 'a number'. Trust in health care professional built up over time. Recognition/questioning of expertise of health care professional. Respect, including respect for patient's expertise. Partnership in decision-making. Issues of power and control.
Communication	Needing to be seen as an individual; communication style and format (e.g. over telephone or in person), skills and characteristics of health care professional; body language (which can convey different information from that spoken); two-way communication and shared decision-making; compassion, empathy; the importance of the set up of consultation (for example appropriate time for questions, appropriate physical environment, number of peoples present). Listening, paying attention to the patient. Enabling questions and providing answers.
Information	Information to enable self-care and active participation in healthcare, importance of information in shared decision-making, tailored information to suit the individual, patient wanting/not wanting information, timely information. Sources of information, including, including outside the health service (for example peer support, internet). Quality of information. Sources of further information and support. Developing knowledge and understanding, making sense of one's health.
Support	Different preferences for support: Support for self-care and individual coping strategies. Education. Need for emotional support, need for hope. Responsiveness of health care professionals to individual support needs (may vary according to gender, age, and ethnicity). Importance of peer-support, groups, voluntary organisations. Practical support. Family and friends support. Role of advocacy. Feeling over-protected, not wanting to be a burden.

The aim of the framework presented in Table 40 is to summarise a complex patient experiences evidence base. The narrative description of each theme is thus illustrative, rather than exhaustive. The themes and sub-themes contained in the generic framework are complex and many connections exist between them. Themes such as 'responsiveness of service - an individualised approach' cut across other themes. Patients value health care professionals taking into account their individuality and the unique way in which they experience their condition the context of their own lives. Patients' values, beliefs and circumstances all inform their expectations of, as well as their needs for, services. Continuity of care and the establishment of trusting, empathetic and reliable relationships with competent and insightful health care professionals is key to patients receiving such individually orientated services, and enables patients to become active participants in their own care, in partnership with health care professionals. The framework also demonstrates that patients' experiences of health services and their experiences of living with the condition are often closely linked with their interpretations of how effectively the service meets their needs. In diabetes, some differences emerged with an over-riding emphasis on self-care and lifestyle issues in the research literature on patients' experiences with diabetes treatment and care. The ways in which health professionals encourage and support patients (or fail to do so) are described vividly in the literature. Diabetes care presents complex challenges to patients and to healthcare staff, because of its impact on everyday life as well as its changing course, complications and co-morbidities. Good relationships with health professionals are particularly important; issues of trust, respect, power and control are described in many accounts, as are needs for two-way communication, useful information and emotional support. Expert care and services organised to meet patients' needs (when these are available) are highly valued. While there were some differences, there were important overlaps in the generic themes and sub-themes identified in all three clinical areas.

B.6 Concluding comments

The aim of this scoping study was to identify the generic themes and sub-themes of patient experiences in three clinical area, cancer, cardiovascular disease and diabetes, all areas of significant disease burden, and to utilise these generic themes and sub-themes to develop a generic patient experiences framework that has potential relevance for all patients, but would need to be more widely tested. The Generic Patient Experiences Framework presented in table 2 of this report represents a synthesis of a wide and complex evidence base, building on the IoM framework, but changing and adding important themes that emerged in this scoping study. The generic themes included in this framework are purposefully broad, in order to capture the complexity of patient experiences that lies beneath it. The evidence tables for each clinical area aim to provide an audit trail of how generic themes and sub-themes were developed directly related to the papers from which they originated. As such the Generic Patient Experiences Framework has a strong evidence base, which has the potential to contribute to the development of the Patient Experiences Guidance and the Quality Standard.

B.7 References for the thematic qualitative review: scoping report

B.7.1 Cancer References List

C1: Yardley et al. 2001. Receiving a Diagnosis of Lung Cancer: Patients' Interpretations, Perceptions and Perspectives. Palliative Medicine. 15 pp. 379-386.

C2: Burkitt et al. 2004. Doctors' Communication of Trust, Care and Respect in Breast Cancer: Qualitative Study. BMJ. 328 pp. 864-869.

C3: Murchie et al. 2010. GP-led Melanoma Follow-up: Views and Feelings of Patient Recipients. Support Cancer Care. 18 pp. 225-233.

C4: O'Brein et al. 2010. Experiences of Follow-Up After Treatment in Patients with Prostate Cancer: A Qualitative Study. BJUI. 106. pp. 998-1003.

C5: Simpson and White. 2006. Patients' Experiences of Completing Treatment for Colorectal Cancer in a Scottish District General Hospital. European Journal of Cancer Care. 15 pp. 172-182.

C6: Allen, A. 2002. The Meaning of the Breast Cancer Follow-Up Experience for the Women who Attend. European Journal of Oncology Nursing. 6 (3) pp. 155-161.

C7: Renton et al. 2002. Follow-Up in Women with Breast Cancer: The Patients' Perspective.The Breast. 11 pp. 257-261.

C8: Lydon et al. 2009.Routine Follow up After Treatment for Ovarian Cancer in the United Kingdom: Patient and Health Professional Views. European Journal of Oncology Nursing. 13 pp. 336-343.

C9: Ballinger et al. 2008. Patients' Decision-Making in a UK Specialist Centre with High Mastectomy Rates. The Breast. 17 pp. 574-579.

C10: Lewis et al. 2009. Patients' and Healthcare Professionals' Views of Cancer Follow Up: Systematic Review. The British Journal of General Practice 59 (564) pp. 248-259.

C11: Montgomery et al. 2008. Patients' Expectation for Follow-Up in Breast Cancer- A Preliminary, Questionnaire-based Study. The Breast. 17 pp. 347-352.

C12: Constantinidou et al. 2009. Informational Needs of Patients with Melanoma and their Views on the Utility of Investigative Tests. The International Journal of Clinical Practice 63 (11) pp.1595-1600.

C13: Innes and Payne. 2009. Advanced Cancer Patients' Prognostic Information Preferences: A Review. Palliative Medicine. 23 pp.29-39.

C14: Hubbard et al.2008. Preferences for Involvement in Treatment Decision Making of Patients with Cancer: A Review of the Literature. European Journal of Oncology Nursing 12 pp. 299-318.

C15: Tarrant et al. 2008. Is seeing a Specialist Nurse Associated with Positive Experiences of Care? The Role and Value of Specialist Nurses in Prostate Cancer Care. BMC Health Services Research. 8 pp. 65-72.

C16: Randall and Wearn. 2010. Receiving Bad News: Patients with Haematological Cancer Reflect upon Their Experience. Palliative Medicine. 19 pp.594-601.

C17: Beaver et al. 2005. Exploring the Decision-Making Preferences of People with Colorectal Cancer. Health Expectations. 8 pp.103-113.

C18: Dancey et al. 2005. Views of UK Melanoma Patients on Routine Follow up Care. British Journal of Plastic Surgery. 58 pp.245-250.

C19: Exley et al. 2005.Palliative Care in the Community for Cancer and End-Stage Cardiorespiratory Disease: The Views of Patients, Lay-Carers and Health Care Professionals. Palliative Medicine. 19 pp. 76-83.

C20: Mauri et al. 2009. An Exploratory Study on the Italian Patients' Preferences Regarding How they Would like to be Told about Their Cancer. Supportive Care in Cancer. 17 (12) pp.1523-1530.

C21: Kwok-wei So and Chui. 2007. Women's Experience of Internal Radiation Treatment for Uterine Cervical Cancer. Journal of Advanced Nursing. 60 (2) pp.154-161.

C22: Sharpley and Christie. 2007. Patient Information Preferences Among Breast and Prostate Cancer Patients. Radiation Oncology. 51 pp.154-158.

C23: Vogel et al. 2008. Information and Decision Making: Patients' Needs and Experiences in the Course of Breast Cancer Treatment. Patient Education and Counseling. 71 pp.79-85.

C24: Grunfeld et al. 2006. Advanced Breast Cancer Patients' Perceptions of Decision Making for Palliative Chemotherapy. Journal of Clinical Oncology 24 (7) pp.1090-1098.

C25: Oskay-Özcelik et al. 2007. Breast Cancer Patients' Expectations in Respect of the Physician-Patient Relationship and Treatment Management Results of a Survey of 617 Patients. Annals of Oncology 18 pp. 479-484.

C26: Kirk et al. 2004. What do Patients Receiving Palliative Care for Cancer and Their Families Want to be Told? A Canadian and Australian Qualitative Study. BMJ. 10 pp.1136-1142.

C27: Osse et al. 2005.The Problems Experienced by Patients with Cancer and Their Needs for Palliative Care. Supportive Care in Cancer. 13 pp.722-732.

C28: Michael, K. 1999. Breaking the Bad News of Cancer: The Patient's Perspective. The Laryngoscope. 7 (1) pp.1064-1067.

C29: Elmir et al. 2010. Against All Odds: Australian Women's Experiences of Recovery from Breast Cancer. Journal of Clinical Nursing. 19 pp.2531-2538.

C30: Ayanian et al. 2010.Patients' Experiences With Care for Lung Cancer and Colorectal Cancer: Findings from the Cancer Care Outcomes Research and Surveillance Consortium. Journal of Clinical Oncology. 28 (27) pp. 4154-4161.

C31: Haas, M. 1999.The Relationship between Expectations and Satisfaction: A Qualitative Study of Patients' Experiences of Surgery for Gynaecological Cancer. Health Expectations. 2 pp. 51-60.

C32: Kantsiper, M. et al. 2009.Transitioning to Breast Cancer Survivorship: Perspectives of Patients, Cancer Specialists, and Primary Care Providers. Journal of General Internal Medicine. 24 (2) pp. 459-466.

C33: Salander, P. 2002.Bad News from the Patient's Perspective: An Analysis of the Written Narratives of Newly Diagnosed Cancer Patients. Social Science & Medicine. 50 pp.721-732.

C34: Schofield et al. 2003. Psychological Responses of Patients Receiving a Diagnosis of Cancer. Annals of Oncology 14 (1) pp.48-56.

C35: Birchall et al. 2002.Eliciting the Views of Patients with Head and Neck Cancer and Carers on Professionally Derived Standards for Care. BMJ 324 pp. 1-5.

C36: Rottmann et al. 2010. Patients' Needs and Experiences at Breast Cancer Diagnosis: How Perceived Threat Influences the Physician-Patient Interaction. Journal of Psychosocial Oncology 28 (2) pp.157-172.

C37: Beaver et al. 2010. An Exploratory Study of the Follow-Up Care Needs of Patients Treated for Colorectal Cancer. Journal of Clinical Nursing. 19 pp.3291-3300.

C38: Radwin, L. 2000. Oncology Patients' Perceptions of Quality Nursing Care. Research in Nursing & Health. 23 pp.179-190.

C39: Thorne et al. 2010. Helpful Communications During the Diagnostic Period: An Interpretive Description of Patient Preferences. European Journal of Cancer Care. 19. pp.746-754.

C40: Thorne et al. 2006. Hope and Probability: Patient Perspectives of the Meaning of Numerical Information in Cancer Communication. Qualitative Health Research. 16 (3) pp.318-336.

C41: Oliffe and Thorne. 2007.Men, Masculinities and Prostate Cancer: Australian and Canadian Patient Perspectives on Communication with Male Physicians. Qualitative Health Research. 17 (2) pp.149-161.

C42: Hagerty et al. 2005. Communicating with Realism and Hope: Incurable Cancer Patients' Views on the Disclosure of Prognosis. Journal of Clinical Oncology. 23 (6) pp.1278-1288.

C43: Butow et al. 1996. When the Diagnosis is Cancer: Patient Communication Experiences and Preferences. Cancer. 77 pp.2630-2637.

C44: Rutten et al. 2005. Information Needs and Sources of Information Among Cancer Patients: A Systematic Review of Research (1980-2003). Patient Education and Counseling. 57pp.250-261.

C45: Rasmusson and Thomé, 2008. Women's Wishes and Need for Knowledge Concerning Sexuality and Relationships in Connection with Gynaecological Cancer Disease. Sexuality and Disability. 26 pp.207-218.

C46: Andreassen, S. et al. 2007. Information Needs Following a Diagnosis of Oesophageal Cancer; Self-Perceived Information Needs of Patients and Family Members Compared with the Perceptions of Healthcare Professionals: A Pilot Study. European Journal of Cancer Care. 16 pp.277-285.

C47: Andreassen et al. 2006.Patients' Experiences of Living with Oesophageal Cancer. Journal of Clinical Nursing. 15 (6) pp.685-695.

C48: Wagner et al. 2010. The Quality of Cancer Patient Experience: Perspectives of Patients, Family Members, Providers and Experts. Quality and Safety in Healthcare 19 pp.484-489

C49: Krishnasamy, M. 1996. What do Cancer Patients Identify as Supportive and Unsupportive Behaviour of Nurses? A Pilot Study. European Journal of Cancer Care. 5 (2) pp.103-110.

C50: Singer et al. 2009.Quality of Care and Emotional Support from the Inpatient Cancer Patient's Perspective. Lagenbecks Archives of Surgery. 394 pp.723-731.

C51: Fish, J. 2010.Coming Out About Breast Cancer: Research Report on Lesbian and Bisexual Women's Experiences of Breast Cancer.National Cancer Action Team.

C52: Mallinger et al. 2005. Patient-Centred Care and Breast Cancer Survivors' Satisfaction with Information. Patient Education and Counseling. 57 pp.342-349.

C53: Llewellyn et al. 2005. Striking the Right Balance: A Qualitative Pilot Study Examining the Role of Information on the Development of Expectations in Patients Treated for Head and Neck Cancer. Psychology, Health & Medicine 10 (2) pp.180-193.

C54: Elkin et al. 2007. Desire for Information and Involvement in Treatment Decisions: Elderly Cancer Patients' Preferences and their Physicians' Perceptions. Journal of Clinical Oncology. 26 (33) pp.5275-5280

C55: Watanabe, Y. 2008. Japanese Cancer Patient Participation in, and Satisfaction with, Treatment-Relations Decision-Making: A Qualitative Study. BMC Public Health. 8 pp.77-86.

B.7.2 Cardiovascular Reference List

CV1: Kennelly, C. & Bowling, A. (2001) Suffering in Deference: a focus group study of older cardiac patients' preferences for treatment and perceptions of risk. Qual. Health Care 10: i23-i28.

CV2: Doering, L. V., McGuire, A. W. & Rourke, D. (2002) Recovering from Cardiac Surgery: What Patients want to know. Am J. Crit. Care 11: 333-343.

CV3:Tod, A. M., Lacey, E. A. & McNeill, F. (2002) 'I'm still waiting…': barriers to accessing cardiac rehabilitation services. J. of Advanced Nursing 40 (4): 421-31.

CV4: Clark, A. M. (2003) 'It's like an explosion in your life…': Lay perspectives on stress and myocardial infarction. J. of Clinical Nursing 12: 544-553.

CV5: Webster, R. A.,Thompson, D. R. & Mayou, R. A. (2002) The experiences and needs of Gujurati Hindu patients and partners in the first month after myocardial infarction. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 1: 69-76..

CV6: Kristofferzon, M-L., Löfmark, R., and Carlsson, M. (2003) Myocardial Infarction: gender differences in coping and social support. J. of Advanced Nursing 44(4): 360-374.

CV7: Jacobsson, A. Pihl, E., Mårtensson, J. & Fridlund, B. (2004) Emotions, the meaning of food and heart failure: a grounded theory study. J. of Advanced Nursing 46(5): 514-522.

CV8: Ivarsson, B., Larsson, S., & Sjöberg, T. (2004) Patients' experiences of support while waiting for cardiac surgery. A critical incident technique analysis. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 3: 183-191.

CV9: Shaw, A., Ibrahaim, S., Reid, F., Usher, M. & Rowlands, G. (2009) Patients' perspectives of the doctor-patient relationship and information giving across a range of literacy levels. Patient Education and Counseling 75: 114-120.

CV10: Hartford, K. (2005) Telenursing and patients' recovery from Bypass surgery. J. of Advanced Nursing 50(5): 459-468.

CV11: Price, J. R., Mayou, R. A., Bass, C. M., Hames, R. J., Sprigings, D., and Birkhead, J. S. (2005) Developing a Rapid Access chest pain clinic: Qualitative studies of patients' needs and experiences. J. of Psychosomatic Research 59: 237-246.

CV12: Wingham, J. Dalal, H. M., Sweeney, K. G. & Evans, P. H. (2006) Listening to Patients: Choice in cardiac rehabilitation. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 5: 289-294.

CV13: Brännström, M., Ekman, I., Norberg, A., Boman, K. & Strandberg, G. (2006) Living with sever chronic heart failure in palliative advanced care home. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 5: 295-302.

CV14: Johansson, I., Swahn, E. & Strömberg, A. (2007) Manageability, vulnerability and interaction: A qualitative analysis of acute myocardial infarction patients' conceptions of the event. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 6: 184-191.

CV15: MacInnes, J. D. (2006) The illness perceptions of women following symptoms of acute myocardial infarction: A self-regulatory approach. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 5: 280-288.

CV16: Leegaard, M. & Fagermoen, M. S. (2008) Patients' key experiences after coronary artery bypass grafting: a synthesis of qualitative studies. Scand. J. Caring Sci. 22: 616-628.

CV17: Nakano, A., Mainz, J. & Lomborg. K. (2008) Patient perception and assessment of admission to acute cardiac care unit. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 7: 10-15.

CV18: Hagberth, V., Sjöberg, T. & Ivarsson, B. (2008) Older women with a serious cardiac event experience support with a Vifladt & Hopen inspired patient group education programme. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 7: 140-146.

CV19: Jones, M. I., Greenfield, S. & Jolly, K. (2009) Patients' experience of home and hospital based cardiac rehabilitation; A focus group study. European Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing 8: 9-17.

CV20: Johnson, M., Goodacre, S., Tod, A. & Read, S. (2008) Patients' opinions of acute chest pain care: a qualitative evaluation. J. of Advanced Nursing 65(1): 120-129.

CV21: Leegaard, Nåden & Fagermoen (20080 Postoperative pain and self-management: women's experiences after cardiac surgery. J. of Advanced Nursing 63950 476-485.

CV22: Lau et al. (2010) Experiences of sudden cardiac arrest survivors regarding prognostication and advance care planning. Resuscitation 81: 982-986.

CV23: Scott & Thompson (2003) Assessing the information needs of post-myocardial infarction patients: a systematic review. Patient Education and Counseling 50: 167-177.

CV24: Riegel, B. & Carlson, B. (2002) Facilitators and barriers to heart failure self-care. Patient Education and Counseling 46: 287-295.

CV25: Kamphuis et al. (2004) ICD: a qualitative study of patient experience the first year after implantation. J of Clinical Nursing 13: 1008-10016.

CV26: Radcliffe, Harding, Rothman & Feder (2009) 'It got the right spot' The patient experience of primary angioplasty: A qualitative study. J of Cardiovascular Nursing 8: 216-222.

CV27: Astin et al. (2008) The information needs of patients treated with primary angioplasty for heart attack: An exploratory study. Patient Education and Counseling 73: 325-332.

CV28: Rogers et al. (2000) Knowledge and communication difficulties for patients with chronic heart failure: qualitative study. BMJ 321: 605-7.

CV29: Ivarsson, Larsson and Sjöberg (2004) Postponed or cancelled heart operations from the patient's perspective. J. of Nursing Management 12: 28-36.

CV30: Emslie, C. (2005) Women, men and coronary heart disease: a review of the qualitative literature. Journal of Advanced Nursing 51(4): 382-395.

CV31: Leegaard, Rustøen and Fagermoen (2010) Interference of Postoperative Pain on Women's Daily Life after Early Discharge from Cardiac Surgery. Pain Management Nursing 11(2): 99-107.

CV32: Crinson et al. (2007) Coronary heart disease and the management of risk: Patient perspectives of outcomes associated with the clinical implementation of the National Service Framework targets. Health, Risk & Society 9(4): 359-373.

CV33: Harding et al. (2008) Meeting the Communication Needs of Chronic Heart Failure Patients. J. of Pain and Symptom Management 36(2): 149-156.

CV34: Dunckley et al. (2008) Coronary artery bypass grafting: Patients' and health professionals' views of recovery after hospital discharge. European J. of Cardiovascular Nursing 7: 36-42.

CV35: Ononeze et al. (2006) Patients and health professionals' perspectives on the sociocultural influences of secondary cardiac behaviour: a qualitative study of the implications in policy and practice. Family Practice 23: 587-596.

CV36: Williams et al. (2007) Getting on with life: Accepting the permanency of an Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillator. International J. of Nursing Practice 13: 166-172.

CV37: Hutton & Perkins (2008) A qualitative study of men's experiences of myocardial infarction. Psychology, Health & Medicine 13(1): 87-97.

CV38: Williams et al. (2004) Reasons for attending and not attending a support group for recipients of implantable cardioverter defibrillators and their carers. International Journal of Nursing Practice 10: 127-133.

CV39: Hird, Upton & Chesson (2004) 'Getting back to normal': patients' expectations of cardiac rehabilitation. Physiotherapy 90: 125-131.

CV40: Swanlund (2010) Successful cardiovascular medication management processes as perceived by community-dwelling adults over age 74. Applied Nursing Research 23: 22-29.

CV41: Tagney, Jenny (2010) A literature review comparing the experiences and emergent needs of adult patients with permanent pacemakers (PPMs) and implantable cardioverter defibrillators (ICDs) J. of Clinical Nursing 19: 2081-1089.

CV42: Jones et al. (2007) 'DNA' may not mean 'did not participate': a qualitative study of reasons for non-adherence at home- and centre-based cardiac rehabilitation. Family Practice 24(4): 343-357.

CV43: Pâquet et al. (2005) Re-engineering cardiac rehabilitation programmes: considering the patient's point of view. Advanced Nursing 51(6): 567-576.

CV44: Leegaard, M. &Fagermoen, M. S. (2008) Women's descriptions of postoperative pain and pain management after discharge for cardiac surgery. Journal of Clinical Nursing 17: 2051-2060.

CV45: Rodriguez et al. (2008) "They diagnosed a bad heart": A qualitative exploration of patients' knowledge about and experiences of heart failure. Heart & Lung 37(4): 257-265.

CV46: Jacobson et al. (2002) A Patient-derived Perspective on Health-related Quality of Life with Peripheral Arterial Disease. J. of Nursing Scholarship 34(1): 55-60.

CV47: Wang, W., Thompson, D. R., Chair, S. Y. & Twinn, S. F. (2007) Chinese couples' experiences during convalescence from a first heart attack: a focus group study. Journal of Advanced Nursing 61(3): 307-315.

CV48: Horne & Payne (2004) Removing the Boundaries: Palliative care for patients with heart failure. Palliative Medicine 18: 291-296.

CV49: Rosenfeld (2005) Understanding treatment-seeking delay in women with acute myocardial infarction: Descriptions of decision-making patterns. American J. Critical Care 14: 285-293.

CV50: Ivarsson, B., Larsson, S., Lührs, Sjöberg, T. (2007) Patients perceptions of information about risks at cardiac surgery. Patient Education and Counseling 67: 32-38.

CV51: Benson, J. & Britten, N. (2006) What effects do patients feel from their antihypertensive tablets and how do they react to them? Qualitative analysis of interviews with patients. Family Practice 23(1): 80-87.

CV52: Cortis, J. D. & Williams, A. (2007) Palliative and supportive needs of older adults with heart failure. International Nursing Review 54: 263-270.

CV53: Murray, S. A., Boyd, K. Kendall, M., Worth, A. Benton, T. F,. & Clausen, H. (2002) Dying of lung cancer or cardiac failure: prospective qualitative interview study of patients and their carers in the community. BMJ 325: 929.

CV54: Ågård, A., Löfmark, R., Edvardsson, N., et al. (2007) Views of patients with heart failure about their role in the decision to start implantable cardioverter-defibrillator treatment: prescription rather than participation. J. Med. Ethics 33: 514-518.

CV55: Höglund, Anna T., Winblad, U., Arnetz, A. & Arnetz, J. (2010) Patient participation during hospitalization for myocardial infarction: perceptions among patients and personnel. Scandinavian Journal of Caring Sciences 24: 482-489.

CV56: Jensen, B. O. & Petersson, K. (2003) The illness experiences of patients after a first time myocardial infarction. Patient Education and Counseling 51: 123-131.

CV57: Nordgren, L., Asp, M. & Fagerberg, I. (2008) Support as experienced by men living with heart failure in middle age: A phenomenological study. International Journal of Nursing Studies 45: 1344-1354.

CV58: Weaver, N. F., Murtagh, M. J. & Thomson, R. G. (2006) How do newly diagnosed hypertensives understand 'risk'? Narratives used in coping with risk. Family Practice 23(6): 637-643.

CV59: Higginbottom, G. (2008) "I didn't tell them. Well they never ask": Lay understandings of hypertension and their impact on chronic disease management: implications for nursing practice in primary care. Journal of Research in Nursing 13(2): 89-99.

CV60: Tolmie, E. P., Lindsay, G. M., Kelly, T., Tolson, D., Baxter, S. & Belcher, P. R. (2009) Are older patients' cardiac rehabilitation needs being met? Journal of Clinical Nursing 18: 1878-1888.

CV61: Page, M., Jackman, K & Snowden, P. (2008) The experiences of patients undergoing percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty: a qualitative exploration. Connect: The World of Critical Care Nursing. 22 Dec. Available online: http://www.thefreelibrary.com/The experiences of patients undergoing percutaneous transluminal...-a0200117643 (26 Jan 2011).

CV62: Shih, S-N., Gau, M-L., Kao Lo, C-H., Shih, F-J. (2005) Health needs instrument for hospitalized single-living Taiwanese elders with heart disease: triangulation research design. Journal of Clinical Nursing 14: 1210-1222.

CV63: Gullick, J & Shimadry, B. (2008) Using patient stories to improve quality of care. Nursing Times 104(10): 33-34. Available online: http://www.nursingtimes.net/using-patient-stories-to-improve-quality-of-care/910137.article (26Jan 2011).

B.7.3 Diabetes Reference List

D1: Lawton J, Peel E, Parry O et al (2005) Lay perceptions of type 2 diabetes in Scotland: bringing health services back in, Social Science and Medicine 60, 1423-1435

D2: Gillibrand W and Flynn M (2001) Forced externalisation of control in people with diabetes: a qualitative exploratory study, Journal of Advanced Nursing 34(4) 501-510

D3: Alazri MH, Neal RD, Heywood P and Leese B (2006) Patients' experiences of continuity in the care of type 2 diabetes: a focus group study in primary care, British Journal of General Practice, July 2006, 488-495

D4: Lawton J, Parry O, Peel E and Douglas M (2005) Diabetes service provision: a qualitative study of newly diagnosed Type 2 diabetes patients' experiences and views, Diabetic Medicine 22, 1246-1251

D5: Gale L, Vedhara K, Searle A et al (2008) Patients' perspectives on foot complications in type 2 diabetes: a qualitative study, British Journal of General Practice August 2008 555-563

D6: Gamsu DS, Sutton MS, Bennett L, Ward JD (2002) The development of a psychoeducational group intervention for overweight women with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a service evaluation, Practical Diabetes International Vol. 19 No. 2 1246-1251

D7: Courtenay M, Stenner K and Carey N (2010) The views of patients with diabetes about nurse prescribing, Diabetic Medicine 27, 1049-1054

D8: Lawton J, Ahmad N, Hanna L et al (2006) Diabetes service provision: a qualitative study of the experiences and views of Pakistani and Indian patients with type 2 diabetes, Diabetic Medicine 23, 1003-1007

D9: Edwards A, Thomas R, Williams R et al (2006) Presenting risk information to people with diabetes: Evaluating effects and preferences for different formats by a web-based randomised controlled trial, Patient Education and Counseling 63, 336-349

D10: Vermeire E, Hearnshaw H, et al (2007) Obstacles to adherence in living with type-2 diabetes: an international qualitative study using meta-ethnography (EUROBSTACLE), Primary Care Diabetes 1 (2007) 25-33

D11: Phillips A (2007) Experiences of patients with type 2 diabetes starting insulin therapy, Nursing Standard Vol. 21 No. 23, 35-41

D12: McDowell JRS, McPhail, K, Halyburton G et al (2009) Perceptions of a service redesign by adults living with type 2 diabetes, Journal of Advanced Nursing 65 (7) 1432-1441

D13: Armstrong N and Powell J (2009) Patient perspectives on health advice hosted on internet discussion boards: a qualitative study, Health Expectations 12 313-320

D14: Brown K, Avis M and Hubbard M (2007) Health Beliefs of African-Caribbean people with type 2 diabetes: a qualitative study, British Journal of General Practice, June 2007 461-469

D15: Collins S and Reynolds F (2008) How do adults with cystic fibrosis cope following a diagnosis of diabetes? Journal of Advanced Nursing 64 (5) 478-487

D16: Eborall H, Davies R, Kinmonth L et al. (2007) Patients' experiences of screening for type 2 diabetes: prospective qualitative study embedded in the addition (Cambridge) randomised controlled trial, BMJ 335 (7618) 486-492

D17: Johnson M, Newton P, Goyder E (2006) Patient and professional perspectives on prescribed therapeutic footwear for people with diabetes: a vignette study, Patient Education and Counseling 64 167-172

D18: Kay C, Davies J, Gamsu D and Jarman M (2009) An exploration of the experiences of young women living with type 1 diabetes, Journal of Health Psychology 14:242-250

D19: King N, Carroll C, Newton P and Dornan T (2002) "You can't cure it so you have to endure it": the experience of adaptation to diabetic renal disease, Qualitative Health Research 12:329-346

D20: Kinmonth AL, Woodcock A, Griffin S et al (1998) Randomised controlled trail of patient centred care of diabetes in general practice: impact on current wellbeing and future disease risk, BMJ 317 31 October 1998, 1204-1208

D21: Lawton J, Fox A, Fox C, Kinmouth AL (2003) Participating in the UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS): a qualitative study of patients' experiences, British Journal of General Practice, May 2003, 394-398

D22: Lawton J, Peel E, Douglas M and Parry O (2004) 'Urine testing is a waste of time': newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes patients' perceptions of self-monitoring, Diabetic Medicine, 21, 1045-1048

D23: Naithani S, Gulliford M, Morgan M, (2006) Patients' perceptions and experiences of 'continuity of care' in diabetes, Health Expectations 9, 118-129

D24: Okleford E, Shaw RL, Willars J and Dixon-Woods M, (2008) Education and self-management for people newly diagnosed with type 2 diabetes: a qualitative study of patients' views, Chronic Illness, 4:237

D25: Lawton J, Ahmad N, Hallowell N, Hanna L, Douglas M (2005) Perceptions and experiences of taking oral hypoglycaemic agents among people of Pakistani and Indian origin: qualitative study, BMJ 330 (7502) 1247-1252

D26: Rhodes P and Nocon A (2003) A problem of communication? Diabetes care among Bangladeshi people in Bradford Health and Social Care in the Community 11 (1) 45-54

D27: Riazi A, Hammersley S, Eiser C et al (2000) Patients' experiences of the diabetes annual review, Practical Diabetes International Vol. 17 No. 7, 226-230

D28: Lindenmeyer A, Whitlock S, Sturt J and Griffiths F (2010) Patient engagement with a diabetes self-management intervention, Chronic Illness, Vol. 6, 4: 306-316

D29: Troughton J, Jarvis J, Skinner C et al (2008) Waiting for diabetes: Perceptions of people with pre-diabetes: a qualitative study, Patient Education and Counseling 72, 88-93

D30: Pooley CG, Gerrard C, Hollis S et al (2001) 'Oh it's a wonderful practice … you can talk to them': a qualitative study of patients' and health professionals' views on the management of type 2 diabetes, Health and Social Care in the Community 9(5) 318-326

D31: Hornsten A, Lundman B, Selstam EK, Sandstrom H (2005) Patient satisfaction with diabetes care, Journal of Advanced Nursing, 51 (6), 609-617

D32: Rayman K and Ellison G (2004) Home alone: the experience of women with type 2 diabetes who are new to intensive control' Health Care for Women International 25, 900-915

D33: Burke J, Earley M, Dixon LD, et al (2006) Patients with diabetes speak: exploring the implications of patients' perspectives for their diabetes appointments, Health Communication 19 (2) 103-114

D34: Smith SM, O'Leary M, Bury G et al (2003) A qualitative investigation of the views and health beliefs of patients with type 2 diabetes following the introduction of a shared care service, Diabetic Medicine, 20, 853-857

D35: Abdulhadi N, Al Shafaee M, Freudenthal S et al (2007) Patient-provider interaction from the perspectives of type 2 diabetes patients in Muscat, Oman: a qualitative study, BMC Health Services Research, 7:162

D36: Berg M and Sparud-Lundin C (2009) Experiences of professional support during pregnancy and childbirth – a qualitative study of women with type 1 diabetes, BMC Pregnancy and Childbirth 9:27

D37: Tang SYS and Anderson JM (1999) Human agency and the process of healing: lessons learned form women living with a chronic illness – 're-writing the expert', Nursing Inquiry 6, 83-93

D38: Ciechanowski P, Katon WJ (2006) The interpersonal experience of health care through the eyes of patients with diabetes, Social Science and Medicine 63, 3067-3079

D39: Wellard SJ, Cox H, Bhujoharry C (2007) Issues in the provision of nursing care to people undergoing cardiac surgery who also have type 2 diabetes, International Journal of Nursing Practice 13: 222-228

D40: Frandsen KB, Kristensen JS (2002) Diet and lifestyle in type 2 diabetes: the patients' perspective, Practical Diabetes International Vol 19 No 3 77-80

D41: Rasmusson B, Wellard S, Nankervis A (2001) Consumer issues in navigating health care services for type 1 diabetes, Journal of Clinical Nursing 10, 628-634

D42: Haugbolle LS, Devantier K, Frydenlund B (2002) A user perspective on type 1 diabetes: sense of illness, search for freedom and the role of the pharmacy, Patient Education and Counseling 47, 361-368

D43: Broom DH (2003) Familiarity breeds neglect? Unanticipated benefits of discontinuous primary care, Family Practice Vol. 20 No. 5 503-507

D44: Svenningsson I, Gedda B, Marklund B (2011) Experiences of the encounter with the diabetes team – a comparison between obese and normal-weight type 2 diabetic patients, Patient Education and Counseling 82, 58-62

D45: Cobden DS, Niessen LW, Barr CE et al (2010) Relationships among self-management, patient perceptions of care, and health economic outcomes for decision-making and clinical practice in type 2 diabetes, Value in Health, Vol. 13 No. 1, 138-147

D46: Matthews SM, Peden AR, Rowles GD (2009) Patient-provider communication: understanding diabetes management among adult females, Patient Education and Counseling 76, 31-37

D47: McMurray M and Davies M (2006) What do men with diabetes and erectile dysfunction think about the services they receive? Practical Diabetes Vol. 23 No. 4 153-156

D48: Stuckey HL and Tisdell EJ (2010) The role of creative expression in diabetes: an exploration into the meaning-making process, Qualitative Health Research 20 (1) 42-56

D49: Gafvels CM and Lithner FG (1996) Insulin-treated diabetic patients: Use of, experience of and attitudes to diabetes care, European Journal of Public Health Vol. 6 No. 4 262-269

D50: Lindmark A, Smide B, Leksell J (2010) Perception of healthy lifestyle information in women with gestational diabetes, European Diabetes Nursing Vol. 7 No. 1, 16-20

D51: Griffiths F, Lowe P, Boardman F et al (2008) Becoming pregnant: exploring the perspectives of women living with diabetes, British Journal of General Practice, 58, 184-190

D52: Richards C, Morris M, Booker S and Johnson A (2006) What do people with type 1 diabetes find helpful in health professionals? Results from a focus group study, Practical Diabetes International Vol. 23 No. 6, 249-252

D53: Vermeire E, Van Royen P, Coenen S et al (2003) The adherence of type 2 diabetes patients to their therapeutic regimes: a qualitative study from the patient's perspective, Practical Diabetes International, Vol. 20 No. 6, 209-214

B.8 Cancer patient experiences generic and sub-themes evidence table

Generic Theme	Sub-Theme (all themes that related to the generic theme)	Description	References
Communication	Patient Centred Communication	Importance of using language that patients understand and can relate to, avoidance of complex terminology.	C1, C10, C16, C17, C19, C24, C25, C26, C28, C34, C39, C49, C52
	Individualised Approach	Patients varied as to what they wanted from communication with health care professionals. Some were better prepared for diagnosis than others, some wanted people with them, others wanted to be alone during consultations. Health care professionals need insight into the individual's needs and concerns.	C1, C16, C20, C24, C25, C26, C29, C30, C33, C34, C36, C37, C38, C39,C40, C42, C43, C45, C47, C49, C50, C52, C54
	Context	Patients wanted good quality consultations: enough time to ask questions, and the environment of the consultation to be appropriate and private. Most patients wanted no other health care professional present at the diagnostic consultation.	C3, C4, C6, C16, C17, C20, C26, C28, C31, C33, C34, C39, C40, C42, C43, C45, C52, C53
	Responsibility/Control	Some patients wanted to take responsibility/control over communication with their doctors by asking the specific questions they wanted answered and by being allowed to contact them directly when they had specific queries.	C3, C12, C13, C14, C36
	Character of Health Care Professional	Patients valued certain 'types' of health care professional: those who expressed empathy and interest in patients. They needed to relate to the health care professional as a concerned individual, not detached professional in order to communicate effectively.	C1, C2, C24, C28, C33, C34, C38, C39, C41, C45
	Reassurance/Hope	Patients needed to feel that their doctors were allowing them to hope, even in cases of delivering bad news. Patients also wanted lots of reassurance in their contact with health care professionals throughout their treatment and during follow up care.	C13, C16, C24, C25, C26, C28, C39, C40, C42, C49
	Psychosocial Needs	Patients had needs that were often not met during	C4, C10, C32, C42, C46, C47, C48, C50, C52

		consultations with their doctors; e.g. around sexuality, identity, relationships, existential concerns, emotional support. These needs change and evolve over time.	
	Humour	Some patients used humour within their consultations with their doctors to diffuse emotionally charged conversations and establish a relationship/rapport with the health care professional.	C41, C42
	Support of Family/Friends	All studies reported that patients preferred friends/family members present at consultations (particularly diagnosis) to give a different perspective, remember information and offer emotional support. However studies C28 and C43 found that patients preferred to be on their own during consultations.	C1, C16, C25, C28, C33, C34, C41, C43, C47
Information	Individualised Approach	Patients appreciated an individualised approach to information giving. Patients differed in how much information they wanted about their condition, the point at which they wanted it and how prepared they were for the information. Some were ambivalent.	C1, C9, C13,C16, C20, C24, C25, C26, C29, C30,C31, C33, C34, C36, C37, C38, C39, C40, C42, C43, C47, C48, C49, C50, C52, C53, C54
	Honesty/Realism	Patients valued a balance being struck between allowing patients hope, but also being honest, direct and realistic about their condition.	C13, C20, C26, C38
	Reassurance/Hope	Patients appreciated honesty in the information they were provided, but nevertheless wanted health care professionals to appreciate their need for hope and reassurance with this information.	C3, C4, C6, C7, C8, C10, C11, C12,C13, C15, C16, C18, C24, C25, C26, C28, C31, C32, C39, C40, C41 C42, C49, C55
	Format and Quality	Most patients preferred to receive information about their diagnosis in person rather than over the phone. Many valued being given written information.	C3, C5, C10, C15, C17, C22, C26, C28, C35, C37, C39, C53
	Responsibility/Control	Many patients wanted to take control over how much information they had about their condition through asking questions and seeking information from alternative sources (internet, books, support groups, patients).	C13, C14, C16, C17, C25, C28, C36, C37, C40, C41, C55
	Information: Diagnosis	Patients valued most information at the time of diagnosis.	C19, C20, C23, C33, C34, C43,C44, C52
	Information: Treatment	Patients often felt that they were not given enough	C1, C17, C20, C23, C25, C31, C33, C34, C37, C42. C52,

		information about treatment and side effects, often they felt under-prepared for the consequences of their treatment (particularly in the long term). They also valued being informed of the consequences of delaying or avoiding treatment. (C52- satisfaction with treatment information was highest). Some patients had unrealistic views of the outcomes of treatment (e.g. C54) and thus may have avoided information on treatment that could have threatened this belief.	C53, C54
	Information: Prognosis	Prognostic information was considered to be of lesser importance than diagnostic and treatment information, but patients nevertheless valued honesty in the delivery of this information, as well as an individualised approach.	C1, C12, C13, C19, C26, C33, C34, C42, C52, C54
Decision Making	Individualised Approach	Patients wanted their doctors to take an individualised approach to how much they were involved with decision making. Some wanted a lot of involvement, others wanted a more passive role.	C24, C36, C42, C54, C55
	Support of Friends/Family	Some patients involved their family/friends in their decision making.	C41
	Responsibility/Control	Some patients wanted to take on responsibility/control over decision making in their care.	C5,C14, C16, C17, C20, C23, C24, C25, C26, C36, C41, C42, C50, C54, C55
	Trust in Expertise	In order to trust health care professionals, patients needed to have faith in their expertise and competence. This expertise was often valued over patients' desire to be involved in their decision making, "doctor knows best".	C2, C8, C9, C10, C13, C16, C17, C18, C20, C25, C32, C36, C38, C41, C42, C47, C55
	Relationship with Health Care Professional	Patients needed an honest, trusting and open relationship with their health care professional to be involved in decision making.	C2, C6, C8, C15, C16, C19, C20, C31, C32, C33, C38, C41, C42
	Medical Uncertainty	Some patients acknowledged medical uncertainty to be an important aspect of their decision making. Medical knowledge was not infallible.	C5, C26, C29, C31, C40, C41, C55
Continuity of Care	Co-ordination	Patients often found themselves co-ordinating their own care. They appreciated well co-ordinated services and the avoidance of long delays between appointments.	C1, C15, C30, C32, C33, C34, C35, C38, C39, C43

	Availability/Accessibility	Patients valued the availability and accessibility of services, e.g. having access to a health care professional at the end of a phone when needed, even if this was never used.	C3, C15, C16, C17, C18, C19, C20, C37
	Integration	Patients valued services that were 'joined up' with appropriate communication between primary and secondary care.	C10, C12, C19, C25, C32, C53
	Abandonment	Some patients felt that once their treatment had been completed that they were 'abandoned' as their support stopped abruptly, despite their continued needs.	C8, C32, C41, C52
	Relationships with Health Care Professional	Patients valued seeing the same health care professional regularly, rather than seeing multiple members of the team. This enabled them to build up a good relationship with the health care professional.	C2, C6, C8, C15, C16, C19, C20, C31, C32, C33, C38, C41, C42
	Responsiveness to Needs	Patients appreciated services that were responsive to, and anticipated their needs.	C31, C30, C38
Support	Facilitating Coping Strategies	It was considered important that health care professionals recognise and facilitate the coping strategies of patients, whatever these may be.	C5, C17, C21, C29, C42
	Identity	Patients valued support around identity, and in particular, their gender identities.	C29, C36, C37, C41
	Advocacy	Cancer had an effect on every aspect of patients' lives and their appreciated health care professionals who could advocate for them.	C15, C20
	Relationship with Health Care Professional/Character of Health Care Professional	A good relationship with a health care professional who is empathetic, honest and reliable were central to patients feeling supported.	C1, C2, C6, C8, C15, C16, C19, C20,C24, C28, C31, C32, C33, C38, C39, C41, C42, C52
	Support of Family/Friends	Patients recognised the importance of having strong support networks of family and friends. Some did not want to 'burden' those around them, however and some suggested that family and friends may need support themselves.	C5, C8, C10, C16, C17, C21, C24, C25, C29, C41
	Individualised Approach	Patients appreciated support that was tailored to their particular circumstances and needs—patients from particular	C1, C3, C13, C14, C16, C17, C18, C19, C25, C26, C29, C30, C31, C33, C34, C36, C37, C38, C39, C40, C41, C42,

		social and ethnic backgrounds may have more need for support.	C43, C52
	Peer Support/Expert Patients	Some patients valued speaking to other patients with similar experiences.	C21, C24, C25, C35, C38
	Preparation for Diagnosis/Treatment	Patients often felt that there was a lack of support in preparing them for a diagnosis of Cancer and the associated treatment.	C34, C37, C43, C53
	Stigma/Taboos/Culture	The way in which Cancer is constructed in wider society, and its association with death, affected the way in which participants responded to their diagnosis and their shared understanding with their doctor.	C19, C32
	Reassurance/Hope	Offering reassurance and hope throughout a patient's treatment was an essential part of supporting them.	C3, C4, C6, C7, C8, C10, C11, C12, C13, C15, C16, C18, C24, C25, C26, C28, C31. C32, C39, C40, C41, C42, C49
	Responsiveness to Needs	Patients valued health care professionals who anticipated their support needs and gave appropriate support as their needs changed over time.	C31, C30, C38

B.9 Cardiovascular patient experiences generic and sub-themes evidence table

Generic theme	Sub-theme (All sub-themes that relate to generic theme)	Description	References
Accessing Services	Efficient, reliable access	Patients experienced efficient response of staff to their needs and felt well cared for	CV1 CV19 CV43 CV61 CV63
	Waiting	Long waiting lists for referral	CV1 CV3
	Absence of services	Several studies reported an absence of appropriate services especially after discharge from hospital. Feelings of fear, abandonment, vulnerability can result from a lack of services (CV53). Lack of accessibility of care, having to initiate contact, leads to feelings of mistrust, uncertainty and insecurity (CV57)	CV3 CV53 CV57 CV61
	Skills needed to access services	Skills, knowledge, assertiveness on part of patient needed to access services when communication failed. Also see Interpreting symptoms.	CV3
	Barriers to accessing services	Practical issues: Patients frequently report a range of practical barriers to accessing services including: Day-to-day life (childcare, employment, household responsibilities); Difficulties walking, problems with transport, not being able to get out the house, long distances to services; inconvenient appointment times, waiting lists.	CV3 CV12 CV14 CV28 CV30 CV39 CV42 CV48 CV56

		Individual factors: Other barriers to access include: disliking the break in routine necessary to access services (older patients) (CV3); not understanding the purpose of a service or its relevance (CV3); personal factors (e.g. fear and denial) (CV30) and cultural factors (e.g. strength and stoicism in the South Yorkshire mining community); past experiences of health care (CV30).	CV3 CV30
		Service provision: not receiving sufficient information about services on offer was a barrier to access (CV56); Perception that CR sessions were overcrowded discouraged participation (CV56); not knowing how to access support services (CV46); Perception that the group members are 'all old people' discouraged participation (CV12).	CV12 CV30 CV46 CV56
	Interpreting symptoms and deciding to seek help (emergencies)	The decision-making process by which people with MI seek help is a major concern in the literature. A wide-range of factors influence the decision to seek help and the timing of this: Gender: Women delay longer than men in seeking help (CV30, CV49) Perception of risk: belief that lifestyle changes and/or previous treatment protected them (CV30); CHD seen as a 'man's disease' and so women find it harder to interpret signs appropriately (CV15, CV30); assuming you will recover because of prior experience (CV14); not wanting to bother the health service unnecessarily (CV30, CV14, CV49, CV16) Social class: Patients from deprived backgrounds were more negative about their health and often did not seek medical help because they normalised their symptoms, attributed them to co-morbidities or did not want to overuse medical services (CV30) Severity of symptoms: (CV15); sudden onset often meant patients sought help quickly (CV15). Intermittent symptoms were particular difficult to interpret (CV30). Patients tend to minimise symptoms (denial) and this can delay treatment seeking (CV14) Recognition of symptom as heart related: (CV15, CV30, CV49, CV14) Involvement of family/friends: decision to call for help often made by someone other than the patientd (CV30, CV14, CV56) Patients adopted a 'wait and see' approach at onset of symptoms. Patients tried to manage the symptoms with actions such as lying or sitting down, walking back and forth, keeping	CV14 CV15 CV16 CV30 CV49 CV56

[d] Gender differences: Men more likely to seek help from spouse and men's partners more likely to encourage them to seek medical care. Women did not want to worry their husbands and did not seek their advice. Often persuaded to seek help by daughter. When women do seek help from family members this can result in delay as relatives minimise symptoms and reassure patients.

		hand on chest, taking a bath or drinking water. Only when these measures did not work did they seek help (CV56, CV49)	
	Interpreting symptoms and deciding to seek help (non-emergency)	Patients report difficulties interpreting symptoms and so seeking appropriate help. Symptoms were associated with other conditions or older age (CV52, CV24). Symptoms were not always recognised as serious or treatable (CV46). Patients did not want to bother GPs who were perceived to be busy with more important cases (CV52).	CV24 CV46 CV52
Communication	Openness	Belief that doctors would not want to reveal likelihood of patient dying	CV28
	Communication style	Patients value calmness, reassurance, humour and empathy from staff. When carers indicate they are short of time, busy or have to much to do, patients perceive themselves as burdens, being reduced, objectified (CV57)	CV20 CV57
	Consistent information	Patients receive inconsistent information. See also Information.	CV3 CV24 CV63
	Barriers to communication	Patients experience a range of barriers to communication: Lack of interpreters; lack of communication aids; group communications are problematic for patients whose first language is not spoken English (CV3); confusion/short term memory problems associated with the condition; believing doctor knows best inhibits questioning (CV28)	CV3 CV28
	Importance/consequences of poor communication	Poor communication can mean: patients are less involved in decision-making (CV3); patients feel ignored or not taken seriously and they lose faith in the carers (CV57); Patients sometimes feel forced to do as the carers tell them without understanding why (CV57); patients experience fear, frustration, uncertainty or humiliation (CV57); Patients are left wondering what to do next when they do not hear from the hospital after discharge (CV3). Lack of communication leaves patients feeling abandoned (CV63).	CV3 CV57 CV63
	Characteristics of patient communication	Patients tend to minimise the severity of symptoms (CV3) and many did not mention unwelcome side effects to doctors (CV51).	CV3 CV51
	Wanting more opportunities for communication with health care professionals	Patients would have liked to have spoken to the surgeon who performed the operation (CV50); Wish for more follow-up phone calls after discharge(CV25); Patients would like more time with the doctor; Nobody asked if they needed support (CV29); Doctor-patient communication is mainly one-way (CV54). Doctors doing rounds get distracted by questions from interns (CV63).	CV25 CV29 CV50 CV54 CV63
	Staff communication skills	Good communication skills from health care professionals are valued, including: taking an	CV24

		interest, caring about the person, being pleasant, kind, helpful, professional, being easy to talk to. Fear/anxiety may increase if carers express confusing meanings with their body language (CV57).	CV29 CV53 CV57
	Content of communication with health care professionals	Communication did not always address issues of concern to patient (CV11); communication with carers is often factual and missed the existential, what it is like to live with a condition (CV57)	CV11 CV57
	Communication aids	Showing patients before and after angiogram was a powerful communication aid to give reassurance and motivate behaviour change	CV27
	Reassurance	Patients need reassurance from communicating with health care professionals about issues that are important to them.	CV11 CV20 CV52
Continuity	Lack of continuity	Patients experienced lack of continuity and coordination of care; they felt that care had been provided by too many different staff. Some patients were concerned that discharge was too quick.	CV37 CV43 CV53 CV63
	Experiences of continuity	Some patients had developed a long term relationship with a key professional. Proactive support from staff made patients feel looked after. Patients valued being able to call the hospital at any time for advice, reassurance and support. Being monitored is reassuring (CV52)	CV34 CV52 CV53
	Poor communication between health care professionals and poorly coordinated care	Lack of communication between health care staff was a problem for patients. When transferred between units, patients felt 'lost in the system' (CV3)	CV3 CV11 CV20 CV43 CV53 CV63
	Feeling secure	Feeling secure is dependent on being well supported and trusting professionals to alleviate suffering. Having a lot of people around and the use of monitoring create a sense of security as do medications. Infrequent contact with staff/services can make patients feel insecure. Patients need structure and information about their planned care in order to feel secure (CV57).	CV13 CV17 CV50 CV57
Information	Satisfaction – feeling informed	Studies reported that a proportion of patients were satisfied with the information they received and felt well informed. Many patients were not satisfied with information they	CV1

		received and did not feel well informed about their condition, treatment or prognosis. Some patients felt they had been told what they needed to know despite apparently limited recall of information (CV54).	CV24 CV50 CV54 CV61
	Importance of information/consequences	Information is important to patients for a sense of control, security and reassurance. Lack of information can cause fear and uncertainty. Some patients were following spurious advice (CV61) Information can help patients take precautions (e.g. make a will, review insurance documents), give patients the knowledge to make decisions, and ensure they do not expose themselves to danger (e.g. overstrain, drinking too much or too little liquid)	CV1 CV16 CV21 CV29 CV41 CV50 CV57 CV61
	Wanting more information	Patients wanted more information. Patients wanted more information about: medications (CV57), including purpose, times, complications, side effects, possible complications (CV50), services (CV39), permissible activities and everyday activities (CV12), resuming sexual activity (CV47), types of help and support available; convalescence and recovery, diet and exercise (CV18, CV27, CV62, CV56), tests and results (CV20), anatomy and heart disease (CV19, CV62, CV27, CV47), routines in hospital (CV62), procedures and treatments (CV62), prognosis (CV45 CV23), what to expect after surgery (CV50 CV23), psychological adjustment (CV62 CV23) Patients needed to know how to undertake self-care tasks: how to take own blood pressure and pulse; how to manage an acute heart attack; activities to be learned after discharge; what conditions s/he should see a physician about after discharge; managing risk.	CV1 CV2 CV11 CV18 CV19 CV20 CV23 CV27 CV28 CV39 CV42 CV45 CV47 CV50 CV52 CV56 CV57 CV62
	Wanting individualised	Patients wanted information tailored to them that was appropriate to their identity and	CV21

	information	related risks to their own case.	CV47 CV50 CV57
	Format of information	Patient preference for format varied (verbal, face-to-face, written, electronic). Information should be easily understood including by those with cognitive impairments (CV2, CV43), consistent, honest and non-judgemental (CV27). Information should be clear, objective and reasoned (CV29). Patients often had difficulties understanding information given (CV18, CV24). Written information could cause anxiety. Many patients wanted to discuss the written information they received with health care professionals (CV50).	CV2 CV18 CV24 CV27 CV29 CV43 CV50 CV57
	Delivery of information	The way in which information is delivered is significant, including: Tone of voice, choice of words, calmness (CV17); Choice of informant (CV27). Patients wanted reinforcement of information give (CV23)	CV17 CV23 CV27 CV57
	Timing of information	The timing of information is significant: Patients need time to ask questions or to comprehend the information given (CV57); Patients felt they were informed about the postponement of their surgery too close to the scheduled operation (CV29). Patients valued being told what was happening in the acute phase (despite not wanting to participate in decision-making at this time (CV55)	CV23 CV27 CV29 CV50 CV57
	Not wanting to know	Ambivalence towards knowing more about condition and prognosis. Denial, not wanting to know	CV28 CV36 CV48 CV50
	Recall of information	Patients have difficulty retaining information given, especially when acutely admitted.	CV18 CV27
	Sources of information	Physician was the main source of informational support for patients. But patients look for information themselves by reading books/on internet or visiting people who have already undergone the surgery	CV24 CV50
	Involvement of family and friends	Families need information and patients sometimes struggle to explain things to them	CV57

	Changing information	Patients expressed exasperation when recommendations and advice changed. Repeated changes reduced confidence in advice	CV32
	Inconsistent information	Patients receive inconsistent information. Also see communication.	CV32 CV63
	Sharing information	Sharing information between patient and care provider was highly valued and desired	CV55
Knowledge, understanding and making sense	Poor understanding of condition, treatment, complications and/or prognosis.	Many patients had a poor understanding of their condition, treatment, prognosis. Misconceptions were common. Patients used vague terms to describe their condition (CV45)	CV24 CV32 CV35 CV39 CV45 CV46 CV47 CV53 CV54 CV61 CV68
	Good levels of knowledge and understanding	Knowledge of mechanisms associated with heart failure was generally good	CV28
	Education	Patients value educational resources and opportunities	CV19 CV24 CV52
	Being left to figure it out yourself	Difficulty understanding advice: Feeling you are left to 'figure it out' yourself.	CV24
	Importance of knowledge and understanding	Misconceptions partly account for adjustment difficulties; Lack of knowledge made it difficult for patients to self-monitor; Lack of understanding generated concern about side-effects. Patients value improved understanding. It is important to patients to find a rational explanation for symptoms and link them with life events (CV14)	CV14 CV24 CV41 CV42 CV47
	Translating knowledge into action	Many patients who had some knowledge were not able to effectively translate this knowledge into meaningful action to change behaviour, reduce risk, improve symptoms	CV46
	Patients' ways of making sense of their condition and its causes	Patients have ideas about the cause of heart disease drawn from lay knowledge and cultural context. There can be tensions between individual experiences and medical	CV4

	often vary from biomedical explanations.	explanations. Patients draw inferences about their condition from their treatment, unintended by health care professionals (CV26)	CV30 CV32 CV35 CV37 CV59
Lived Experience	Patients experience a range of negative emotions related to their condition, symptoms, treatment and prognosis.	Anxiety. For some patients anxiety delayed treatment-seeking, for others it acted as the trigger (CV14). It could be exacerbated when waiting for treatment (CV29)	CV14 CV29 CV41 CV47 CV52
		Loss of confidence	CV12 CV19 CV34 CV37 CV47 CV48
		Fear	CV47 CV52 CV56
		Hopelessness	CV56 CV57
		Anger and Frustration	Cv37 Cv48 CV52 CV57
		Uncertainty, hyper-vigilance. See also Uncertainty.	CV37 CV57
		Low mood, worry and depression. Could be exacerbated when waiting for treatment (CV29)	CV12 CV18 CV29

			CV36 CV41 CV47 CV48 CV52
		Helplessness, weakness, shame, self-reproach, feeling defeated. Feeling a failure.	CV18 CV30 CV56
		Loneliness. See also Support.	CV18 CV30
		Fear caused sleeplessness and anxiety. See also Physical needs/comfort	CV48
	Isolation and loneliness	Patients felt lonely and abandoned by friends and health care staff. They had a diminishing social network and desired more social contact.	CV13 CV52 CV53
		This problem was exacerbated by restrictions to patients' movements due to ill health, side-effects of medication (e.g. diuretic), being unable to drive and tiredness. Patients restricted visits from others to avoid becoming exhausted (CV31)	CV13, CV31, CV53
		Even with company, patients could feel psychologically isolated. One research team call it 'the paradox of living alone with supportive relations'	CV16
	Sense of self (disrupted)	Patients' sense of self is disrupted by a range of changes in cognitive and physical being: e.g. experience of cognitive reactions to surgery (e.g. hallucinations); bodily changes, unfamiliar sensations, unfamiliar emotions. There was a discrepancy between what they wanted to do and what they could do (CV46) Patients must find new ways to relate to themselves. Patients wanted to 'get back to normal' (CV12, CV43) Patients feel 'old' or 'useless' (CV57) Participants felt their physical limitations made them abnormal, conspicuous and different from others around them. They learned to hide their limitations from others (CV46). Men worried that being absent from work would mean people would see them as 'physically weak, impotent or incapable'(CV30) Participants felt that although they were still alive they were no longer the person they used to be.	CV16 CV30 CV37 CV46 CV57
	Loss	Patients want to remain as independent as possible but must come to terms with reduced	CV7

		independence and autonomy. They may find they are not able to fulfil usual social roles or to do things that they have been doing all their lives. Usual activities are limited or abandoned. Sexual activity is affected. Loss of pleasure in food. Patients perceived loss of control and physical abilities.	CV16 CV47 CV52 CV 53 CV57
	Feeling fearful	Patients report feeling fearful. They fear dependency, loss of control and an unknown future. Some patients fear death. Fears may be particularly acute when patients lack understanding of their condition or treatment (CV46). Patients felt fear about their care and treatment, including fear of possible errors by health care professionals (CV16), fear of the consequences of waiting for surgery(CV29) and fear of the first shock from an ICD (CV25). Patients were afraid of being alone in the early days of recovery and avoided being too far from home or activities that might induce another MI. Fear of imminent danger. Fear of death, pain, having another heart attack, going out alone, re-admission to hospital, further medical procedures.	CV4 CV16 CV25 CV27 CV29 CV36 CV46 CV48 CV56 CV57
	Confronting mortality	Patients became aware that their life was limited. For some, this meant: reassessing values (CV25) living life to the full and not taking their remaining time for granted (CV16, CV25, CV13, CV37, CV43) even taking risks (CV36); some focused less on the future, assuming they would not live long enough to follow through plans (CV25); some questioned after-life issues (CV13). Physiological measurements remind patients of their deteriorating health (CV13). Some patients were positive about available treatments and looked to the future (CV35)	CV13 CV16 CV25 CV35 CV36 CV37 CV43 CV56
	Illness trajectory.	Patients experience episodes of acute deterioration, punctuating a progressive decline with an unpredictable terminal phase.	CV53
	Cognitive changes	Finding it hard to accept deterioration of cognitive abilities. Feeling more emotional. Concentration problems, increased irritability, loss of short term memory, impaired ability to retain information.	CV22 CV25 CV34 CV41 CV56
	Patient Outlook	Positivity (CV34, CV36), acceptance (CV36), Stoicism (CV52), resignation (CV43). Attitude	CV30

		shaped by social class and approach to health (CV30). Patients employed individual resources such as will, determination, faith, and humour to cope with the threat of MI.	CV34 CV36 CV37 CV43 CV52 CV56
	Relationships with technology and medications	Patients took time to adjust to reliance on technologies such as pace-makers and implantable cardioverter defibrillator. Reliance on ICD seen as failure of body (CV21). Needing less technology is perceived as an indication of progress (CV16)Patients had concerns about technical failure (CV41). Medications are a reminder of the seriousness of their condition even when this is not felt in the body (CV57). Patient weary of changing drug regimes and express pessimism about likelihood of staying on the medication for the rest of their lives (CV32).	CV16 CV21 CV32 CV41 CV57
	Quality of life	Many patients left wondering about their quality of life. 'It's a life but it's not much of a life'.	CV53
Making lifestyle changes	Making changes to diet, exercise, habits and routines.	Patients perceive they must live their life by new rules and boundaries to reduce risk (CV27)	CV27 CV36 CV37 CV42 CV47
	Scepticism about benefits of lifestyle change	Surgical, radiological and pharmacological interventions were perceived as more effective than lifestyle change (CV35, CV60). Patients combined medical points of view with their own common sense opinions about inappropriate habits. Sometimes the two perspectives were in conflict (CV26, CV56. CV35, CV60). Positive changes to lifestyle were not always assessed positively as participants attributed their MI to psychosocial strains or genetic factors and so believed lifestyles changes to be less important (CV56).	CV26 CV35 CV56 CV60
		Patients were reluctant to modify their lifestyle. Reasons include: They felt they had already made changes They felt they had good habits that did not need to be modified. They were not convinced that their habits were risk factors Their physical condition made it difficult to make changes e.g. take more exercise They felt the pressure to modify habits was coming from outside but was not a personal	CV43

		objective.	
	Barriers to positive lifestyle change.	Family responsibilities, caring for others, work commitments made it difficult to find time and make changes to routines. Lifestyle changes require sometimes difficult communications at home about changing habits (e.g. diet (CV43). There may be gender differences in barriers: Women tend to put family responsibilities before lifestyle change e.g. reluctant to change diet of partner/children. Whereas men see lifestyle changes as a joint venture (CV30). Co-morbidities interfered with ability to adhere to exercise programme (CV42, CV43). Other factors: lack of motivation (CV42), not being able to find foods they could eat and enjoy (CV24). Patients were confused about the right things to do (CV61)	CV19 CV30 CV42 CV43 CV61
	Support for lifestyle change	Many patients reported lack of support from primary care with risk management (e.g. smoking cessation) (CV46). Families were important sources of support, often making lifestyles changes alongside the patient (CV19, CV42). Uncertainties about safe activity levels lead some patients to want to exercise under supervision of health care professionals (CV12, CV19, CV27, CV34). Professional supervision also supported motivation (CV12). Regular rehabilitation classes motivated patients to exercise and the group setting was valued by many patients (CV34, CV39, CV19)	CV12 CV19 CV27 CV34 CV39 CV42 CV46
	Motivation for positive lifestyle change	Patients were aware of recommended changes to their lifestyle even if they lacked the motivation to implement them (CV42) Many patients understood the importance of lifestyle change and expressed desire to get fitter, ‘sort my life out’ or to follow instructions for the sake of their health. Wanting to get fitter. Wanting to stay out of hospital (CV24)	CV12 CV19 CV24 CV31 CV39 CV42 CV56
	Adopting new routines adapted to condition or treatment.	Participants demonstrated varying abilities to adapt their lifestyles to the disease and continue with their lives (CV46) Patients adapted their day to day activities to accommodate and manage symptoms, physical limitations, treatment and side- effects. Adopting a new routine to manage symptoms. See also Loss. Participants adopted a range of strategies to help successfully manage their medication: Simplification, Visual and tactile cues, establishing a routine, acquiring knowledge about medications, staying alert, determination (wanting to ‘do it right’),having a care-giver set up the medications (CV40).	CV13 CV19 CV24 CV27 CV40 CV43 CV46 CV52

			CV57
	Adapting lifestyle advice to suit the individual	Many patients chose not to cut out certain activities, as advised by their doctor, but instead cut down	CV45
Participation	Not feeling involved in care	Not feeling involved in medical decision-making. Hospitals failed to recognise involvement and expertise of carers (CV53)	CV1 CV29 CV53
	Timing	Timing – in emergencies, or acute phase patients don't want to be involved in decision-making.	CV1 CV55
	Trusting the experts	Many patients believe that the doctors know best and accept treatment passively, or do not question care. Older patients in particular are likely to defer to medical experts (CV1).	CV1 CV26 CV54
	Feeling 'underqualified'	Patients did not feel they had sufficient knowledge to participate in decision-making. Whereas some patients felt they were the best placed to evaluate their own needs (CV43)	CV54 CV55
	Expectations	Some patients did not necessarily expect to be part of medical decision-making. Patients recognised that lack of time and resources limited opportunities for patient involvement. Some patients lacked the knowledge that they could participate/be involved in medical decisions .	CV55
		Some patients did expect to participate in decision-making about: Medical treatment protocols such as diet, medication, rehab, choice of primary care doctor, time of discharge etc.	CV62
	Self-care	Patients reported using a number of methods of self-care such as watching their diet, exercise, stress levels, managing medication regimens. See also Making Lifestyle Changes and Lived Experience.	CV4 CV24 CV53
	Control	Patients perceived a lack of control in acute stage (CV14). Patient varied in extent to which they felt they had control over their disease and outcome (CV46). Perceived control was associated with expressions of confidence in ability to manage the condition. Lack of control was accompanied by not knowing what the future held – uncertainty (CV46). Patients felt 'wrapped in cotton wool', and constantly controlled causing conflict, anger and irritation (CV56) Relief of relinquishing control – A&E (acute) (CV15)	CV14 CV15 CV46 CV56
	Patient preferences	Some patients appreciate services delivered in peer groups but some did not. Some patients seek alternatives to NHS care that fit better with their lives (incl. leisure clubs,	CV3 CV12

		private health care)	CV39
	Being treated as an individual	Patients valued being treated as individuals including participating in decision-making and receiving support for everyday activities.	CV13 CV17
Participation – compliance with advice	Variable compliance with medications, often deliberate.	Patients make deliberate omissions and changes to doses of medication often to manage side-effects (e.g. missing a dose of a diuretic when they want to go out). Some patients stopped taking their medication altogether because of unwelcome side effects. Some patients added to their regimen or substituted with herbal remedies (CV59)	CV24 CV48 CV51 CV57 CV59
	Resistance to use of pain relief.	Patients made individual adjustments to use of pain relief rather than taking analgesics as advised. They perceive painkillers as 'necessary evil' and prefer to experience pain than take 'too much' medication. Patients reduce activity rather than increasing pain medication. Some waited until the pain was 'unbearable' before taking medication	CV21 CV44
	Following instructions	Patients expressed strong wish to follow instructions given. They took their medication as directed or attended rehab because it is the 'sensible thing to do'. Sticking to recommendations gave patients a feeling that their condition was under control (CV35). Some heeded the advice about medication because they felt it was the only thing that could be done for their condition (CV45). Some needed elaborate memory aids were used to remember to take medication (CV24).	CV21 CV24 CV26 CV35 CV45 CV60
	Reasons for non-compliance	Feeling you are 'back to normal'; not seeing an improvement; symptoms subside; wanting to minimise time at hospital; perceived discouragement from family or health care professionals	CV45 CV60 CV61
	Measure of compliance	Patients see the achievement of a cholesterol level of under 5.0mmol/l as primary measure of adherence to clinical management regime.	CV32
	Barriers to compliance	Patients experienced a number of barriers to maintaining medication regime: Health related: Decreased mental or sensory alertness; Being out of routine; Falls/being unwell – leading to forgetting; Decreased gross or fine motor skills – not being able to get up to get the tablets, not being able to cut the tablets in half; Not being able to walk/breathe well; Physically restrictive or socially embarrassing problems such as arthritis or incontinence were disincentives to attending rehab classes (CV60) Practical problems: Obtaining or administering the medications is too complicated – ordering by mail, transport difficulties; Lack of money; Unavailability of recommended	CV24 CV40 CV45 CV60 CV61

		foods Memory: Some needed elaborate memory aids were used to remember to take medication (CV24) Hopelessness: feeling that nothing will help (CV60)	
Physical needs and comfort (e)	Pain	Experiences of pain are widely described in the literature. Pain management is important and not always adequate (CV2, CV17, CV61). Pain interacts with other physical needs: Pain reduces sleep quality and reduced sleep makes pain worse (CV31). See also participation-compliance.	CV17 CV21 CV31 CV60
	Sleep	Patients report problems sleeping, often related to pain and/or anxiety. Sleep disturbed by clinical care given at night (CV63)	CV2 CV21 CV31 CV36 CV63
	Eating	Forcing oneself to eat – sometimes food provided is unpleasant (CV13, CV63). Food and eating have positive and negative psychosocial meanings for patients with heart failure (CV7). Patients experience invincible thirst.	CV7 CV13 CV63
	Physical limitations	Patients report experiencing limitations on their ability to perform everyday tasks and to participate in desired activities. Limits on ability to perform household tasks. Patients have to learn where their physical limits are and accept them (CV24, CV25, CV43). Confrontation with physical limitations, feeling the body 'let them down' (CV25) and feeling inadequate and isolated (CV46). Patients keenly experienced loss of everyday activities like going for a walk or doing the gardening. (CV48). See also Lived Experience.	CV13 CV21 CV24 CV25 CV43 CV46 CV48
	Fatigue	Patients experience increased fatigue and associated limitations on abilities and activities. This has knock on effects for the rest of the family as family members have to take on more responsibility or increase work hours. Tiredness gives a sense that the body is in charge. Periods of inactivity feel unfamiliar.	CV13 CV18 CV21 CV31 CV36 CV47 CV56

[e] Also see LIVED EXPERIENCE

			CV57 CV60
	Side effects of treatment	Patients experience welcome and unwelcome side-effects from medication. Patients balanced side-effects against perceived benefits of medication and found ways to manage side-effects with over the counter medications (CV51).	CV45 CV51
		Wearing a bra is uncomfortable due to post-operative wounds. Wearing elastic stocking uncomfortable, exertion to get it on and off.	CV21 CV31
Standards of care	Competency, efficiency, professionalism	Patients value technical skills and competency most highly in acute phase. They felt 'in good hands' Efficiency: Staff ready and waiting to assist. 'everything happened very quickly'; 'a lot of activity' Professionalism: patients felt nurses were skilful and knew exactly what to do and when to do it Frustration waiting for discharge once given the 'all clear' (CV20). Some patients experienced unprofessional conduct by staff (CV2)	CV2 CV17 CV20 CV50
	Time, care and attention	Patients value time and attention (CV20). They met kind and caring staff (CV50).They would like more time with health care professionals. When appointments are postpones, patients feel dismissed, disregarded, unimportant (CV57). A few patients complained that their doctor seemed rushed, inaccessible or uninformative (CV24). Some experienced feeling depersonalized. Not being listened to (CV2). See also Communication.	CV2 CV20 CV24 CV37 CV50 CV57
	Concerns about incompetent care	Some patients who experienced complications wondered whether this was due to maltreatment (CV50) Anger about misdiagnosis (CV63). Fear of potential mistakes (CV16)	CV16 CV50 CV63
	Care was based on current physical needs and lacked other dimensions.	Care was based on medical model and focussed on treatment. Failure by services to address end of life issues. Patients sometimes perceive the healthcare organisation as insufficient, ignorant to personal demands, needs or expectations (CV57). Few patients had discussed advance care planning (CV45). Lack of sensitivity to personal needs e.g. privacy (CV63, CV2)	CV2 CV45 CV53 CV57 CV63
	Experiences of discrimination.	Women felt they were treated differently or less seriously by health care professionals because they were women and relatively young (CV63).	CV63

	Delays	Patients were angry about delays to surgery.	CV29
	Expectations	Patients expectations of care are shaped by a variety of factors including media, experiences of family and friends. Expectations of services are not always met, sometimes because they are unrealistic (CV20, CV26). Sometimes patients are pleasantly surprised by level of care received (CV26)	CV2 CV20 CV26 CV30
Support	Variety of Sources	Variety of sources of emotional support – friends, family, neighbours, professionals (CV24) and non-humans (CV57)	CV24 CV56 CV57
	Peer Support	Peer support is highly valued. Some patients wished the hospital would arrange opportunities to meet peers (CV50, CV60, CV43). Patients want to learn from other patients, share experiences, learn from each other and provide or receive emotional support, compare progress. Patients found mutual understanding and empathy. Such meetings were a way of reducing social isolation. Sense of camaraderie. Patients compared progress (CV39). A few patients did not want to meet people with similar experiences. They did not wanting to be reminded of their condition. And patients with similar conditions do not necessarily perceive themselves as alike: differences of age, and gender. (CV18, CV38)	CV12 CV16 CV18 CV34 CV37 CV38 CV39 CV42 CV43 CV50 CV52 CV56 CV57
	Support of partner or spouse	Spouse was considered most important resource for support. But studies found variety in the extent to which women report being supported by their partners.	CV30 CV43 CV56
	Barriers to receiving support	Some men did not want to discuss health problems for fear of being seen as a ‘wimp’ or ‘unmanly’.	CV30
	Feeling stifled or over-protected	It was possible to have too much company and too much help. Over-protectiveness can become a barrier to independence. Better information for care-givers might solve the problem of over-protectiveness	CV24 CV25 CV37

			CV43 CV47 CV56
	Practical support	Patients need practical support e.g. cleaning, bathing, meal preparation, transport, administrative task, exercise.	CV24 CV56 CV62
	Psychological support	Psychological support was valued but often lacking (CV3, CV12). This includes support from psychologists but also conversation, companionship, encouragement from others. Patients value learning to manage stress and anxiety (CV18, CV43). Some found it useful to talk, others preferred not to (CV37) Some patients need for support from prayer, meditation, reading Bible or scriptures, alone or with friends (CV62)	CV3 CV12 CV18 CV52 CV62
	Characteristics of supportive relationships	In supportive relationships there is an openness to challenging matters (CV56). Relationships with competent, knowledgeable health care professionals are valued (CV57). Patients want to be confirmed and respected by their carers who are present, who listen, respect ones' perceptions (CV57). Relationships with family, friends, colleagues and formal carers can be simultaneously supportive and not supportive (CV56).	CV56 CV57
	Balancing support needs with care for others	Patients want to share their experiences with others but this wish is intertwined with a desire to spare other people suffering (CV56). Women felt uncomfortable when their children had to help them and minimised symptoms so that they would be less of a 'burden' (CV30). Women in hospital spent a great deal of time worrying about how their families were coping. Many women engaged in housework against medical advice. Men tended to rest at home.	CV30 CV56
	Supportive relationships with health care staff	Staff provided reassurance through information giving, communication, attention, professionalism. Proactive support from staff was valued, especially phone calls post-discharge. It made patients feel looked after (not abandoned) (CV34)	CV16 CV18 CV34 CV52
	Support from family	Support from family was highly valued. Some patients were satisfied with family support, others would like more family support. The experiences strengthened some family relationships and strained others. Participants in one study felt that getting older was the reason for lack of response to cries for help (CV48)	CV25 CV34 CV37 CV48 CV56

	Support needs and changes in social roles and relationships	Being dependent impacted on patients' roles and those of their carers. This has an emotional impact e.g. wife now has to do the gardening. This can lead to conflict.	CV30 CV37 CV46 CV47
	Finding it difficult to accept support from others.	Some find it difficult to accept help of others. They accept help only when necessary because accepting help causes feelings of frustration (CV52, CV48) and made participants feel 'old' (CV52). Many patients worried about 'being a burden' in terms of practical (CV57) and emotional support (CV48). Women accepted help with housework but wanted to organise activities (CV31)	CV25 CV31 CV48 CV52
Uncertainty	Uncertainty about risk	Patients were uncertain what level of activity was safe. They needed to know what to do to manage risk.	CV11 CV12 CV19 CV20 CV24 CV57
	Uncertain diagnosis	Not having a clear diagnosis or long delays in diagnosis. Wanting a better understanding of their health problem. See Knowledge, Understanding and Making Sense.	CV11 CV20 CV45 CV46
	Unpredictable symptoms	Having an unpredictable body/ unpredictable symptoms. Patients had to cope with variable symptoms and the uncertain course of cardiac failure. Factors like cholesterol level are invisible to patient, and so asymptomatic and are experienced as unpredictable. See also Lived Experience.	CV13 CV31 CV53
	Illness trajectory	Patients experience a gradual yet progressive decline with unpredictable episodes of acute exacerbation that led to hospitalisation (CV45). Enduring uncertainty about whether the disease could be cured and whether treatment would be effective (CV47). Constant changes in doses of medications made patients worry about what would happen when the dose could not be increased any further (CV48). See also Lived Experience.	CV45 CV46 CV47 CV48
	Uncertainty about the future	Patients experience their future as uncertain and unclear and they avoid making future plans and instead live in the present. Patients who had discussed their prognosis with their doctor often conveyed a sense of an uncertain future (CV45)	CV36 CV45 CV47 CV57

		Waiting for surgery increased feelings of uncertainty and anxiety.	CV29

B.10 Diabetes Patient Experiences Generic and Sub-themes Evidence Table

Generic theme	Sub-themes (All sub-themes that relate to generic themes)	Description	Reference
Patient as active participant	(Underpins all sub-themes)	The emphasis on self-management and self-care in diabetes is apparent throughout the research literature.	All papers
Responsiveness (organisation of services to meet needs and preferences)	Time spent with health professionals	Short appointments, rushed consultations; patients feeling unable to ask questions because of time pressures; where more time was allowed patients felt care was more personal and they were able to participate	D4, D12, D21, D26, D30, D38, D44, D52
	Time waiting	Time spent waiting for doctors and other members of the healthcare team	D12, D33
	Response times	Need for quick response to unexpected situations	D23
	Convenience	Convenience was important to some patients	D4, D12, D41
	Environment	Rushed, problematic or fear-inducing healthcare environments	D12, D38
	Co-ordination	Co-ordination and integration important, but communication between healthcare professionals sometimes poor. Teamwork was assumed between doctors and specialist nurses and between healthcare teams. Problems with diabetes care on non-diabetes wards. Transitions may be difficult.	D3, D7, D23, D34, D39, D41
	Resources	Healthcare structures and constraints, and lack of some services and resources, can be problematic. More intensive, more generously funded care appreciated. Cost of care can be an issue to non-UK patients.	D8, D10, D21, D26, D34, D36, D41 D47

	Expertise	Specialist expertise of healthcare staff was appreciated; some healthcare professionals lacked necessary knowledge of diabetes and its management.	D12, D21, D31, D32, D36
	Follow up	Lack of follow up after diagnosis or after missed appointments. Follow up appointments appreciated.	D26, D29, D43, D50
	Mistakes	Incorrect or inadequate diagnosis/treatment	D31, D36, D43, D52
	Tailoring care for individual rather than diabetes	Healthcare not tailored to individual needs/preferences; focus on the diabetes rather than the patient; different requirements for services	D23, D24, D30, D31, D40, D49
	Satisfaction	Some reports of good care and general expressions of satisfaction, but in-depth discussion revealed problems that had not previously been reported. Patients felt efficiency was important, but accepted pros and cons of different kinds of care. Patients with complications more negative about services.	D3, D7, D21, D25, D26, D27, D34, D38, D49
Relationships/partnership (issues to do with the relationship between patients and health professionals)	Trust	Importance of being able to trust health professionals; trust based on good relationships; trust hindered by perception of lack of knowledge or mistakes; some patients trusted doctors to take responsibility for their care; health professionals sometimes appeared to distrust patients.	D5, D8, D23, D31, D36, D38, D41, D44
	Power	Perception of power differentials and demands for adaptation and submission. Some relatives reported to feel unable to question poor practice. For patients who took part in a trial, reciprocity seen as empowering (they could ask for practical and emotional support).	D21, D26, D31, D37, D38, D48
	Control	Issues of control common and complex, with different views on who is, and who should be, in control of diabetes management.	D2, D18, D19, D34, D37, D39, D44
	Shared decision-making	Differing views on patients' involvement in decision-making, with some, but not all, patients wanting more involvement. Expertise of patient reported as not	D9, D11, D19, D21, D28, D30, D53

		acknowledged by some health professionals.	
	Judgemental attitude	Negative attitudes towards patients; perceptions of blame for high glucose levels, uncontrolled diabetes and obesity; insensitivity towards the feelings of patients and the difficulties of everyday diabetes management; judgemental attitude affects diabetes management negatively.	D10, D11, D31, D38, D40, D44, D48, D52, D53
	Being seen as a person	Patients valued being seen as a person; health professionals sometimes seemed more interested in the diabetes than the person.	D23, D33, D31, D38, D48, D52
	Respect	Respect for the patient was important; lack of respect undermined trust and confidence.	D31, D37, D44, D48, D52
	Continuity of care	Relational/longitudinal continuity of care seen as very important. Problems with continuity of care, especially in a hospital setting. Continuity of care is not a guarantee of diagnosis, which may result from some form of discontinuity.	D3, D12, D21, D23, D30, D33, D41, D43, D49, D51, D52
	Approachability	Importance of feeling welcome (which happened in some cases and not others). Doctors seen as too busy to approach. Barriers between patients and health professionals.	D7, D12, D21,D28, D31, D35, D37
	Empathy	Patients expected a more caring approach; affective component sometimes missing from diabetes care.	D46, D48, D52
Communication (style and content of verbal and non-verbal communication between patients and health professionals – overlap with all other categories)	Importance of communication	Communication between health professionals and patients rated as very important. Verbal and non-verbal communication taken very seriously by patients, with associated impact on self-care. Reassurance and support increased confidence in self-care.	D18, D29, D38, D51
	Quality of communication	Poor communication between health professionals and patients is an important factor underlying obstacles to adherence to treatment. It may cause distress, or alternatively reassure patients inappropriately.	D5, D10, D11, D16, D18, D19, D25, D26, D30, D37, D46

	Listening/paying attention/acknowledging patient expertise	Patients value health professionals who listen and pay attention to them; they dislike lack of acknowledgement of patients' own expertise.	D23, D30, D33, D35, D41, D48, D52, D53
	Language	Poor access to effective translators hinders communication; some patients chose to be passive rather than risk being misunderstood.	D8, D26, D37
	Questions and answers	Patients value the opportunity to raise questions, but may not feel able to do so because of time pressures. Not providing answers to questions caused worry and frustration.	D4, D7, D30, D33, D35, D44, D49
	Explanations	Patients did not always understand the purpose of advice they were given. Taking time to explain was appreciated.	D5, D22, D48
	Brusque manner	Patients feel intimidated or defiant as a result of brusque, authoritarian or patronising manner of health professionals.	D26, D41, D44, D48
Information and support for self-care (resources provided or required, including information, education, emotional support and peer support)	Importance of information and advice	Information and advice valued, especially at diagnosis, relevant to individual needs, and covering a broad range of lifestyle issues.	D4, D9, D24, D44
	Problems with information	Issues with quality, quantity, relevance and timeliness of information provided. Some patients felt they lacked information; others were overwhelmed by the amount of information provided at one time. Reports that reasons for recommended lifestyle changes are not made clear.	D2, D5, D9, D10, D15, D22, D27, D29, D31, D33, D39, D40, D44, D48, D50, D53
	Not wanting information	Some patients did not seek information because they were afraid, they did not think their condition was serious, or they preferred health professionals to take responsibility for their care.	D1, D2, D4, D19, D30, D53
	Feedback on condition	Patients valued up to date information on their condition and test results.	D12, D33, D35
	Sources of further help	Patients wanted to know about services and sources of further information.	D18, D33

		Search for information described as a coping strategy.	
	Education and groups	Some patients valued formal education sessions; others found them insufficiently relevant to their needs, or became less confident as a result of course content. Diabetes manual not used as envisaged by designers. Many enjoyed and felt they benefited from group-based learning.	D12, D24, D28, D31, D32, D44
	Peer support	Patients valued contact with others who have similar conditions. Experiential knowledge and expertise were valued. Positive role models and hope/positivity about the condition were valued. Humour used in discussing 'bad behaviour'.	D13, D14, D18, D24, D34, D36, D44, D50
	Need for emotional support	Emotional support valued and needed. Patients may feel alone and unsupported, grieving for previous identity, or anxious about the need for lifestyle and self-management changes. Guilt, self-blame and stigma were common causes of distress. Patients reported being affected by uncertainty, lack of knowledge and lack of confidence. Emotional needs reported as not taken into account by health professionals. Improved emotional and psychological support required. Encouragement, reassurance and support for patients' efforts increased confidence. Knowing about risks may help with self-care but also makes patients anxious.	D3, D15, D17, D18, D19, D21, D24, D29, D32. D33, D36, D39, D44, D47, D48, D51, D53
Lived experience (diabetes care and everyday life, and needs for awareness of issues and difficulties)	Everyday lives	Need for health professionals to appreciate difficulties patients have in their everyday lives while dealing with diabetes and issues of self-care.	D10, D17, D24, D31, D41, D53
	Perceived unrealistic goals	Unrealistic expectations and goals set by health professionals seen as de-motivating.	D31, D44, D52
	Importance of families	Need for encouragement of family support and understanding of how families are helping or hindering patients.	D18, D26, D33
	Cultural issues	Understanding of cultural factors influencing diet and healthcare important in giving advice about self-care.	D8, D14, D25

	Interpretations, beliefs and meanings	Patients interpret practical healthcare arrangements as indications of the seriousness of their condition; different beliefs about diabetes and treatments affect communication between patients and health professionals.	D1, D5, D22, D25, D29,
	Psychological factors	Emotional impact of diabetes and psychological distress may affect glycaemic control. (Also see 'need for emotional support' in 'information and support for self-care'.)	D17, D45
	Perceived discrimination/injustice	Perception of discrimination/injustice	D8, D14, D34
	Complexity of diabetes and self-care	Self-care affected by multiple issues. The changing course of diabetes, often unpredictable and different for everyone, was perceived as challenging health professionals as well as patients. Some patients denied having diabetes or thought their diabetes had gone away. Patients may be aware of the risk of micro-vascular but not macro-vascular complications. Diagnosis may come as a shock when patients feel well.	D10, D24, D34, D43, D53

B.11 Search strategies

Cancer Search Strategy

Embase/Medline combined

Database: EMBASE <1980 to 2010 Week 47>, Ovid MEDLINE(R) <1950 to November Week 3 2010>

Search Strategy:

1 (patient* adj5 experience*).ab,ti. (166535)

2 (patient* adj5 expectation*).ab,ti. (9592)

3 (patient* adj5 preference*).ab,ti. (16417)

4 (patient* adj5 need*).ab,ti. (133276)

5 (Patient* adj5 perspective*).ab,ti. (14175)

6 (patient* adj5 attitude*).ab,ti. (13309)

7 (patient* adj5 view*).ab,ti. (20592)

8 (patient* adj5 opinion*).ab,ti. (6809)

9 (patient* adj5 choice*).ab,ti. (28784)

10 or/1-9 (384869)

11 exp "Delivery of Health Care"/ (1984785)

12 service delivery.ab,ti. (10886)

13 11 or 12 (1989119)

14 patient satisfaction.ab,ti. (31312)

15 exp patient satisfaction/ (108716)

16 14 or 15 (118255)

17 intervention*.ab,ti. (827093)

18 (patient adj reported adj outcome adj measure*).ab,ti. (451)

19 quality of life.ab,ti. (218664)

20 (SF36 or SF-36).ab,ti. (20584)

21 EQ5D.ab,ti. (202)

22 editorial.pt. (628387)

23 exp "Quality of Life"/ (253171)

24 or/17-23 (1727293)

25 10 and 13 and 16 (12437)

26 25 not 24 (9386)

27 limit 26 to (english language and humans) (8174)

28 limit 27 to yr="2000 -Current" (6238)

29 cancer.ab,ti. (1655267)

30 exp Neoplasms/ (4703833)

31 29 or 30 (4926196)

32 28 and 31 (761)

33 remove duplicates from 32 (665)

PsycInfo

No relevant year or language limiters available

Wed Dec 15 10:58:32 EST 2010

CSA

Database: PsycINFO

Query: (KW=cancer) and(((TI=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or TI=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or TI=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*))) or(AB=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or AB=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or AB=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*)))) or(DE=information)) **Total hits = 682**

Assia

Limited to 1995 - 2010 English only

Wed Dec 15 10:19:53 EST 2010

CSA

Multiple Databases

Query: (KW=cancer) and(((TI=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or TI=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or TI=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*))) or(AB=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or AB=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or AB=((patient satisfaction) or (patient

need*)))) or (DE=information)) **Total hits = 441**

Cinahl

EBSCOhost

Strategy 1

S5 S3 and S4 Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (**2657**)

S4 TX cancer Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (113199) Search

S3 S1 or S2 Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (73735

S2 MW information Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records - View Results (62075)

S1 TX Patient experience* or TX patient perspective* or TX patient attitude* or TX patient view* or TX patient opinion* or TX patient expectation* or TX patient experience* or TX patient satisfaction or TX patient need* Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records

Strategy 2

S4 (S1 and S2 and S3) Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - **CINAHL 72**

S3 TX cancer Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records - Database - CINAHL 36003

S2 MW Information Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records - Search modes - Boolean/Phrase Interface - Database - CINAHL 62154

S1 TX Patient experience* or TX patient perspective* or TX patient attitude* or TX patient view* or TX patient opinion* or TX patient expectation* or TX patient experience* or TX patient satisfaction or TX patient need* Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records Search modes - Boolean/Phrase Interface - EBSCOhost - database - CINAHL 12268

Cardiovascular Search Strategy

Embase/Medline combined

Duplicates excluded by system – Medline, Embase, Abstract preferences

Database: EMBASE <1980 to 2010 Week 50>, Ovid MEDLINE(R) <1950 to November Week 3 2010>

Search Strategy:

1 (patient* adj5 experience*).ab,ti. (167089)

2 (patient* adj5 expectation*).ab,ti. (9616)

3 (patient* adj5 preference*).ab,ti. (16462)

4 (patient* adj5 need*).ab,ti. (133721)

5 (Patient* adj5 perspective*).ab,ti. (14223)

6 (patient* adj5 attitude*).ab,ti. (13340)

7 (patient* adj5 view*).ab,ti. (20633)

8 (patient* adj5 opinion*).ab,ti. (6832)

9 (patient* adj5 choice*).ab,ti. (28880)

10 or/1-9 (386096)

11 exp "Delivery of Health Care"/ (1991091)

12 service delivery.ab,ti. (10910)

13 11 or 12 (1995428)

14 patient satisfaction.ab,ti. (31397)

15 exp patient satisfaction/ (109005)

16 14 or 15 (118553)

17 intervention*.ab,ti. (829630)

18 (patient adj reported adj outcome adj measure*).ab,ti. (457)

19 quality of life.ab,ti. (219606)

20 (SF36 or SF-36).ab,ti. (20681)

21 EQ5D.ab,ti. (204)

22 editorial.pt. (629780)

23 exp "Quality of Life"/ (254379)

24 or/17-23 (1732345)

25 10 and 13 and 16 (12447)

26 25 not 24 (9393)

27 limit 26 to (english language and humans) (8180)

28 limit 27 to yr="2000 -Current" (6244)

29 cardi*.ab,ti. (1432505)

30 exp Cardiovascular Diseases/ (3856886)

31 or/29-30 (4408820)

32 28 and 31 (424)

33 remove duplicates from 32 **(373**)

PsycInfo

PsycInfo – no relevant year or language limiters available

Wed Dec 15 10:35:31 EST 2010

CSA

Database: PsycINFO

Query: (KW=cardi*) and(((TI=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or TI=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or TI=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*))) or(AB=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or AB=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or AB=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*)))) or(DE=information)) Total hits = 131

Assia

Assia - Limited to 1995 – 2010, English only

Wed Dec 15 10:32:56 EST 2010 CSA

Query: (KW=cardi*) and(((TI=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or TI=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or TI=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*))) or(AB=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or AB=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or AB=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*)))) or(DE=information)) Toal hits = 62

Cinahl

Via Ebsco

Search 1

S5 S3 and S4 Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (**1300**)

S4 S1 or S2 Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (73840)

S3 TX cardi* Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (133384)

S2 MW Information Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (62154)

S1 TX Patient experience* or TX patient perspective* or TX patient attitude* or TX patient view* or TX patient opinion* or TX patient expectation* or TX patient experience* or TX patient satisfaction or TX patient need* Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records - View Results (12268)

Strategy 2

S4 S1 and S2 and S3 Search modes - Boolean/Phrase Interface - EBSCOhost

Search Screen - Advanced Search - Database - **Cinahl 13**

S3 TX cardi* Search modes - Boolean/Phrase Database - CINAHL 133384

S2 MW Information Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records - Search modes - Boolean/Phrase Interface - Database - CINAHL 62154

S1 TX Patient experience* or TX patient perspective* or TX patient attitude* or TX patient view* or TX patient opinion* or TX patient expectation* or TX patient experience* or TX patient satisfaction or TX patient need* - View Results (12268)

Diabetes Search Strategy

Medline/Embase combined

Database: EMBASE <1980 to 2010 Week 47>, Ovid MEDLINE(R) <1950 to November Week 3 2010>

Search Strategy:

1 (patient* adj5 experience*).ab,ti. (166535)

2 (patient* adj5 expectation*).ab,ti. (9592)

3 (patient* adj5 preference*).ab,ti. (16417)

4 (patient* adj5 need*).ab,ti. (133276)

5 (Patient* adj5 perspective*).ab,ti. (14175)

6 (patient* adj5 attitude*).ab,ti. (13309)

7 (patient* adj5 view*).ab,ti. (20592)

8 (patient* adj5 opinion*).ab,ti. (6809)

9 (patient* adj5 choice*).ab,ti. (28784)

10 or/1-9 (384869)

11 exp "Delivery of Health Care"/ (1984785)

12 service delivery.ab,ti. (10886)

13 11 or 12 (1989119)

14 patient satisfaction.ab,ti. (31312)

15 exp patient satisfaction/ (108716)

16 14 or 15 (118255)

17 intervention*.ab,ti. (827093)

18 (patient adj reported adj outcome adj measure*).ab,ti. (451)

19 quality of life.ab,ti. (218664)

20 (SF36 or SF-36).ab,ti. (20584)

21 EQ5D.ab,ti. (202)

22 editorial.pt. (628387)

23 exp "Quality of Life"/ (253171)

24 or/17-23 (1727293)

25 10 and 13 and 16 (12437)

26 25 not 24 (9386)

27 limit 26 to (english language and humans) (8174)

28 limit 27 to yr="2000 -Current" (6238)

29 exp Diabetes Mellitus/ (667847)

30 exp Diabetes Insipidus/ (15210)

31 diabetes.ab,ti. (535657)

32 or/29-31 (798468)

33 28 and 32 (179)

34 remove duplicates from 33 (150)

PsycInfo

No relevant year or language limiters available.

Wed Dec 15 10:40:36 EST 2010 CSA Database: PsycINFO

Query: (KW=diabet*) and(((TI=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or TI=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or TI=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*))) or(AB=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or AB=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or AB=((patient satisfaction) or (patient need*)))) or(DE=information)) – Total hits = 136

Assia

Limited to 1995 – 2010, English only

Wed Dec 15 11:07:33 EST 2010 CSA

Query: (KW=diabet*) and(((TI=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*) or (patient attitude*)) or TI=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or (patient expectation*)) or TI=((patient satisfaction) or

(patient need*))) or(AB=((Patient experience*) or (Patient perspective*)

or (patient attitude*)) or AB=((patient view*) or (patient opinion*) or

(patient expectation*)) or AB=((patient satisfaction) or (patient

need*)))) or(DE=information)) – Total hits = 74

Cinahl

Search 1

S5 S3 and S4 Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (**1616**)

S4 S1 or S2 Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (73840)

S3 TX diabet* Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (68559)

S2 MW Information Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language;

Exclude MEDLINE records - View Results (62154)

S1 TX Patient experience* or TX patient perspective* or TX patient attitude* or TX patient view* or TX patient opinion* or TX patient expectation* or TX patient experience* or TX patient satisfaction or TX patient need* Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records View Results (12268)

Search 2

S4 S1 and S2 and S3 Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (**32**)

S3 TX diabet* Search modes - Boolean/Phrase - View Results (68559)

S2 MW Information Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language;

Exclude MEDLINE records - View Results (62154)

S1 TX Patient experience* or TX patient perspective* or TX patient attitude* or TX patient view* or TX patient opinion* or TX patient expectation* or TX patient experience* or TX patient satisfaction or TX patient need* Limiters - Published Date from: 19950101-20101231; English Language; Exclude MEDLINE records - View Results (12268)

Appendix C: Existing NICE recommendations

Recommendation (reference)	Evidence based? Consensus recommendation?[f]
Pregnancy and complex social factors (September 2010)[85] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13167/50861/50861.pdf - Full** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13167/50822/50822.pdf - NICE**	
Commissioners should ensure that women with complex social factors presenting for antenatal care are asked about their satisfaction with the services provided; and the women's responses are: • recorded and monitored • used to guide service development. (R 1.1.3)	Consensus Section 3.3 pg 41
Commissioners should involve women and their families in determining local needs and how these might be met. (R 1.1.4)	Consensus Section 3.3 pg 41
Respect the woman's right to confidentiality and sensitively discuss her fears in a non-judgemental manner. (R 1.1.8)	Evidence Section 3.3, pg 42; section 4.3, pg 56; section 5.3, pg 87; section 6.3, pg 112; section 7.3, pg 147
For women who do not have a booking appointment at the first contact with any healthcare professional: discuss the need for antenatal care offer the woman a booking appointment in the first trimester, ideally before 10 weeks if she wishes to continue the pregnancy, or offer referral to sexual health services if she is considering termination of the pregnancy. (R 1.1.11)	Consensus Section 1.3.1 pg 11; section 3.3 pg 42-3
At the booking appointment, give the woman a telephone number to enable her to contact a healthcare professional outside of normal working hours, for example the telephone number of the hospital triage contact, the labour ward or the birth centre. (R 1.1.13)	Evidence Section 3.3, pg 43; section 7.5, pg 156

[f] Where no details were given in the guideline, it was assumed the recommendation was based on consensus. The phrase consensus based on evidence refers to recommendations where evidence has shown there is an issue or barrier but no evidence on how to over come this.

In order to facilitate discussion of sensitive issues, provide each woman with a one-to-one consultation, without her partner, a family member or a legal guardian present, on at least one occasion. (R 1.1.14)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.3, pg 42
Work with social care professionals to overcome barriers to care for women who misuse substances. Particular attention should be paid to: integrating care from different services ensuring that the attitudes of staff do not prevent women from using services addressing women's fears about the involvement of children's services and potential removal of their child, by providing information tailored to their needs addressing women's feelings of guilt about their misuse of substances and the potential effects on their baby. (R 1.2.1)	Evidence Section 4.3, pg 56
Healthcare commissioners and those responsible for providing local antenatal services should work with local agencies, including social care and third-sector agencies that provide substance misuse services, to coordinate antenatal care by, for example: jointly developing care plans across agencies including information about opiate replacement therapy in care plans co-locating services offering women information about the services provided by other agencies. (R 1.2.2)	Consensus based on evidence Section 4.3, pg 57
Offer the woman a named midwife or doctor who has specialised knowledge of, and experience in, the care of women who misuse substances, and provide a direct-line telephone number for the named midwife or doctor. (R 1.2.4)	Consensus Section 4.4, pg 61 and supported by new HE model; section 4.7, pg 72–3
Use a variety of methods, for example text messages, to remind women of upcoming and missed appointments. (R 1.2.8)	Consensus Section 4.4, pg 61 and supported by new HE model; section 4.7, pg 72–3
The named midwife or doctor should tell the woman about relevant additional services (such as drug and alcohol misuse support services) and encourage her to use them according to her individual needs. (R 1.2.9)	Consensus Section 4.4, pg 61-2
Offer the woman information about the potential effects of substance misuse on her unborn baby, and what to expect when the baby is born, for example what medical care the baby may need, where he or she will be cared for and any potential involvement of social services. (R 1.2.10)	Consensus Section 4.6, pg 72
Offer information about help with transportation to appointments if needed to support the woman's attendance. (R 1.2.11)	Evidence Section 4.5, pg 70
Healthcare professionals should help support these women's uptake of antenatal care services by: using a variety of means to communicate with women	a) Consensus based on evidence Section 5.3, pg 87-8 and Appendix D, pg

telling women about antenatal care services and how to use them undertaking training in the specific needs of women in these groups. (R 1.3.1)	205-6 b) Evidence Section 5.3, pg 88 c) Consensus based on evidence Section 5.6, pg 97
Those responsible for the organisation of local antenatal services should provide information about pregnancy and antenatal services, including how to find and use antenatal services, in a variety of: formats, such as posters, notices, leaflets, photographs, drawings/diagrams, online video clips, audio clips and DVDs settings, including pharmacies, community centres, faith groups and centres, GP surgeries, family planning clinics, children's centres, reception centres and hostels languages. (R 1.3.5)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.3, pg 83, 88; section 5.6 pg 101
Offer the woman information on access and entitlement to healthcare. (R 1.3.7)	Evidence Section 5.3, pg 86
At the booking appointment discuss with the woman the importance of keeping her hand-held maternity record with her at all times. (R 1.3.8)	Consensus Section 5.4, pg 92-3
Avoid making assumptions based on a woman's culture, ethnic origin or religious beliefs. (R 1.3.9)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.5, pg 97; section 5.3, pg 85-6
Provide the woman with an interpreter (who may be a link worker or advocate and should not be a member of the woman's family, her legal guardian or her partner) who can communicate with her in her preferred language. (R 1.3.10)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.5, pg 97; section 5.3, pg 83-5, 87
When giving spoken information, ask the woman about her understanding of what she has been told to ensure she has understood it correctly. (R 1.3.11)	Consensus Section 5.5, pg 97
Healthcare professionals should encourage young women aged under 20 to use antenatal care services by: • offering age-appropriate services • being aware that the young woman may be dealing with other social problems • offering information about help with transportation to and from appointments • offering antenatal care for young women in the community • providing opportunities for the partner/father of the baby to be involved in the young woman's antenatal care, with her agreement. (R 1.4.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 6.3, pg 112-3; section 6.6, pg 130
Offer the young woman aged under 20 a named midwife, who should take responsibility for and provide the majority of her antenatal care, and provide a direct-line telephone number for the named midwife. (R 1.4.4)	Consensus based on evidence Section 6.3, pg 112
Offer young women aged under 20 information that is suitable for their age – including information about care services,	Consensus based on evidence

antenatal peer group education or drop-in sessions, housing benefit and other benefits – in a variety of formats. (R 1.4.6)	Section 6.3, pg 112, 117; section 6.6, pg 130; appendix D, pg 205
Women who experience domestic abuse should be supported in their use of antenatal care services by: • training healthcare professionals in the identification and care of women who experience domestic abuse • making available information and support tailored to women who experience or are suspected to be experiencing domestic abuse • providing a more flexible series of appointments if needed • addressing women's fears about the involvement of children's services by providing information tailored to their needs. (R 1.5.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.3, pg 147-9
Tell the woman that the information she discloses will be kept in a confidential record and will not be included in her hand-held record. (R 1.5.8)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.3, pg 147-9
Offer the woman information about other agencies, including third-sector agencies, which provide support for women who experience domestic abuse. (R 1.5.9)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.3, pg 143
Give the woman a credit card-sized information card that includes local and national helpline numbers. (R 1.5.10)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.6, pg 156,158
Consider offering the woman referral to a domestic abuse support worker. (R 1.5.11)	Consensus Section 7.5, pg 157
Barrett's oesophagus - ablative therapy (August 2010)[91] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13096/50243/50243.pdf**	
Consider offering endoscopic therapy as an alternative to oesophagectomy to people with high-grade dysplasia and intramucosal cancer (T1a), taking into account individual patient preferences and general health. Endoscopic therapy is particularly suitable for patients who are considered unsuitable for surgery or who do not wish to undergo oesophagectomy. (R 1.2.2)	Evidence Section 2.2.4, pg 29
Give patients verbal and written information about their diagnosis, available treatments, patient support groups and the uncertainty of the long-term outcomes of ablative therapies. Give patients time to consider this information when making decisions about their care. (R 1.1.9)	Consensus Section 2.6.3, pg 72
Offer patients the opportunity to see the same specialist healthcare team more than once to agree treatment. (R 1.1.11)	Consensus; section 2.6.3, pg 72
Chronic heart failure (December 2010)[55] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13099/50514/50514.pdf - full** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13099/50517/50517.pdf - NICE**	

Healthcare professionals should discuss alcohol consumption with the patient and tailor their advice appropriately to the clinical circumstances. [2003] (R 1.2.1.3)	Consensus No details in guideline
Healthcare professionals should be prepared to broach sensitive issues with patients, such as sexual activity, as these are unlikely to be raised by the patient. [2003] (R 1.2.1.4)	Consensus No details in guideline
Patients who wish to be involved in monitoring of their condition should be provided with sufficient education and support from their healthcare professional to do this, with clear guidelines as to what to do in the event of deterioration. [2003] (R 1.4.1.4)	Consensus No details in guideline
Clear instructions should be given as to how the patient/carer can access advice, particularly in the high-risk period immediately following discharge. [2003] (R 1.5.2.3)	Consensus No details in guideline
Guidelines for good communication: • Listen to patients and respect their views and beliefs. • Give patients the information they ask for or need about their condition, its treatment and prognosis, in a way they can understand including information about any serious side effects of drugs to be prescribed. • Provide the most important information first. • Explain how each item will affect patients personally. • Present information in separate categories. • Make advice specific, detailed and concrete. • Use words the patients will understand; confirm understanding by questions; define unfamiliar words; write down key words; draw diagrams and keep a copy in the medical notes. • Repeat the information using the same words each time. • Prepare material, written or taped, to back up handwritten notes. • Share information with patients' partners, close relatives or carers if they ask you to do so. When patients cannot indicate their consent for such sharing of information, it is advisable to share the information that those close to the patient need or want to know, except where you have reason to believe that the patient would object if able to do so. [2003] (R 1.5.5.2)	Evidence No details in guideline
The content, style and timing of information provision should be tailored to the needs of the individual patient. [2003] (R 1.5.5.3)	Evidence No details in guideline
Healthcare professionals should be aware of local cardiac support networks and provide this information to patients and carers. [2003] (R 1.5.7.1)	Consensus No details in guideline
Issues of sudden death and living with uncertainty are pertinent to all patients with heart failure. The opportunity to discuss these issues should be available at all stages of care. [2003] (R 1.5.9.1)	Consensus No details in guideline
Hypertension in pregnancy (August 2010)[84]	

http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13098/50475/50475.pdf - full **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13098/50418/50418.pdf - NICE**	
No recommendations	
Transient loss of consciousness in adults and young people (August 2010)[59] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13111/50432/50432.pdf** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13111/50452/50452.pdf**	
For people with orthostatic hypotension: explain the mechanisms causing their syncope discuss and review possible causes, especially drug therapy discuss the prognostic implications and treatment options available advise people what to do if they experience another TLoC. (R 1.5.4.2)	Consensus
Advise people waiting for a specialist cardiovascular assessment: what they should do if they have another event if appropriate, how they should modify their activity (for example, by avoiding physical exertion if relevant) and not to drive. (R 1.5.4.3)	Consensus based on DVLA guidance for driving section of recommendation
Offer advice to people waiting for specialist neurological assessment for their TLoC as recommended in 'The epilepsies: the diagnosis and management of the epilepsies in adults and children in primary and secondary care' (NICE clinical guideline 20). (R 1.5.4.4)	Consensus (from CG 20)
Delirium (July 2010)[57] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13060/49909/49909.pdf** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13060/49909/49909.pdf**	
Give a tailored multicomponent intervention package: • Within 24 hours of admission, assess people at risk for clinical factors contributing to delirium. • Based on the results of this assessment, provide a multicomponent intervention tailored to the person's individual needs and care setting as described in recommendations 1.3.3.1–1.3.3.10. (R 1.3.2)	Consensus Section 9.24.3, pg 437
Offer information to people who are at risk of delirium or who have delirium, and their family and/or carers, which: • informs them that delirium is common and usually temporary • describes people's experience of delirium • encourages people at risk and their families and/or carers to tell their healthcare team about any sudden changes or fluctuations in behaviour • encourages the person who has had delirium to share their experience of delirium with the healthcare professional during	Consensus based on evidence Section 14.6, pg 561-2

recovery • advises the person of any support groups. (R 1.7.1)	
Ensure that information provided meets the cultural, cognitive and language needs of the person. (R 1.7.2)	Consensus Section 14.6, pg 562
Metastatic malignant disease of unknown primary origin (July 2010)[67] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13044/49864/49864.pdf** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13044/49848/49848.pdf**	
Every hospital with a cancer centre or unit should assign a CUP specialist nurse or key worker to patients diagnosed with MUO or CUP. The CUP specialist nurse or key worker should: • take a major role in coordinating the patient's care in line with this guideline • liaise with the patient's GP and other community support services • ensure that the patient and their carers can get information, advice and support about diagnosis, treatment, palliative care, spiritual and psychosocial concerns. • meet with the patient in the early stages of the pathway and keep in close contact with the patient regularly by mutual agreement and • be an advocate for the patient at CUP team meetings. (R 1.1.1.3)	Consensus Section 3.3, pg 15
Refer outpatients with MUO to the CUP team immediately using the rapid referral pathway for cancer, so that all patients are assessed within 2 weeks of referral. A member of the CUP team should assess inpatients with MUO by the end of the next working day after referral. The CUP team should take responsibility for ensuring that a management plan exists which includes: • appropriate investigations • symptom control • access to psychological support and • providing information. (R 1.1.1.4)	Consensus Section 3.3, pg 16
Perform investigations only if: • the results are likely to affect a treatment decision • the patient understands why the investigations are being carried out • the patient understands the potential benefits and risks of investigation and treatment and • the patient is prepared to accept treatment. (R 1.3.1.2)	Consensus Section 5.2, pg 38
Explain to patients and carers if further investigations will not alter treatment options. Provide appropriate emotional and	Consensus

psychological support, information about CUP, treatment options and palliative care. (R 1.3.1.3)	Section 5.2, pg 38
Motor neurone disease - non-invasive ventilation (July 2010)[93] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13057/49885/49885.pdf**	
Offer to discuss the possible use of non-invasive ventilation with the patient and (if the patient agrees) their family and carers, at an appropriate time and in a sensitive manner. This may be at one or more of the following times: • soon after MND is first diagnosed • when monitoring respiratory function • when respiratory function deteriorates • if the patient asks for information. (R 1.1.2)	Evidence Section 2.5.2, pg 91
Discussions should be appropriate to the stage of the patient's illness, carried out in a sensitive manner and include information on: • the possible symptoms and signs of respiratory impairment (see table 1 in recommendation 1.1.7) • the natural progression of MND and what to expect in the future • the purpose, nature and timing of respiratory function tests, and explanations of the test results • available interventions for managing respiratory impairment, including the benefits and limitations of each intervention • accessing and using respiratory equipment, including that for non-invasive ventilation • how non-invasive ventilation (as a treatment option) can improve symptoms associated with respiratory impairment and can be life prolonging, but does not stop progression of the underlying disease • how non-invasive ventilation can be withdrawn • palliative strategies as an alternative to non-invasive ventilation. (R 1.1.3)	Evidence Section 2.5.2, pg 85; section 2.5.3, pg 91-2
Provide the patient and their family and carers with support and assistance to manage non-invasive ventilation. This should include: • training on using non-invasive ventilation and ventilator interfaces, for example: − emergency procedures − night-time assistance if the patient is unable to use the equipment independently (for example, emergency removal or replacement of interfaces) − how to use the equipment with a wheelchair or other mobility aids if required − what to do if the equipment fails • assistance with secretion management • information on general palliative strategies • an offer of ongoing emotional and psychological support1 for the patient and their family and carers. (R 1.1.5)	Evidence Section 2.5.2 pg 85, section 2.5.3 91-2

Ensure that families and carers: • have an initial assessment if the patient they care for decides to use non-invasive ventilation, which should include: – their ability and willingness to assist in providing non-invasive ventilation – their training needs • have the opportunity to discuss any concerns they may have with members of the multidisciplinary team and/or other healthcare professionals. (R 1.1.6)	Consensus Section 2.5.2 pg 85
If any of the results listed in table 2 is obtained, discuss with the patient and (if the patient agrees) their family and carers: • the impact of respiratory impairment • treatment options • possible referral to a specialist respiratory service for further assessment. (R 1.1.15)	Consensus based on the evidence Section 2.2.3, page 47
Base decisions on respiratory function tests for a patient with a diagnosis of dementia on considerations specific to their needs and circumstances, such as: • their ability to give consent4 • their understanding of the tests • their tolerance of the tests and willingness to undertake them • the impact on their family and carers • whether they are capable of receiving non-invasive ventilation. (R 1.1.16)	Consensus Section 2.2.3, pg 50; section 2.3.4, pg 75
Offer a trial of non-invasive ventilation if the patient's symptoms and signs and the results of the respiratory function tests indicate that the patient is likely to benefit from the treatment. • Discuss both the benefits and limitations of the intervention with the patient and their family and carers. • Only consider a trial of non-invasive ventilation for a patient who has severe bulbar impairment or severe cognitive problems that may be related to respiratory impairment if they may benefit from an improvement in sleep-related symptoms or correction of hypoventilation. (R 1.1.17)	Evidence Section 2.3.4, pg 74
Before starting non-invasive ventilation, the multidisciplinary team should carry out and coordinate a patient-centred risk assessment, after discussion with the patient and their family and carers. This should consider: • the most appropriate type of non-invasive ventilator and interfaces, based on the patient's needs and lifestyle factors • the patient's tolerance of the treatment • the risk, and possible consequences, of ventilator failure • the power supply required, including battery back-up • how easily the patient can get to hospital • risks associated with travelling away from home (especially abroad)	Consensus Section 2.4.3, pg 77-8

• whether a humidifier is required • issues relating to secretion management • the availability of carers. (R 1.1.17)	
Before starting non-invasive ventilation, the multidisciplinary team should prepare a comprehensive care plan, after discussion with the patient and their family and carers (who should be offered a copy of the plan). This should cover: long-term support provided by the multidisciplinary team the initial frequency of respiratory function tests and monitoring of respiratory impairment the frequency of clinical reviews of symptomatic and physiological changes the provision of carers arrangements for device maintenance and 24-hour emergency clinical and technical support secretion management and respiratory physiotherapy assessment, including cough-assist therapy (if required) training in and support for the use of non-invasive ventilation for the patient and their family and carers regular opportunities to discuss the patient's wishes in relation to continuing or withdrawing non-invasive ventilation, and other end-of-life considerations (see also recommendations 1.1.24 and 1.1.25). (R 1.1.19)	Consensus Section 2.4.3, pg 78
Discuss all decisions to continue or withdraw non-invasive ventilation with the patient and (if the patient agrees) their family and carers. (R 1.1.22)	Evidence Section 2.5.2, pg 90
Offer to discuss end-of-life care with the patient and (if the patient agrees) their family and carers, at an appropriate time and in a sensitive manner. This may be at one or more of the following times: • around the time that MND is first diagnosed (but only if requested by the patient explicitly, or if the patient's clinical condition indicates that ventilator support will be needed in the immediate future) • when non-invasive ventilation is accepted or declined • when the patient is becoming increasingly dependent on non-invasive ventilation • if the patient asks for information. (R 1.1.24)	Consensus based on evidence Section 2.5.3, pg 92
Discussions about end-of-life care should include: • planning of end-of-life care • considering advance decisions to refuse treatment • considering what to do if non-invasive ventilation fails because of either: − an acute, but potentially reversible, deterioration in health or − irreversible disease progression • strategies to withdraw non-invasive ventilation if the patient wishes • the involvement of family and carers in decision making (with the patient's consent if they have the capacity to give it). (R	Consensus Section 2.5.3, pg 92

1.1.25)	
Alcohol-use disorders: physical complications (June 2010)[53] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13314/52667/52667.pdf - full guideline** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12995/48991/48991.pdf - NICE guideline**	
When considering liver biopsy for the investigation of alcohol-related liver disease: • take into account the small but definite risks of morbidity and mortality • discuss the benefits and risks with the patient and • ensure informed consent is obtained. (R 1.3.1.4)	Evidence Section 3.1.6, pg 120-1
For people who are alcohol dependent but not admitted to hospital, offer advice to avoid a sudden reduction in alcohol intake and information about how to contact local alcohol support services. (R 1.1.4)	Consensus Section 2.1.6, pg 31
Offer information about how to contact local alcohol support services to people who are being treated for acute alcohol withdrawal. (R 1.1.3.3)	Consensus Section 2.1.6, pg 31; section 2.2.6, pg 42
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (June 2010)[56] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13029/49425/49425.pdf - full guideline** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/13029/49397/49397.pdf - NICE guideline**	
Be aware of the potential risk of developing side effects (including non-fatal pneumonia) in people with COPD treated with inhaled corticosteroids and be prepared to discuss with patients. [new 2010] (R1.2.2.3)	Evidence Section 7.3.5, pg 131
Inhalers should be prescribed only after patients have received training in the use of the device and have demonstrated satisfactory technique. [2004] (R 1.2.2.3)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.3.7, pg 209
If nebuliser therapy is prescribed, the patient should be provided with equipment, servicing, advice and support. [2004] (R 1.2.2.23)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.3.7, pg 210
The following functions should be considered when defining the activity of the multidisciplinary team: assessing patients (including performing spirometry, assessing the need for oxygen, the need for aids for daily living and the appropriateness of delivery systems for inhaled therapy) care and treatment of patients (including non-invasive ventilation, pulmonary rehabilitation, hospital-at-home/early discharge schemes, providing palliative care, identifying and managing anxiety and depression, advising patients on relaxation techniques, dietary issues, exercise, social security benefits and travel) advising patients on self-management strategies	Consensus No details in GL

identifying and monitoring patients at high risk of exacerbations and undertaking activities which aim to avoid emergency admissions advising patients on exercise education of patients and other health professionals. [2004] (R 1.2.12.2)	
If patients have excessive sputum, they should be taught: the use of positive expiratory pressure masks active cycle of breathing techniques. [2004] (R 1.2.12.4)	Evidence Section 7.13.2, pg 308-9
Patients should be regularly asked about their ability to undertake activities of daily living and how breathless they become when doing these. [2004] (R 1.2.12.11)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.13.6, pg 333
Specific educational packages should be developed for patients with COPD. Suggested topics for inclusion are listed in appendix C of the full guideline (see section 5 for details of the full guideline). The packages should take account of the different needs of patients at different stages of their disease. [2004] (R 1.2.12.19)	Consensus Section 7.13.9, pg 339-40
Patients at risk of having an exacerbation of COPD should be given self-management advice that encourages them to respond promptly to the symptoms of an exacerbation. [2004] (R 1.2.12.21)	Evidence Section 7.13.10, pg 344
Patients should be encouraged to respond promptly to the symptoms of an exacerbation by: starting oral corticosteroid therapy if their increased breathlessness interferes with activities of daily living (unless contraindicated) starting antibiotic therapy if their sputum is purulent adjusting their bronchodilator therapy to control their symptoms. [2004] (R 1.2.12.22)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.13.10, pg 344
Patients' preferences about treatment at home or in hospital should be considered. [2004] (R 1.3.4.4)	Consensus Section 8.10, pg 361-2
Patients (or home carers) should be given appropriate information to enable them to fully understand the correct use of medications, including oxygen, before discharge. [2004] (R 1.3.11.5)	Consensus Section 8.17, pg 396
Arrangements for follow-up and home care (such as visiting nurse, oxygen delivery, referral for other support) should be made before discharge. [2004]	Consensus Section 8.17, pg 396
Before the patient is discharged, the patient, family and physician should be confident that he or she can manage successfully. When there is remaining doubt a formal activities of daily living assessment may be helpful. [2004] (R 1.3.11.7)	Consensus Section 8.17, pg 396
Lower urinary tract symptoms (June 2010)[58] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12984/48554/48554.pdf - full** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12984/48557/48557.pdf - NICE**	
Offer men with storage LUTS suggestive of overactive bladder (OAB) supervised bladder training, advice on fluid intake,	Consensus

lifestyle advice and, if needed, containment products. (R 1.3.4)	Section 5.5.2, pg 112
Offer supervised pelvic floor muscle training to men with stress urinary incontinence caused by prostatectomy. Advise them to continue the exercises for at least 3 months before considering other options. (R 1.3.6)	Evidence Section 5.2.2, pg 107
If offering long-term indwelling catheterisation, discuss the practicalities, benefits and risks with the man and, if appropriate, his carer. (R 1.3.12)	Consensus Section 5.10.2, pg 122
Ensure that, if appropriate, men's carers are informed and involved in managing their LUTS and can give feedback on treatments. (R 1.9.1)	Consensus Section 15.3.4, pg 323
Make sure men with LUTS have access to care that can help with: • their emotional and physical conditions and • relevant physical, emotional, psychological, sexual and social issues. (R 1.9.2)	Consensus Section 15.3.4, pg 324
Provide men with storage LUTS (particularly incontinence) containment products at point of need, and advice about relevant support groups. (R 1.9.3)	Consensus Section 15.3.4, pg 324
Chest pain of recent onset (March 2010)[54] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12947/47931/47931.pdf - full** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12947/47938/47938.pdf - NICE**	
Discuss any concerns people (and where appropriate their family or carer/advocate) may have, including anxiety when the cause of the chest pain is unknown. Correct any misinformation. (R 1.1.1.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1.4, pg 81
Offer people a clear explanation of the possible causes of their symptoms and the uncertainties. (R 1.1.1.2)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1.4, pg 81
Clearly explain the options to people at every stage of investigation. Make joint decisions with them and take account of their preferences: Encourage people to ask questions. Provide repeated opportunities for discussion. Explain test results and the need for any further investigations. (R 1.1.1.3)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1.4, pg 81
Provide information about any proposed investigations using everyday, jargon-free language. Include: their purpose, benefits and any limitations of their diagnostic accuracy duration level of discomfort and invasiveness risk of adverse events. (R 1.1.1.4)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1.4, pg 81

Offer information about the risks of diagnostic testing, including any radiation exposure. (R 1.1.1.5)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1.4, pg 81
Address any physical or learning difficulties, sight or hearing problems and difficulties with speaking or reading English, which may affect people's understanding of the information offered. (R 1.1.1.6)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1.4, pg 81
Offer information after diagnosis as recommended in the relevant disease management guidelines.(R 1.1.1.7)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1.4, pg 81
Provide individual advice to people about seeking medical help if they have further chest pain. (R 1.1.19)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1.4, pg 81
Unstable angina and NSTEMI (March 2010)[52] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12949/47988/47988.pdf** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12949/47921/47921.pdf**	
Offer patients clear information about the risks and benefits of the treatments offered so that they can make informed choices about management strategies. Information should be appropriate to the patient's underlying risk of a future adverse cardiovascular event and any comorbidities. (R 1.1.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.1.7, pg 195-8
Before discharge offer patients advice and information about: • their diagnosis and arrangements for follow-up (in line with 'MI: secondary prevention', NICE clinical guideline 48) • cardiac rehabilitation (in line with 'MI: secondary prevention', NICE clinical guideline 48) • management of cardiovascular risk factors and drug therapy for secondary prevention (in line with 'MI: secondary prevention', NICE clinical guideline 48, and 'Lipid modification', NICE clinical guideline 67) • lifestyle changes (in line with 'MI: secondary prevention', NICE clinical guideline 48). (R 1.5.10)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.7.6, pg 239-40
All patients who smoke should be advised to quit and be offered support and advice, and referral to an intensive support service (for example, the NHS Stop Smoking Services) in line with 'Brief interventions and referral for smoking cessation in primary care and other settings' (NICE public health guidance 1). (This recommendation is adapted from 'MI: secondary prevention', NICE clinical guideline 48.) (R 1.5.12)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.7.6, pg 239-40
Neuropathic pain - pharmacological management (March 2010)[94] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12948/47949/47949.pdf**	
Address the person's concerns and expectations when agreeing which treatments to use by discussing: • the benefits and possible adverse effects of each pharmacological treatment • why a particular pharmacological treatment is being offered • coping strategies for pain and for possible adverse effects of treatment • that non-pharmacological treatments are also available in non-specialist settings and/or through referral to specialist	Consensus based on evidence Section 2.5.6, pg 129

services (for example, surgical treatments and psychological therapies). (R 1.1.3)	
When selecting pharmacological treatments, take into account: • the person's vulnerability to specific adverse effects because of comorbidities • safety considerations and contraindications as detailed in the SPC • patient preference • lifestyle factors (such as occupation) • any mental health problems (such as depression and/or anxiety7 • any other medication the person is taking. (R 1.1.4)	Consensus Section 2.5.6, pg 129
Explain both the importance of dosage titration and the titration process, providing written information if possible. (R 1.1.5)	Evidence Section 2.5.3, pg 125; section 2.5.6, pg 129
If satisfactory pain reduction is not achieved with first-line treatment at the maximum tolerated dose, offer treatment with another drug instead of or in combination with the original drug, after informed discussion with the person. • If first-line treatment was with amitriptyline* (or imipramine* or nortriptyline*), switch to or combine with oral pregabalin. • If first-line treatment was with pregabalin, switch to or combine with oral amitriptyline* (or imipramine* or nortriptyline* as an alternative if amitriptyline* is effective but the person cannot tolerate the adverse effects; see recommendation 1.1.12). • For people with painful diabetic neuropathy: – if first-line treatment was with duloxetine, switch to amitriptyline* or pregabalin, or combine with pregabalin – if first-line treatment was with amitriptyline*, switch to or combine with pregabalin. Dosage and titration should be the same as in recommendation 1.1.10. (R 1.1.13)	Consensus for patient part of recommendation, evidence for intervention part of recommendation Section 2.5, pg 120-8
Donor breast milk banks (February 2010)[92] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12811/47545/47545.pdf**	
Conduct the screening interview, detailed in recommendations 1.2.12 and 1.2.13, with potential donors at a mutually acceptable time and place, either face-to-face or by telephone. (R 1.2.15)	Consensus based on evidence Section 2.6.4, pg 38
Use clear, non-technical language when communicating the use of donor milk and the process of donor milk banking in any written information and activities (Rec 1.2.10 p33)	Evidence Section 2.5.3, pg 30
Provide ongoing support to all donors according to their individual needs until no longer required. This may include: information and ongoing support on milk bank requirements for their diet and alcohol consumption continued support for collecting expressed milk and maintaining lactation emotional support. (R 1.1.28)	Evidence Section 2.8.3, pg 45
Provide donors who are stopping their breast milk donations with as much advice and support as needed. (R 1.2.3.4)	Consensus No details in GL

Actively encourage donors to hand express milk; however, accept pump-expressed milk if donors prefer this method. (R 1.2.3.7)	Evidence Section 2.10.3, pg 53-4
Venous thromboembolism - reducing the risk (March 2010)[60] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12695/47920/47920.pdf** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12695/47195/47195.pdf**	
Be aware that heparins are of animal origin and this may be of concern to some patients. For patients who have concerns about using animal products, consider offering synthetic alternatives based on clinical judgement and after discussing their suitability, advantages and disadvantages with the patient. (R 1.7.1)	Consensus No details in GL
Before starting VTE prophylaxis, offer patients and/or their families or carers verbal and written information on: the risks and possible consequences of VTE the importance of VTE prophylaxis and its possible side effects the correct use of VTE prophylaxis (for example, anti-embolism stockings, foot impulse or intermittent pneumatic compression devices). how patients can reduce their risk of VTE (such as keeping well hydrated and, if possible, exercising and becoming more mobile). (R 1.7.2)	Evidence Section 32.5, pg 441-2
As part of the discharge plan, offer patients and/or their families or carers verbal and written information on: the signs and symptoms of deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism the correct and recommended duration of use of VTE prophylaxis at home (if discharged with prophylaxis) the importance of using VTE prophylaxis correctly and continuing treatment for the recommended duration (if discharged with prophylaxis) the signs and symptoms of adverse events related to VTE prophylaxis (if discharged with prophylaxis) the importance of seeking help and who to contact if they have any problems using the prophylaxis (if discharged with prophylaxis) the importance of seeking medical help and who to contact if deep vein thrombosis, pulmonary embolism or other adverse events are suspected. (R 1.7.3)	Evidence Section 32.6, pg 444-5
Ensure that patients who are discharged with anti-embolism stockings: understand the benefits of wearing them understand the need for daily hygiene removal are able to remove and replace them, or have someone available who will be able to do this for them know what to look for, such as skin marking, blistering or discolouration, particularly over the heels and bony prominences know who to contact if there is a problem. (R 1.7.4)	Evidence Section 32.6, pg 444-5

Ensure that patients who are discharged with pharmacological and/or mechanical VTE prophylaxis are able to use it correctly, or have arrangements made for someone to be available who will be able to help them. (R 1.7.5)	Evidence Section 32.6, pg 444-5
Skin tumours including melanoma (May 2010)[68] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/10901/48878/48878.pdf**	
All healthcare professionals managing BCCs in the community should provide information, advice and support for patients and their families or carers.	Consensus Section 5 pg 43
2009	
Medicines adherence: involving patients in decisions about prescribed medicines and supporting adherence (January 2009)[79] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11766/42971/42971.pdf** **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11766/43042/43042.pdf**	
Healthcare professionals should adapt their consultation style to the needs of individual patients so that all patients have the opportunity to be involved in decisions about their medicines at the level they wish. (R 1.1.1)	Consensus Section 4.15.1; Page 131
Consider any factors such as physical or learning disabilities, sight or hearing problems and difficulties with reading or speaking English, which may affect the patient's involvement in the consultation. (R 1.1.2)	Consensus Section 4.8.1; Page 92
Establish the most effective way of communicating with each patient and, if necessary, consider ways of making information accessible and understandable (for example, using pictures, symbols, large print, different languages, an interpreter or a patient advocate). (R 1.1.3)	Evidence Section 4.9.1; Page 101
Encourage patients to ask about their condition and treatment. (R 1.1.4)	Consensus based Section 4.8.1; Page 92
Ask patients open-ended questions because these are more likely to uncover patients' concerns. (R 1.1.5)	Evidence Section 7.3.3; Page 186
Offer all patients the opportunity to be involved in making decisions about prescribed medicines. Establish what level of involvement in decision-making the patient would like. (R 1.1.7)	Consensus Section 4.5.1; Page 69
Discuss with the patient why they might benefit from the treatment. Clearly explain the disease or condition and how the medicine will influence this. (R 1.1.8)	Consensus Section 4.5.1; Page 69
Explain the medical aims of the treatment to patients and openly discuss the pros and cons of proposed medicines. The discussion should be at the level preferred by the patient. (R 1.1.9)	Evidence Section 4.10.2.2; Page 112
Clarify what the patient hopes the treatment will achieve. (R 1.1.10)	Consensus Section 4.8.1; Page 92
Avoid making assumptions about patient preferences about treatment. Talk to the patient to find out their preferences, and	Consensus

note any non-verbal cues that may indicate you need to explore the patient's perspective further. (R 1.1.11)	Section 4.5.1; Page 69
Healthcare professionals have a duty to help patients to make decisions about their treatment based on an understanding of the likely benefits and risks rather than on misconceptions. (R 1.1.12)	Consensus based on external guidance Section 3.4; Page 54
Accept that the patient has the right to decide not to take a medicine, even if you do not agree with the decision, as long as the patient has the capacity to make an informed decision and has been provided with the information needed to make such a decision. (R 1.1.15)	Consensus based on external guidance Section 3.4; Page 54
Encourage and support patients, families and carers to keep an up-to-date list of all medicines the patient is taking. The list should include the names and dosages of prescription and non-prescription medicines and herbal and nutritional supplements. If the patient has any allergic or adverse reactions to medicines, these should be noted. (R 1.1.18)	Consensus based on external report Section 6.3.3; Page 177
Be aware that patients' concerns about medicines, and whether they believe they need them, affect how and whether they take their prescribed medicines (R 1.1.19)	Evidence
Ask patients what they know, believe and understand about medicines before prescribing new treatments and when reviewing medicines. (R 1.1.20)	Evidence Section 5.3.1; Page 156
Ask if the patient has any specific concerns about their medicines, whenever you prescribe, dispense or review medicines. These may include concerns about becoming dependent on medicines and concerns about adverse effects. Address these concerns. (R 1.1.21)	Evidence Section 5.3.1; Page 156
Be aware that patients may wish to discuss: • what will happen if they do not take the medicine suggested by their healthcare professional • non-pharmacological alternatives to medicines • how to reduce and stop medicines they may have been taking for a long time, particularly those known to be associated with withdrawal symptoms • how to fit taking the medicine into their daily routine • how to make a choice between medicines if they believe they are taking too many medicines. (R 1.1.23)	Evidence Section 5.3.4; Page 159
Offer patients information about medicines before the medicines are prescribed. (R 1.1.24)	Evidence Section 4.10.2.2; Page 111
Offer patients information that is relevant to their condition, possible treatments and personal circumstances, and that is easy to understand and free from jargon. (R 1.1.25)	Evidence Section 4.10.2.1; Page 105
Discuss information on medicines with the patient rather than just presenting it. The discussion should take into account what the patient understands and believes about the condition and treatment. (R 1.1.27)	Consensus Section 3.3; Page 54
Do not assume that the patient information leaflets (PILs) that patients receive with their medicines will meet each patient's needs. Address concerns that patients may have after reading the standard PILs. (R 1.1.28)	Consensus Section 4.10.1; Page 104

Patients differ in the type and amount of information they need and want. Therefore the provision of information should be individualised and is likely to include, but not be limited to: what the medicine is how the medicine is likely to affect their condition (that is, its benefits) (R 1.1.29)	Consensus Section 4.10.1; Page 104
Be careful not to make assumptions about a patient's ability to understand the information provided. Check with the patient that they have understood the information. Information for patients should be clear and logical and, if possible, tailored to the needs of the individual patient. (R 1.1.30)	Consensus Section 4.10.1; Page 104
Suggest where patients might find reliable information and support after the consultation: for example, by providing written information or directing them to other resources (for example, NHS Choices [www.nhs.uk]). (R 1.1.31)	Consensus Section 4.10.1; Page 104
Provide inpatients with the same information as patients in other settings. Information should include: • what the medicine is • how the medicine is likely to affect their condition (that is, its benefits) • likely or significant adverse effects and what to do if they think they are experiencing them • how to use the medicine • what to do if they miss a dose • whether further courses of the medicine will be needed after the first prescription • how to get further supply after discharge. (R 1.1.32)	Consensus Section 6.3.1; Page 176
Be aware that although adherence can be improved, no specific intervention can be recommended for all patients. Tailor any intervention to increase adherence to the specific difficulties with adherence the patient is experiencing. (R 1.2.5)	Consensus Section 8.4; Page 207
Find out what form of support the patient would prefer to increase their adherence to medicines. Together, you and your patient should consider options for support. (R 1.2.6)	Consensus Section 8.10.1; Page 238
Address any beliefs and concerns that patients have that result in reduced adherence. (R 1.2.7)	Consensus Section 8.4; Page 205
Side effects can be a problem for some patients. If this is the case you should: discuss how the patient would like to deal with side effects discuss the benefits, side effects and long-term effects with the patient to allow them to make an informed choice consider adjusting the dosage consider switching to another medicine with a different risk of side effects consider what other strategies might be used (for example, timing of medicines). (R 1.2.9)	Consensus based on evidence Section 8.11.1; Page 248
Review patient knowledge, understanding and concerns about medicines, and a patient's view of their need for medicine at intervals agreed with the patient, because these may change over time. Offer repeat information and review to patients,	Consensus based on evidence

especially when treating long-term conditions with multiple medicines. (R 1.3.1)	Section 9.3.1; Page 292
Review at regular intervals the decision to prescribe medicines, according to patient choice and need. (R 1.3.2)	Consensus Section 9.3.1; Page 293
Be aware that patients sometimes evaluate prescribed medicines using their own criteria such as their understanding of their condition or the symptoms most troubling to them. They may, for example, stop and start the medicine or alter the dose and check how this affects their symptoms. Ask the patient whether they have done this. (R 1.3.4)	Consensus Section 9.3.1; Page 292
Breast cancer (advanced)[65] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11778/43305/43305.pdf**	
Assess the patient's individual preference for the level and type of information. Reassess this as circumstances change. (R 1.2.1)	Evidence Section 3; Page 13
On the basis of this assessment, offer patients consistent, relevant information and clear explanations, and provide opportunities for patients to discuss issues and ask questions. (R 1.2.2)	Evidence Section 3; Page 13
Assess the patient's individual preference for how much they wish to be involved in decision making. Reassess this as circumstances change. (R 1.2.3)	Evidence Section 3; Page 14
Be aware of the value of decision aids and the range available. Make the most appropriate decision aid available to the patient. (R 1.2.4)	Evidence Section 3; Page 14
Healthcare professionals involved in the care of patients with advanced breast cancer should ensure that the organisation and provision of supportive care services comply with the recommendations made in 'Improving outcomes in breast cancer: manual update' (NICE cancer service guidance [2002]) and 'Improving supportive and palliative care for adults with cancer' (NICE cancer service guidance [2004]), in particular the following two recommendations: • 'Assessment and discussion of patients' needs for physical, psychological, social, spiritual and financial support should be undertaken at key points (such as diagnosis; at commencement, during, and at the end of treatment; at relapse; and when death is approaching).' • 'Mechanisms should be developed to promote continuity of care, which might include the nomination of a person to take on the role of "key worker" for individual patients.' (R 1.4.1)	Consensus Section 5.2; Page 37
Provide patients with lymphoedema with clear, written information and the contact details of local and national lymphoedema support groups. (R 1.5.5)	Consensus Section 6.1; Page 40
Provide clear, written information about cancer-related fatigue, organisations that offer psychosocial support and patient-led groups. (R 1.5.7)	Consensus based on evidence Section 6.2; Page 41
A palliative care team should assess all patients with uncontrolled local disease in order to plan a symptom management strategy and provide psychological support. (R 1.5.11)	Consensus based on evidence Section 6.3; Page 43

Breast cancer (early & locally advanced)[66] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12132/43312/43312.pdf**	
All members of the breast cancer clinical team should have completed an accredited communication skills training programme. (R 1.2.1)	Evidence Section 2.5; Page 24
All patients with breast cancer should be assigned to a named breast care nurse specialist who will support them throughout diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. (R 1.2.2)	Evidence Section 2.5; Page 24
All patients with breast cancer should be offered prompt access to specialist psychological support, and, where appropriate, psychiatric services. (R 1.2.3)	Evidence Section 2.5; Page 24
Decisions about adjuvant therapy should be made based on assessment of the prognostic and predictive factors, the potential benefits and side effects of the treatment. Decisions should be made following discussion of these factors with the patient. (R 1.6.6)	Consensus Section 4.3; Page 50
The choice of treatment should be made after discussion between the responsible clinician and the woman about the risks and benefits of each option. Factors to consider when making the choice include whether the woman has received tamoxifen before, the licensed indications and side-effect profiles of the individual drugs and, in particular, the assessed risk of recurrence11. (R 1.7.7)	Consensus based on external guidance (NICE TA) Section 5.2; Page 60, TA recommendation decision in TA is based on consensus (TA 112: Section 4.3.10; Page 26)
Offer adjuvant radiotherapy to patients with DCIS following adequate breast conserving surgery and discuss with them the potential benefits and risks (see recommendation in section 1.3.1) (R 1.11.2)	Consensus based on evidence Section 6.2; Page 73
Offer information and counselling for all women about the possibility of early menopause and menopausal symptoms associated with breast cancer treatment. (R 1.13.10)	Consensus Section 8.3; Page 93
Rheumatoid arthritis[72] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12131/43327/43327.pdf**	
Explain the risks and benefits of treatment options to people with RA in ways that can be easily understood. Throughout the course of their disease, offer them the opportunity to talk about and agree all aspects of their care, and respect the decisions they make. (R 1.2.11)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.1.6, p61
Offer verbal and written information to people with RA to: • improve their understanding of the condition and its management, and • counter any misconceptions they may have. (R 1.2.1.2)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.2.6, p68/9
People with RA who wish to know more about their disease and its management should be offered the opportunity to take	Consensus based on evidence

part in existing educational activities, including self-management programmes. (R 1.2.1.3)	Section 5.2.6, p68/9
People with RA should have ongoing access to a multidisciplinary team. This should provide the opportunity for periodic assessments (see 1.5.1.3 and 1.5.1.4) of the effect of the disease on their lives (such as pain, fatigue, everyday activities, mobility, ability to work or take part in social or leisure activities, quality of life, mood, impact on sexual relationships) and help to manage the condition. (R 1.3.1.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 6.1.6, p75/6; and section 5.1.6, p61
People with RA should have access to a named member of the multidisciplinary team (for example, the specialist nurse) who is responsible for coordinating their care. (R 1.3.1.2)	Consensus Section 6.1.6, p75/6
People with RA should have access to specialist occupational therapy, with periodic review (see 1.5.1.3 and 1.5.1.4), if they have: • difficulties with any of their everyday activities, or • problems with hand function.(R 1.3.1.4)	Evidence Section 6.3.7, p94/5
Offer psychological interventions (for example, relaxation, stress management and cognitive coping skills3 (R 1.3.1.5)	Evidence Section 6.3.7, p94/5
All people with RA and foot problems should have access to a podiatrist for assessment and periodic review of their foot health needs (see 1.5.1.3 and 1.5.1.4).) to help people with RA adjust to living with their condition. (R 1.3.1.6)	Consensus based on evidence Section 6.4.6, p99
Offer people with satisfactorily controlled established RA review appointments at a frequency and location suitable to their needs. In addition, make sure they: • have access to additional visits for disease flares, • know when and how to get rapid access to specialist care, and • have ongoing drug monitoring. (R 1.5.1.3)	Consensus Section 8.2.5, p188/9
Offer people with RA an annual review to: • assess disease activity and damage, and measure functional ability (using, for example, the Health Assessment Questionnaire [HAQ]) • check for the development of comorbidities, such as hypertension, ischaemic heart disease, osteoporosis and depression • assess symptoms that suggest complications, such as vasculitis and disease of the cervical spine, lung or eyes • organise appropriate cross referral within the multidisciplinary team • assess the need for referral for surgery (see section 1.6) • assess the effect the disease is having on a person's life. (R 1.5.1.4)	Consensus based on evidence Section 8.2.5, p188/9 and section 5.1.6, p61
Critical illness rehabilitation[88] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12137/43526/43526.pdf**	
To ensure continuity of care, healthcare professional(s) with the appropriate competencies1	Consensus based on evidence

• Ensure the short-term and medium-term rehabilitation goals are reviewed, agreed and updated throughout the patient's rehabilitation care pathway. should coordinate the patient's rehabilitation care pathway. Key elements of the coordination are as follows. • Ensure the delivery of the structured and supported self-directed rehabilitation manual, when applicable. • Liaise with primary/community care for the functional reassessment at 2–3 months after the patient's discharge from critical care. • Ensure information, including documentation, is communicated between hospitals and to other hospital-based or community rehabilitation services and primary care services. • Give patients the contact details of the healthcare professional(s) on discharge from critical care, and again on discharge from hospital. (R 1.1.1)	Section 2.2.4; Page 49
For patients at risk, agree short-term and medium-term rehabilitation goals, based on the comprehensive clinical assessment. The patient's family and/or carer should also be involved2. (R 1.1.4)	Consensus Section 2.1.4; Page 36
For patients at risk, start rehabilitation as early as clinically possible, based on the comprehensive clinical assessment and the rehabilitation goals. Rehabilitation should include: • measures to prevent avoidable physical and non-physical morbidity, including a review of previous and current medication • nutrition support, based on the recommendations in 'Nutrition support in adults' (NICE clinical guideline 32) • an individualised, structured rehabilitation programme with frequent follow-up reviews. The details of the structured rehabilitation programme and the reviews should be collated and documented in the patient's clinical records. (R 1.1.6)	Consensus Section 2.2.4; Page 49
Give patients the following information during their critical care stay. Also give the information to their family and/or carer3 • Information about the patient's critical illness, interventions and treatments. , unless the patient disagrees. • Information about the equipment used during the patient's critical care stay. • If applicable, information about any possible short-term and/or long-term physical and non-physical problems which may require rehabilitation. Deliver all the above information more than once during the patient's critical care stay. (R 1.1.7)	Evidence Section 2.3.3; Page 62
For patients at risk, and patients who started the individualised, structured rehabilitation programme in critical care, perform a comprehensive clinical reassessment to identify their current rehabilitation needs. The comprehensive reassessment should pay particular attention to: • physical, sensory and communication problems (see table 2) • underlying factors, such as pre-existing psychological or psychiatric distress • symptoms that have developed during the critical care stay, such as delusions, intrusive memories, anxiety, panic episodes, nightmares, flashback episodes or depression. (R 1.1.9)	Consensus Section 2.1.4; Page 36
For patients who were previously identified as being at risk during critical care, the outcomes of the comprehensive	Consensus

reassessment should inform the individualised, structured rehabilitation programme (recommendation 1.1.6). (R 1.1.10)	Section 2.1.4; Page 37
For patients at risk, agree or review and update the rehabilitation goals, based on the comprehensive reassessment. The family and/or carer should also be involved, unless the patient disagrees. (R 1.1.11)	Consensus Section 2.1.4; Page 37
Ensure that the transfer of patients and the formal structured handover of their care are in line with 'Acutely ill patients in hospital' (NICE clinical guideline 50). This should include the formal handover of the individualised, structured rehabilitation programme. (R 1.1.12)	Consensus Section 2.3.4; Page 64
Give patients the following information before, or as soon as possible after, their discharge from critical care. Also give the information to their family and/or carer, unless the patient disagrees. • Information about the rehabilitation care pathway. • Information about the differences between critical care and ward-based care. This should include information about the differences in the environment, and staffing and monitoring levels. • Information about the transfer of clinical responsibility to a different medical team (this includes information about the formal structured handover of care recommended in 'Acutely ill patients in hospital' (NICE clinical guideline 50). • If applicable, emphasise the information about possible short-term and/or long-term physical and non-physical problems that may require rehabilitation. • If applicable, information about sleeping problems, nightmares and hallucinations and the readjustment to ward-based care. (R 1.1.13)	Consensus based on evidence Section 2.3.4; Page 63
Give patients the following information before their discharge to home or community care. Also give the information to their family and/or carer, if the patient agrees. • Information about their physical recovery, based on the goals set during ward-based care if applicable. • If applicable, information about diet and any other continuing treatments. • Information about how to manage activities of daily living including self-care and re-engaging with everyday life. • If applicable, information about driving, returning to work, housing and benefits. • Information about local statutory and non-statutory support services, such as support groups. • General guidance, especially for the family and/or carer, on what to expect and how to support the patient at home. This should take into account both the patient's needs and the family's/carer's needs. • Give the patient their own copy of the critical care discharge summary. (R 1.1.22)	Based on qualitative evidence and consensus Section 2.3.4; Page 63
The functional reassessment should be face to face in the community or in hospital, performed by an appropriately-skilled healthcare professional(s) who is familiar with the patient's critical care problems and rehabilitation care pathway. (R 1.1.24)	Consensus Section 2.1.4; Page 37
Based on the functional reassessment. • Refer the patient to the appropriate rehabilitation or specialist services if:	Consensus Section 2.2.4; Page 50

– the patient appears to be recovering at a slower rate than anticipated, according to their rehabilitation goals, or – the patient has developed unanticipated physical and/or non-physical morbidity that was not previously identified. • Give support if the patient is not recovering as quickly as they anticipated. • If anxiety or depression is suspected, follow the stepped care models recommended in 'Anxiety' (NICE clinical guideline 22) and 'Depression' (NICE clinical guideline 23). • If PTSD is suspected or the patient has significant symptoms of PTS, refer to 'Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)' (NICE clinical guideline 26). (R 1.1.25)	
Glaucoma[62] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12145/43839/43839.pdf**	
Discuss the benefits and risks of stopping treatment with people with OHT or suspected COAG who have both: • a low risk of ever developing visual impairment within their lifetime • an acceptable IOP. If a person decides to stop treatment following discussion of the perceived risks of future conversion to COAG and sight loss, offer to assess their IOP in 1 to 4 months' time with further monitoring if considered clinically necessary. (R 1.2.11)	Consensus Section 5.6.2; Page 102
Offer people the opportunity to discuss their diagnosis, prognosis and treatment, and provide them with relevant information in an accessible format at initial and subsequent visits. This may include information on the following: • their specific condition (OHT, suspected COAG and COAG), its life-long implications and their prognosis for retention of sight • that COAG in the early stages and OHT and suspected COAG are symptomless • that most people treated for COAG will not go blind • that once lost, sight cannot be recovered • that glaucoma can run in families and that family members may wish to be tested for the disease • the importance of the person's role in their own treatment – for example, the ongoing regular application of eye drops to preserve sight • the different types of treatment options, including mode of action, frequency and severity of side effects, and risks and benefits of treatment, so that people are able to be active in the decision-making process • how to apply eye drops, including technique (punctal occlusion and devices) and hygiene (storage) • the need for regular monitoring as specified by the healthcare professional • methods of investigation during assessment • how long each appointment is likely to take and whether the person will need any help to attend (for example, driving soon after pupil dilatation would be inadvisable) • support groups • compliance aids (such as dispensers) available from their community pharmacist	Consensus Section 11.1.2; Page 244

• Letter of Vision Impairment (LVI), Referral of Vision Impairment (RVI) and Certificate of Vision Impairment (CVI) registration • Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency (DVLA) regulations. (R 1.6.1)	
Coeliac disease[87] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12166/44356/44356.pdf**	
No specific recommendations identified.	
Low back pain[78] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11887/44343/44343.pdf**	
Provide people with advice and information to promote self-management of their low back pain. (R 1.2.1)	Consensus Section 5.2.3; Page 67
Offer educational advice that: • includes information on the nature of non-specific low back pain • encourages the person to be physically active and continue with normal activities as far as possible. (R 1.2.2)	Consensus Section 5.2.3; Page 67
Include an educational component consistent with this guideline as part of other interventions, but do not offer stand-alone formal education programmes. (R 1.2.3)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.2.3; Page 67
Take into account the person's expectations and preferences when considering recommended treatments, but do not use their expectations and preferences to predict their response to treatments. (R 1.2.4)	Consensus Section 5.2.3; Page 67
Offer one of the following treatment options, taking into account patient preference: an exercise programme (see section 1.3.3), a course of manual therapy (see section 1.4.1) or a course of acupuncture (see section 1.6.1). Consider offering another of these options if the chosen treatment does not result in satisfactory improvement. (R 1.2.5)	Consensus Section 1.2.5; Page 4
Base decisions on continuation of medications on individual response. (R 1.8.9)	Consensus Section 11.2.9; Page 192
Type 2 Diabetes - newer agents (partial update of CG66)[90] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12165/44320/44320.pdf**	
Offer structured education to every person and/or their carer at and around the time of diagnosis, with annual reinforcement and review. Inform people and their carers that structured education is an integral part of diabetes care. (R 1.1.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.1.4; Page 29
Select a patient-education programme that meets the criteria laid down by the Department of Health and Diabetes UK Patient Education Working Group3. Any programme should be evidence-based and suit the needs of the individual. The programme should have specific aims and learning objectives, and should support development of self-management attitudes, beliefs, knowledge and skills for the learner, their family and carers. The programme should have a structured curriculum that is theory driven and evidence-based, resource-effective, has supporting materials, and is written down. The programme should be delivered by trained educators who have an understanding of education theory appropriate to the age and needs of the	Consensus based on evidence Section 5.1.4; Page 28

programme learners, and are trained and competent in delivery of the principles and content of the programme they are offering. The programme itself should be quality assured, and be reviewed by trained, competent, independent assessors who assess it against key criteria to ensure sustained consistency. The outcomes from the programme should be regularly audited. (R 1.1.2)	
Offer group education programmes as the preferred option. Provide an alternative of equal standard for a person unable or unwilling to participate in group education. (R 1.1.4)	Consensus Section 5.1.4; Page 29
Ensure the patient-education programmes available meet the cultural, linguistic, cognitive and literacy needs in the locality. (R 1.1.5)	Consensus Section 5.1.4; Page 29
2008	
Irritable bowel syndrome[74] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11927/39622/39622.pdf**	
People with IBS should be given information that explains theimportance of self-help in effectively managing their IBS. This should include information on general lifestyle, physical activity, diet and symptom-targeted medication. (R 1.2.1.1)	Evidence Section 11.3; Page 520
Healthcare professionals should assess the physical activity levels of people with IBS, ideally using the General Practice Physical Activity Questionnaire (GPPAQ; see appendix J of the full guideline). People with low activity levels should be given brief advice and counselling to encourage them to increase their activity levels. (R 1.2.1.3)	Consensus for patient part of recommendation, evidence for intervention part of recommendation Section 7.2; Page 143
Osteoarthritis[70] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11926/39557/39557.pdf**	
People with symptomatic osteoarthritis should have periodic review tailored to their individual needs. (R 1.1.2)	Consensus Section 4.1.1, p25
Healthcare professionals should formulate a management plan in partnership with the person with osteoarthritis. (R 1.1.3)	Consensus Section 4.1.1, p25
Healthcare professionals should offer all people with clinically symptomatic osteoarthritis advice on the following core treatments. •Access to appropriate information (see section 1.2.1). •Activity and exercise (see section 1.3.1). •Interventions to achieve weight loss if person is overweight or obese (see section 1.3.2 and 'Obesity' [NICE clinical guideline 43]). (R 1.1.5)	Consensus based on evidence Section 4.1.1, p25; section 5.1.4 and section 6.1.11
The risks and benefits of treatment options, taking into account comorbidities, should be communicated to the patient in ways that can be understood. (R 1.1.6)	Consensus Section 4.1.1, p25

Healthcare professionals should offer accurate verbal and written information to all people with osteoarthritis to enhance understanding of the condition and its management, and to counter misconceptions, such as that it inevitably progresses and cannot be treated. Information sharing should be an ongoing, integral part of the management plan rather than a single event at time of presentation. (R 1.1.2.1)	Consensus Section 5.1.4, p45/6
Individualised self-management strategies should be agreed between healthcare professionals and the person with osteoarthritis. Positive behavioural changes, such as exercise, weight loss, use of suitable footwear and pacing, should be appropriately targeted. (R 1.2.2.1)	Consensus Section 5.2.3, p46/7
Self-management programmes, either individually or in groups, should emphasise the recommended core treatments (see recommendation 1.1.5) for people with osteoarthritis, especially exercise. (R 1.2.2.2)	Consensus Section 5.2.3, p46/7
Decisions on referral thresholds should be based on discussions between patient representatives, referring clinicians and surgeons, rather than using current scoring tools for prioritisation. (R 1.5.1.4)	Consensus based on evidence Section 8.1.7, p296
Prostate cancer[64] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11924/39626/39626.pdf**	
The recommendations on communication and patient-centred care made in the two NICE cancer service guidance documents 'Improving outcomes in urological cancers' (2002) and 'Improving supportive and palliative care for adults with cancer' (2004) should be followed throughout the patient journey. (R 1.1.1)	Consensus Section 2.2; Page 8
Men with prostate cancer should be offered individualised information tailored to their own needs. This information should be given by a healthcare professional (for example, a consultant or specialist nurse) and may be supported by written and visual media (for example, slide sets or DVDs). (R 1.1.2)	Consensus Section 2.2; Page 9
Men with prostate cancer should be offered advice on how to access information and support from websites (for example, UK Prostate Link – www.prostate-link.org.uk), local and national cancer information services, and from cancer support groups. (R 1.1.3)	Consensus Section 2.2; Page 9
Healthcare professionals should seek feedback from men with prostate cancer and their carers to identify the highest quality information resources. (R 1.1.5)	Consensus Section 2.2; Page 9
Healthcare professionals caring for men with prostate cancer should ascertain the extent to which the man wishes to be involved in decision making and ensure that he has sufficient information to do so. (R 1.1.6)	Consensus Section 2.2; Page 9
A validated, up-to-date decision aid is recommended for use in all urological cancer multidisciplinary teams (MDTs). It should be offered to men with localised prostate cancer when making treatment decisions, by healthcare professionals trained in its use3. (R 1.1.7)	Evidence Section 2.3; Page 10
Healthcare professionals should discuss all relevant management options recommended in this guideline with men with prostate cancer and their partners or carers, irrespective of whether they are available through local services. (R 1.1.8)	Consensus Section 2.3; Page 10

Healthcare professionals should ensure that mechanisms are in place to allow men with prostate cancer and their primary care providers to gain access to specialist services throughout the course of their disease. (R 1.1.9)	Consensus Section 2.4; Page 10
Healthcare professionals should adequately inform men with prostate cancer and their partners or carers about the effects of prostate cancer and the treatment options on their sexual function, physical appearance, continence and other aspects of masculinity. Healthcare professionals should support men and their partners or carers in making treatment decisions, taking into account the effects on quality of life as well as survival. (R 1.1.10)	Consensus based on evidence Section 2.4; Page 11
Healthcare professionals should offer men with prostate cancer and their partners or carers the opportunity to talk to a healthcare professional experienced in dealing with psychosexual issues at any stage of the illness and its treatment. (R 1.1.11)	Consensus based on evidence Section 2.4; Page 11
To help men decide whether to have a prostate biopsy, healthcare professionals should discuss with them their PSA level, DRE findings (including an estimate of prostate size) and comorbidities, together with their risk factors (including increasing age and black African or black Caribbean ethnicity) and any history of a previous negative prostate biopsy. The serum PSA level alone should not automatically lead to a prostate biopsy. (R 1.2.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1; Page 14
Men and their partners or carers should be given information, support and adequate time to decide whether or not they wish to undergo prostate biopsy. The information should include an explanation of the risks (including the increased chance of having to live with the diagnosis of clinically insignificant prostate cancer) and benefits of prostate biopsy. (R 1.2.2)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1; Page 14
Men should decide whether or not to have a re-biopsy following a negative biopsy, having had the risks and benefits explained to them. (R 1.2.6)	Consensus Section 3.2; Page 15
The decision to proceed from an active surveillance regimen to radical treatment should be made in the light of the individual man's personal preferences, comorbidities and life expectancy. (R 1.3.10)	Consensus Section 4.4; Page 25
Healthcare professionals should discuss personal preferences for palliative care as early as possible with men with metastatic prostate cancer, their partners and carers. Treatment/care plans should be tailored accordingly and the preferred place of care should be identified. (R 1.7.2.6)	Consensus based on evidence Section 7.13; Page 67
Antenatal care[80] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11947/40115/40115.pdf**	
Antenatal information should be given to pregnant women according to the following schedule. • At the first contact with a healthcare professional: − folic acid supplementation − food hygiene, including how to reduce the risk of a food-acquired infection − lifestyle advice, including smoking cessation, and the implications of recreational drug use and alcohol consumption in pregnancy − all antenatal screening, including screening for haemoglobinopathies, the anomaly scan and screening for Down's syndrome,	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.3.2; Page 64

as well as risks and benefits of the screening tests. • At booking (ideally by 10 weeks): − how the baby develops during pregnancy − nutrition and diet, including vitamin D supplementation for women at risk of vitamin D deficiency, and details of the 'Healthy Start' programme (www.healthystart.nhs.uk) − exercise, including pelvic floor exercises − place of birth (refer to 'Intrapartum care' [NICE clinical guideline 55], available from www.nice.org.uk/CG055) − pregnancy care pathway − breastfeeding, including workshops − participant-led antenatal classes − further discussion of all antenatal screening − discussion of mental health issues (refer to 'Antenatal and postnatal mental health' [NICE clinical guideline 45], available from www.nice.org.uk/CG045). • Before or at 36 weeks: − breastfeeding information, including technique and good management practices that would help a woman succeed, such as detailed in the UNICEF 'Baby Friendly Initiative' (www.babyfriendly.org.uk) − preparation for labour and birth, including information about coping with pain in labour and the birth plan − recognition of active labour − care of the new baby − vitamin K prophylaxis − newborn screening tests − postnatal self-care − awareness of 'baby blues' and postnatal depression. • At 38 weeks: − options for management of prolonged pregnancy1 (R 1.1.1.1)	
Information should be given in a form that is easy to understand and accessible to pregnant women with additional needs, such as physical, sensory or learning disabilities, and to pregnant women who do not speak or read English. (R 1.1.1.2)	Consensus Section 3.3.2; Page 64
Information can also be given in other forms such as audiovisual or touch-screen technology; this should be supported by written information. (R 1.1.1.3)	Evidence Section 3.3.2; Page 64
Pregnant women should be offered information based on the current available evidence together with support to enable them to make informed decisions about their care. This information should include where they will be seen and who will undertake their care. (R 1.1.1.4)	Consensus Section 3.3.2; Page 64

At each antenatal appointment, healthcare professionals should offer consistent information and clear explanations, and should provide pregnant women with an opportunity to discuss issues and ask questions. (R 1.1.1.5)	Consensus Section 3.3.2; Page 64
Pregnant women should be offered opportunities to attend participant-led antenatal classes, including breastfeeding workshops. (R 1.1.16)	Evidence Section 3.3.2; Page 64
Women's decisions should be respected, even when this is contrary to the views of the healthcare professional. (R 1.1.17)	Consensus Section 3.3.2; Page 64
Pregnant women should be informed about the purpose of any test before it is performed. The healthcare professional should ensure the woman has understood this information and has sufficient time to make an informed decision. The right of a woman to accept or decline a test should be made clear. (R 1.1.1.8)	Consensus Section 3.3.2; Page 64
Information about antenatal screening should be provided in a setting where discussion can take place; this may be in a group setting or on a one-to-one basis. This should be done before the booking appointment. (R 1.1.19)	Evidence Section 3.3.2; Page 64
Information about antenatal screening should include balanced and accurate information about the condition being screened for. (R 1.1.1.10)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.3.2; Page 64
Antenatal care should be provided by a small group of healthcare professionals with whom the woman feels comfortable. There should be continuity of care throughout the antenatal period. (R 1.2.2.1)	Evidence Section 4.2; Page 69
A system of clear referral paths should be established so that pregnant women who require additional care are managed and treated by the appropriate specialist teams when problems are identified. (R 1.2.2.2)	Consensus Section 4.2; Page 69
Antenatal care should be readily and easily accessible to all pregnant women and should be sensitive to the needs of individual women and the local community. (R 1.2.3.1)	Evidence Section 4.3; Page 69
The environment in which antenatal appointments take place should enable women to discuss sensitive issues such as domestic violence, sexual abuse, psychiatric illness and recreational drug use. (R 1.2.3.2)	Consensus Section 4.3; Page 69
Early in pregnancy, all women should receive appropriate written information about the likely number, timing and content of antenatal appointments associated with different options of care and be given an opportunity to discuss this schedule with their midwife or doctor. (R 1.2.5.2)	Consensus Section 4.5; Page 72
Pregnant women should be informed of their maternity rights and benefits. (R 1.3.1.3)	Evidence Section 5.3; Page 83
The majority of women can be reassured that it is safe to continue working during pregnancy. Further information about possible occupational hazards during pregnancy is available from the Health and Safety Executive (www.hse.gov.uk). (R 1.3.1.2)	Consensus Section 5.3; Page 83
Pre-conception counselling (supportive listening, advice-giving and information) and carrier testing should be available to all women who are identified as being at higher risk of haemoglobinopathies, using the Family Origin Questionnaire from the	Evidence

NHS Antenatal and Newborn Screening Programme. (www.sickleandthal.org.uk/Documents/F_Origin_Questionnaire.pdf) (R 1.6.3.1)	Section 8.3.5; Page 132
Information about screening for Down's syndrome should be given to pregnant women at the first contact with a healthcare professional. This will provide the opportunity for further discussion before embarking on screening. Refer to 1.1.1 for more information about giving antenatal information. Specific information should include: • the screening pathway for both screen-positive and screen-negative results • the decisions that need to be made at each point along the pathway and their consequences • the fact that screening does not provide a definitive diagnosis and a full explanation of the risk score obtained following testing • information about chorionic villus sampling and amniocentesis • balanced and accurate information about Down's syndrome. (R 1.7.2.5)	Evidence Section 9.2.6; Page 176
Diabetes in pregnancy[81] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11946/41342/41342.pdf**	
Healthcare professionals should seek to empower women with diabetes to make the experience of pregnancy and childbirth a positive one by providing information, advice and support that will help to reduce the risks of adverse pregnancy outcomes for mother and baby. (R 1.1.1.1)	Consensus Section 3.1; Page 30
Women with diabetes who are planning to become pregnant and their families should be offered information about how diabetes affects pregnancy and how pregnancy affects diabetes. (R 1.1.1.3)	Consensus Section 3.1; Page 30
Women with diabetes who are planning to become pregnant should be advised: • that the risks associated with pregnancies complicated by diabetes increase with the duration of diabetes • to use contraception until good glycaemic control (assessed by HbA1c2 • that glycaemic targets, glucose monitoring, medications for diabetes (including insulin regimens for insulin-treated diabetes) and medications for complications of diabetes will need to be reviewed before and during pregnancy) has been established • that additional time and effort is required to manage diabetes during pregnancy and that there will be frequent contact with healthcare professionals. Women should be given information about the local arrangements for support, including emergency contact numbers. (R 1.1.1.2)	Consensus Section 3.2; Page 33
Women with diabetes who are planning to become pregnant should be offered individualised dietary advice. (R 1.1.3.1)	Evidence Section 3.3; Page 36
Individualised targets for self-monitoring of blood glucose should be agreed with women who have diabetes and are planning to become pregnant, taking into account the risk of hypoglycaemia. (R 1.1.4.1)	Consensus Section 3.4; Page 41
Women with diabetes who are planning to become pregnant should be offered a meter for self-monitoring of blood glucose.	Consensus

(R 1.1.5.2)	Section 3.5; Page 42
Pre-conception care for women with diabetes should be given in a supportive environment and the woman's partner or other family member should be encouraged to attend. (R 1.1.8.3)	Consensus Section 3.8; Page 57
Women with diabetes who are planning to become pregnant should be offered pre-conception care and advice before discontinuing contraception. (R 1.1.9.2)	Evidence Section 3.9; Page 58
Women with gestational diabetes should be instructed in self-monitoring of blood glucose. Targets for blood glucose control should be determined in the same way as for women with pre-existing diabetes. (R 1.2.2.5)	Consensus Section 4.3; Page 74
Women with gestational diabetes should be offered information covering: • the role of diet, body weight and exercise • the increased risk of having a baby who is large for gestational age, which increases the likelihood of birth trauma, induction of labour and caesarean section • the importance of maternal glycaemic control during labour and birth and early feeding of the baby in order to reduce the risk of neonatal hypoglycaemia • the possibility of transient morbidity in the baby during the neonatal period, which may require admission to the neonatal unit • the risk of the baby developing obesity and/or diabetes in later life. (R 1.2.2.7)	Consensus based on evidence Section 4.3; Page 76
Antenatal appointments for women with diabetes should provide care specifically for women with diabetes, in addition to the care provided routinely for healthy pregnant women (see 'Antenatal care: routine care for the healthy pregnant woman' [NICE clinical guideline 62], available from www.nice.org.uk/CG062). Table 1 describes where care for women with diabetes differs from routine antenatal care. At each appointment women should be offered ongoing opportunities for information and education. (R 1.3.8.3)	Consensus Section 5.8; Page 107
Prophylaxis against infective endocarditis[98] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11938/40039/40039.pdf**	
No recommendations identified.	
Perioperative hypothermia (inadvertent)[75] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11962/40432/40432.pdf**	
Patients (and their families and carers) should be informed that: •staying warm before surgery will lower the risk of postoperative complications •the hospital environment may be colder than their own home •they should bring additional clothing, such as a dressing gown, a vest, warm clothing and slippers, to help them keep comfortably warm	Consensus Section 4.2.2; Page 39

•they should tell staff if they feel cold at any time during their hospital stay. (R 1.1.1.1)	
On transfer to the theatre suite: •the patient should be kept comfortably warm •the patient should be encouraged to walk to theatre where appropriate. (R 1.1.2.7)	Consensus Section 4.2.6; Page 52
Lipid modification[77] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11982/40689/40689.pdf**	
Healthcare professionals should use everyday, jargon-free language to communicate information on risk. If technical terms are used, these should be clearly explained. (R 1.2.1)	Consensus based Section 4.3.1.1; Page 93
Adequate time should be set aside during the consultation to provide information on risk assessment and to allow any questions to be answered. Further consultation may be required. (R 1.2.2)	Consensus based Section 4.3.1.1; Page 93
People should be offered information about their absolute risk of CVD and about the absolute benefits and harms of an intervention over a 10-year period. This information should be in a form that: • presents individualised risk and benefit scenarios • presents the absolute risk of events numerically • uses appropriate diagrams and text. (R 1.2.4)	Consensus based on evidence Section 4.3; Page 93
In order to encourage the person to participate in reducing their CVD risk, the healthcare professional should: • find out what, if anything, the person has already been told about their CVD risk and how they feel about it • explore the person's beliefs about what determines future health (this may affect their attitude to changing risk) • assess their readiness to make changes to their lifestyle (diet, physical activity, smoking and alcohol consumption), to undergo investigations and to take medication • assess their confidence in making changes to their lifestyle, undergoing investigations and taking medication • inform them of potential future management based on current evidence and best practice • involve them in developing a shared management plan • check with them that they have understood what has been discussed. (R 1.2.5)	Consensus based Section 4.5; Page 103
Advice about physical activity should take into account the person's needs, preferences and circumstances. Goals should be agreed and the person should be provided with written information about the benefits of activity and local opportunities to be active, in line with 'Physical activity' (NICE public health intervention guidance 2). (R 1.3.11)	Consensus based on external guidance Section 5.5.6; Page 130
People who want to stop smoking should be offered support and advice, and referral to an intensive support service (for example, the NHS Stop Smoking Services). (R 1.3.16)	Consensus based on external guidance Section 5.9; Page 135
The decision whether to initiate statin therapy should be made after an informed discussion between the responsible clinician	Consensus based on external guidance

and the person about the risks and benefits of statin treatment, taking into account additional factors such as comorbidities and life expectancy.17 (R 1.4.4)	Section 7.3.3; Page 175
Once a person has been started on a statin for primary prevention, repeat lipid measurement is unnecessary. Clinical judgement and patient preference should guide the review of drug therapy and whether to review the lipid profile. (R 1.4.10)	Consensus based Section 6.3.2.2; Page 148
The decision whether to initiate statin therapy should be made after an informed discussion between the responsible clinician and the person about the risks and benefits of statin treatment, taking into account additional factors such as comorbidities and life expectancy. (R 1.4.20)	Evidence Section 6.3.1 pg 143 ; section 7.3.1 pg 171
Induction of labour[82] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12012/41256/41256.pdf**	
Women should be informed that most women will go into labour spontaneously by 42 weeks. At the 38 week antenatal visit, all women should be offered information about the risks associated with pregnancies that last longer than 42 weeks, and their options. The information should cover: •membrane sweeping: −that membrane sweeping makes spontaneous labour more likely, and so reduces the need for formal induction of labour to prevent prolonged pregnancy −what a membrane sweep is −that discomfort and vaginal bleeding are possible from the procedure •induction of labour between 41+0 and 42+0 weeks •expectant management. (R 1.1.1.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1, p22/23
Healthcare professionals offering induction of labour should: •allow the woman time to discuss the information with her partner before coming to a decision •encourage the woman to look at a variety of sources of information •invite the woman to ask questions, and encourage her to think about her options •support the woman in whatever decision she makes. (R 1.1.1.3)	Consensus based on evidence Section 3.1, p22/23
Women with uncomplicated pregnancies should usually be offered induction of labour between 41+0 and 42+0 weeks to avoid the risks of prolonged pregnancy. The exact timing should take into account the woman's preferences and local circumstances. (R 1.2.1.2)	Consensus based on evidence Section 4.1, p28/29
If a woman chooses not to have induction of labour, her decision should be respected. Healthcare professionals should discuss the woman's care with her from then on. (R 1.2.1.3)	Consensus based on evidence Section 4.1, p28/29
In the event of an intrauterine fetal death, healthcare professionals should offer support to help women and their partners and/or family cope with the emotional and physical consequences of the death. This should include offering information about specialist support. (R 1.2.9.1)	Consensus Section 4.9, p28/29

During induction of labour, healthcare professionals should provide women with the pain relief appropriate for them and their pain (as described in 'Intrapartum care' [NICE clinical guideline 55]). This can range from simple analgesics to epidural analgesia. (R 1.6.2.3)	Consensus Section 7.2, p74/75
Birth attendants (carers and healthcare professionals) should offer women support and analgesia as required, and should encourage women to use their own coping strategies for pain relief. (R 1.6.2.4)	Consensus Section 7.2, p74/75
Respiratory tract infections[99] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12015/41323/41323.pdf**	
Patients' or parents'/carers' concerns and expectations should be determined and addressed when agreeing the use of the three antibiotic prescribing strategies (no prescribing, delayed prescribing and immediate prescribing). (R 1.1.2)	Evidence and consensus SECTION 2.2.3; p45 and p52 patient satisfaction; Consensus - p62, unclear which sections fed into recommendation
Stroke[71] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12018/41331/41331.pdf**	
No recommendations identified.	
Familial hypercholesterolaemia[76] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12048/41697/41697.pdf**	
Decisions about the choice of treatment should be made following discussion with the adult or child/young person and their parent/carer, and be informed by consideration of concomitant medication, comorbidities, safety and tolerability. (R 1.3.1.28)	Consensus based Section 5.2.3; Page 118
During the assessment and communication of familial risk, people should receive clear and appropriate educational information about FH, the process of family testing, DNA testing and the measurement of LDL-C concentration. R 1.4.1.1)	Consensus based Section 6.2.1; Page 159
A healthcare professional with expertise in FH should provide information to people with FH on their specific level of risk of coronary heart disease, its implications for them and their families, lifestyle advice and treatment options. (R 1.4.1.2)	Consensus based Section 6.2.1; Page 159
Healthcare professionals with expertise in FH should encourage people with FH to contact their relatives to inform them of their potential risk and so that cascade testing can take place. (R 1.4.1.3)	Consensus based Section 6.2.1; Page 159
When considering cascade testing, a healthcare professional with expertise in FH should offer to facilitate the sharing of information about FH with family members. (R 1.4.1.4)	Consensus based Section 6.2.1; Page 159
Healthcare professionals should offer people with FH and their families written advice and information about patient support groups. (R 1.4.1.5)	Consensus based Section 6.2.1; Page 159
When lipid-modifying drug therapy is first considered for women and girls, the risks for future pregnancy and the fetus while	Consensus based

taking lipid-modifying drug therapy should be discussed. This discussion should be revisited at least annually. (R 1.4.2.1)	Section 8.3.1; Page 214
Healthcare professionals should give women and girls with FH specific information tailored to their needs and should offer a choice of effective contraceptive methods. (R 1.4.2.2)	Consensus based Section 8.3.1; Page 214
Women with FH who have conceived while taking statins or other systemically absorbed lipid-modifying drug therapy and have had a fetal assessment should be given time, opportunity and full information to consider their options (including the advantages and disadvantages) of continuing with their pregnancy. (R 1.4.3.4)	Consensus based Section 8.3.3; Page 220
Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)[73] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12061/42059/42059.pdf**	
Healthcare professionals should develop a trusting relationship with people with ADHD and their families or carers by: • respecting the person and their family's knowledge and experience of ADHD • being sensitive to stigma in relation to mental illness. (R 1.1.2.1)	Consensus Unclear in guideline
Healthcare professionals should provide people with ADHD and their families or carers with relevant, age-appropriate information (including written information) about ADHD at every stage of their care. The information should cover diagnosis and assessment, support and self-help, psychological treatment, and the use and possible side effects of drug treatment. (R 1.1.2.2)	Consensus Unclear in guideline
Adults with ADHD should be given written information about local and national support groups and voluntary organisations. (R 1.1.2.6)	Consensus Unclear in guideline
Healthcare professionals should ask families or carers about the impact of ADHD on themselves and other family members, and discuss any concerns they may have. Healthcare professionals should: • offer family members or carers an assessment of their personal, social and mental health needs • encourage participation in self-help and support groups where appropriate • offer general advice to parents and carers about positive parent– and carer–child contact, clear and appropriate rules about behaviour, and the importance of structure in the child or young person's day • explain that parent-training/education programmes do not necessarily imply bad parenting, and that their aim is to optimise parenting skills to meet the above-average parenting needs of children and young people with ADHD. (R 1.1.2.7)	Consensus Unclear in guideline
In determining the clinical significance of impairment resulting from the symptoms of ADHD in children and young people, their views should be taken into account wherever possible. (R 1.3.1.5)	Consensus Section 5.16/5.17.
Following a diagnosis of ADHD, healthcare professionals should consider providing all parents or carers of all children and young people with ADHD self-instruction manuals, and other materials such as videos, based on positive parenting and	Consensus Section 5.16/5.17

behavioural techniques. (R 1.4.1.1)	
If there has been a poor response following parenttraining/education programmes and/or psychological treatment and treatment with methylphenidate and atomoxetine in a child or young person with ADHD, there should be a further review of: • the diagnosis • any coexisting conditions • response to drug treatment, occurrence of side effects and treatment adherence • uptake and use of psychological interventions for the child or young person and their parents or carers • effects of stigma on treatment acceptability • concerns related to school and/or family • motivation of the child or young person and the parents or carers • the child or young person's diet.	Consensus based Section 10.17; Page 303
A young person with ADHD receiving treatment and care from CAMHS or paediatric services should be reassessed at schoolleaving age to establish the need for continuing treatment into adulthood. If treatment is necessary, arrangements should be made for a smooth transition to adult services with details of the anticipated treatment and services that the young person will require. Precise timing of arrangements may vary locally but should usually be completed by the time the young person is 18 years. (R 1.6.1.1)	Consensus based Section 6.2.4; Page 138
During the transition to adult services, a formal meeting involving CAMHS and/or paediatrics and adult psychiatric services should be considered, and full information provided to the young person about adult services. For young people aged 16 years and older, the care programme approach (CPA) should be used as an aid to transfer between services. The young person, and when appropriate the parent or carer, should be involved in the planning. (R 1.6.1.2)	Consensus based Section 6.2.4; Page 138
Healthcare professionals should consider suggesting peer-support groups for the child or young person with ADHD and their parents or carers if adherence to drug treatment is difficult or uncertain. (R 1.8.5.2)	Consensus based Section 7.2.8; Page 166
Where necessary, healthcare professionals should help parents or carers develop a positive attitude and approach in the management of medication, which might include praise and positive reinforcement for the child or young person with ADHD. (R 1.8.5.7)	Consensus based Section 10.17; Page 302
An individual treatment approach is important for adults, and healthcare professionals should regularly review (at least annually) the need to adapt patterns of use, including the effect of drug treatment on coexisting conditions and mood changes. (R 1.8.7.2)	Consensus based Section 10.17; Page 302
Chronic kidney disease[69]	

http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12069/42117/42117.pdf	
Offer people with CKD education and information tailored to the stage and cause of CKD, the associated complications and the risk of progression. (R 1.3.1)	Consensus based on evidence Section 15.1.5, p180/181
When developing information or education programmes, involve people with CKD in their development from the outset. The following topics are suggested. • What is CKD and how does it affect people? • What questions should people ask about their kidneys when they attend clinic? • What treatments are available for CKD, what are their advantages and disadvantages and what complications or side effects may occur as a result of treatment/medication? • What can people do to manage and influence their own condition? • In what ways could CKD and its treatment affect people's daily life, social activities, work opportunities and financial situation, including benefits and allowances available? • How can people cope with and adjust to CKD and what sources of psychological support are available? • When appropriate, offer information about renal replacement therapy (such as the frequency and length of time of dialysis treatment sessions or exchanges and pre-emptive transplantation) and the preparation required (such as having a fistula or peritoneal catheter). • Conservative management may be considered where appropriate. (R 1.3.2)	Consensus based on evidence Section 15.1.5, p180/181
Offer people with CKD high quality information or education programmes at appropriate stages of their condition to allow time for them to fully understand and make informed choices about their treatment. (R 1.3.3)	Consensus based on evidence Section 15.1.5, p180/181)
Healthcare professionals providing information and education programmes should ensure they have specialist knowledge about CKD and the necessary skills to facilitate learning. (R 1.3.4)	Consensus based on evidence Section 15.1.5, p180/181
Healthcare professionals working with people with CKD should take account of the psychological aspects of coping with the condition and offer access to appropriate support – for example, support groups, counselling or a specialist nurse. (R 1.3.5)	Consensus based on evidence Section 15.1.5, p180/181
Take into account the individual's wishes and comorbidities when considering referral. (R 1.6.4)	Consensus Section 7.1.5, p87/88
Where the clinician in discussion with the patient has decided that dietary intervention to influence progression of CKD is indicated, an appropriately trained professional should discuss the risks and benefits of dietary protein restriction, with particular reference to slowing down the progression of disease versus protein-calorie malnutrition. (R 1.7.2)	Evidence and consensus Section 8.2.5, p99/100
To improve concordance, inform people who are prescribed ACE inhibitors or ARB therapy about the importance of: • achieving the optimal tolerated dose of ACE inhibitor/ARB, and • monitoring eGFR and serum potassium in achieving this safely. (R 1.8.9)	Evidence and consensus Section 9.2.6, p121/122

Surgical site infection[83] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11743/42379/42379.pdf**	
Offer patients and carers clear, consistent information and advice throughout all stages of their care. This should include the risks of surgical site infections, what is being done to reduce them and how they are managed. (R 1.1.1)	Consensus Section 4.1; Page 21
Offer patients and carers information and advice on how to care for their wound after discharge. (R 1.1.2)	Consensus Section 4.1; Page 21
Offer patients and carers information and advice about how to recognise a surgical site infection and who to contact if they are concerned. Use an integrated care pathway for healthcare-associated infections to help communicate this information to both patients and all those involved in their care after discharge. (R 1.1.3)	Consensus Section 4.1; Page 21
Always inform patients after their operation if they have been given antibiotics. (R 1.1.4)	Consensus Section 4.1; Page 21
Give patients specific theatre wear that is appropriate for the procedure and clinical setting, and that provides easy access to the operative site and areas for placing devices, such as intravenous cannulas. Consider also the patient's comfort and dignity. (R 1.2.4)	Consensus Section 5.3; Page 28
Metastatic spinal cord compression[63] **http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/12085/42653/42653.pdf**	
Ensure that communication with patients with known or suspected MSCC is clear and consistent, and that the patients, their families and carers are fully informed and involved in all decisions about treatment. (R 1.2.1.2)	Consensus Section 3.2; Page 17
Offer patients with MSCC and their families and carers specialist psychological and/or spiritual support appropriate to their needs at diagnosis, at other key points during treatment and on discharge from hospital. (R 1.2.2.1)	Consensus based Section 3.2; Page 18
Provide information to patients with MSCC in an appropriate language and format that explains how to access psychological and/or spiritual support services when needed. (R 1.2.2.2)	Consensus based Section 3.2; Page 18
Offer bereavement support services to patients' families based on the three component model outlined in 'Improving supportive and palliative care for adults with cancer' (NICE cancer service guidance CSGSP). (R 1.2.2.3)	Consensus based Section 3.2; Page 18
Inform patients at high risk of developing bone metastases, patients with diagnosed bone metastases, or patients with cancer who present with spinal pain about the symptoms of MSCC. Offer information (for example, in the form of a leaflet) to patients and their families and carers which explains the symptoms of MSCC, and advises them (and their healthcare professionals) what to do if they develop these symptoms. (R 1.3.1.3)	Consensus based Section 4.2; Page 19
Ensure that patients with MSCC and their families and carers know who to contact if their symptoms progress while they are waiting for urgent investigation of suspected MSCC. (R 1.3.1.2)	Consensus Section 4.2; Page 19

All decisions on the most appropriate combinations of treatment for pain or preventing paralysis caused by MSCC should be made by relevant spinal specialists in consultation with primary tumour site clinicians and with the full involvement of the patient. (R 1.5.1.14)	Consensus Section 6.2; Page 35
Take into account the preferences of patients with MSCC as well as their neurological ability, functional status, general health and fitness, previous treatments, magnitude of surgery, likelihood of complications, fitness for general anaesthesia and overall prognosis when planning treatment. (R 1.5.3.4)	Consensus Section 6.4; Page 39
Carefully plan surgery to maximise the probability of preserving spinal cord function without undue risk to the patient, taking into account their overall fitness, prognosis and preferences. (R 1.5.4.3)	Evidence Section 6.5; Page 45
Ensure that all patients admitted to hospital with MSCC have access to a full range of healthcare professional support services for assessment, advice and rehabilitation. (R 1.6.5.1)	Consensus Section 7.6; Page 60
Focus the rehabilitation of patients with MSCC on their goals and desired outcomes, which could include promoting functional independence, participation in normal activities of daily life and aspects related to their quality of life. (R 1.6.5.2)	Consensus Section 7.6; Page 60
Discharge planning and ongoing care, including rehabilitation for patients with MSCC, should start on admission and be led by a named individual from within the responsible clinical team. It should involve the patient and their families and carers, their primary oncology site team, rehabilitation team and community support, including primary care and specialist palliative care, as required. (R 1.6.5.4)	Consensus Section 7.6; Page 61
Ensure that community-based rehabilitation and supportive care services are available to people with MSCC following their return home, in order to maximise their quality of life and continued involvement in activities that they value. (R 1.6.5.5)	Consensus Section 7.6; Page 61
Ensure that people with MSCC are provided with the equipment and care they require in a timely fashion to maximise their quality of life at home. (R 1.6.5.6)	Consensus Section 7.6; Page 61
Offer the families and carers of patients with MSCC relevant support and training before discharge home. (R 1.6.5.7)	Consensus Section 7.6; Page 61
Clear pathways should be established between hospitals and community-based healthcare and social services teams to ensure that equipment and support for people with MSCC returning home and their carers and families are arranged in an efficient and coordinated manner. (R 1.6.5.8)	Consensus Section 7.6; Page 61

Appendix D: Literature review questions and protocols

Review questions	What is the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of decision aids versus no intervention, usual care, alternative interventions, or a combination?
Objectives	To compare the clinical and cost effectiveness of decision aids with no intervention, usual care, alternative interventions in of adults making decisions about screening or treatment for themselves, for a child, or for an incapacitated significant other.
Criteria	Population: Adults (≥ 18 years old) making decisions about screening or treatment for themselves, for a child, or for an incapacitated significant other. Excluded: studies in which people were making hypothetical choices. Intervention: Decision aids Comparison: No intervention, Usual care, Alternative interventions, Combination Primary outcomes: • Evaluation criteria which map onto the IPDAS criteria • Attributes of the decision • Attributes of the decision process • Decisional conflict • Patient-practitioner communication • Participation in decision making • Satisfaction Secondary Outcomes: • Decisions (proportion undecided, option selected) • Adherence to chosen option • Health status and quality of life (generic and condition specific) • Anxiety, depression, emotional distress, regret, confidence • Patients' and physicians' satisfaction • Costs, cost effectiveness • Consultation length • Litigation rates Study Design: RCT Population size and directness: • No limits of sample size • Studies with indirect populations will not be considered
Search strategy	No search to be undertaken – Cochrane review to be accepted as is (search cut-off Dec 2009) (confirmed with NICE)
Review strategy	The methodology and results of the 2011 Cochrane review "decision aids for people facing health treatment or screening decisions" will be presented to the guidance development group for consideration.
Economic review strategy	The Cochrane review included cost and cost-effectiveness as outcomes but was restricted to RCTs. Additional search to be run on NHS EED, HTA and HEED only with aim of checking for cost-effectiveness models based on RCT data. Note deviation from Guidelines Manual – we will not run search in Medline/Embase for past year – this is considered a reasonable pragmatic approach given the Cochrane cut-off is Dec 2009. Study design: cost-utility analysis, cost-benefit analysis, cost-effectiveness analysis, cost-consequence analysis, comparative cost analysis Each study is assessed using the NICE economic evaluation checklist – NICE (2009) Guidelines Manual, Appendix H. See also table below 'Economic review –

	inclusion/exclusion criteria'

Review question	**What is the effectiveness and cost effectiveness of interventions to improve the continuity of care of patients in the National Health Service?**
Objectives	To evaluate the effectiveness of interventions used to improve continuity of patient care.
Criteria	Population: Adults Exclusions: People under the age of 18 years, people using health services specifically for the treatment of mental health problems. Interventions: For example: centralised records, electronic patient records, established routines for handovers and exchange of information, proactive follow-up of patients after significant life events or health events, key workers, nurse-led care Comparison: Usual care Outcomes: These will be determined once relevant interventions have been identified. Study Design: Systematic reviews of RCTs or cohort studies Setting: All settings where NHS care is delivered
Search strategy	Searches were conducted in Medline, Embase, PsychInfo, CINAHL and the Cochrane Library, with a cut-off date of 9th May 2011. For full search strategies see Appendix E.
Review strategy	Appraisal of methodological quality: the methodological quality of the systematic reviews will be appraised using NICE checklists. Protocol amendment: Midwife-led care was selected for review from the identified interventions as there was a clear mechanism for operationalising continuity of care in that clinical area that was well defined in the literature. The applicability and transferability of these findings for generic guidance would then be considered by the Guidance Development Group. It was not possible to conduct a review across all clinical areas to identify all potentially relevant studies and so mid-wife led care was viewed as a good proxy area which was likely to include many generic components. The aim of this review was to identify components of care that specifically improve continuity that could be generalised across disease areas.
Economic review strategy	Targeted searches to be undertaken following clinical review looking for specific interventions identified from clinical review. Protocol amendment: in line with clinical review this was restricted to midwife-led care. Study design: cost-utility analysis, cost-benefit analysis, cost-effectiveness analysis, cost-consequence analysis, comparative cost analysis. Each study assessed using the NICE economic evaluation checklist – NICE (2009) Guidelines Manual, Appendix H. See also table below 'Economic review – inclusion/exclusion criteria'.

Review questions	**Risk Communication**
Objectives	What methods of presenting information improve a patient's understanding of the risks and benefits associated with their treatment options?
Criteria	Population: Adults Excluded: People under the age of 18 years, people using health services specifically for the treatment of mental health problems. Intervention: data will be extracted for risk language, design of visual presentations, tailored risk language and format of communication Outcomes: will be determined once relevant papers have been identified. Study Design: systematic reviews of RCTs and/or cohort studies Setting: all settings
Search strategy	Searches were conducted in Medline, Embase, PsychInfo, CINAHL and the Cochrane Library, with a cut-off date of 9th May 2011. For full search strategies see Appendix E.

Review strategy	Appraisal of methodological quality: the methodological quality of each systematic review/meta-analysis will be assessed using NICE checklists.
Economic review strategy	An economic search will not be undertaken for this review question. It is considered that in most cases there will not be cost differences between strategies (e.g. using different language to communicate risk).

Review questions	**What generic components of patient education programmes improve patient experience?**
Objectives	To determine what generic components of patient education programmes improve patient-related outcomes and are transferable across disease populations.
Criteria	Population: Adults (≥ 18 years old). Excluded: People under the age of 18 years, people using health services specifically for the treatment of mental health problems. Comparisons of implementation of a disease specific patient education programme versus usual care will not be sought. Intervention: Any comparison of generic components of patient education programmes (for example, one-on-one counselling, group work, audiovisual presentations) Study Design: Systematic reviews of RCTs and cohort studies Population size and directness: • No limits of sample size • Studies with indirect populations will not be considered
Search strategy	Searches were conducted in Medline, Embase, PsychInfo, CINAHL and the Cochrane Library, with a cut-off date of 9th May 2011. For full search strategies see Appendix E.
Review strategy	Appraisal of methodological quality: the methodological quality of the systematic reviews will be appraised using NICE checklists.
Economic review strategy	An economic search will not be undertaken for this review question as useful cost effectiveness analysis would not be able to be performed for generic components and disease specific analyses would not be generalisable.

Economic review – inclusion/exclusion criteria

Each study is assessed using the NICE economic evaluation checklist – NICE (2009) Guidelines Manual, Appendix H.

Inclusion/exclusion criteria

- If a study is rated as both 'Directly applicable' and 'Minor limitations' (using the NICE economic evaluation checklist) then it should be included in the guideline. An evidence table should be completed and it should be included in the economic profile.
- If a study is rated as either 'Not applicable' or 'Very serious limitations' then it should be excluded from the guideline. It should not be included in the economic profile and there is no need to include an evidence table.
- If a study is rated as 'Partially applicable' and/or 'Potentially serious limitations' then there is discretion over whether it should be included. The health economist should make a decision based on the relative applicability and quality of the available evidence for that question, in discussion with the GDG if required. The ultimate aim being to include studies that are helpful for decision making in the context of the guideline. Where exclusions occur on this basis, this should be noted in the relevant section of the guideline with references.

Also exclude:

- unpublished reports unless submitted as part of the call for evidence
- abstract-only studies
- letters
- editorials
- reviews of economic evaluations *0*

Economic review – inclusion/exclusion criteria
• foreign language articles **Where there is discretion** The health economist should be guided by the following hierarchies. *Setting:* • UK NHS • OECD countries with predominantly public health insurance systems (e.g. France, Germany, Sweden) • OECD countries with predominantly private health insurance systems (e.g. USA, Switzerland) • Non-OECD settings (always 'Not applicable') *Economic study type:* • Cost-utility analysis • Other type of full economic evaluation (cost-benefit analysis, cost-effectiveness analysis, cost-consequence analysis) • Comparative cost analysis • Non-comparative cost analyses including cost of illness studies (always 'Not applicable') *Year of analysis:* • Studies that are based on resource use and unit costs from more than 10 years ago will be downgraded in terms of applicability • Studies that are based on resource use and unit costs from more than 20 years ago will be judged not applicable *Quality and relevance of effectiveness data used in the economic analysis:* • The more closely the effectiveness data used in the economic analysis matches with the studies included for the clinical review the more useful the analysis will be to decision making for the guideline.

(a) Recent reviews will be ordered although not reviewed. The bibliographies will be checked for relevant studies, which will then be ordered.

Appendix E: Literature search strategies

Search strategies used for the patient experience guidance are outlined below and were run as per the NICE Guidelines Manual 2009[89].

Searches for the **thematic qualitative review** were run as part of the Warwick University scoping report. See Appendix B for further details of these search strategies.

Searches for **patient experience frameworks** were run in Medline (OVID), Embase (OVID), HMIC (Ovid), PsychInfo (OVID), the Cochrane Library, Cinahl (EBSCO) and ASSIA (ProQuest).

Searches for the **literature reviews** were run in Medline (OVID), Embase (OVID), PsychInfo (OVID), the Cochrane Library and Cinahl (EBSCO). Searches were conducted by combining study filter terms with the question terms using the AND Boolean operator.

Searches for the **health economic reviews** were run in Medline (Ovid), Embase (Ovid), the NHS Economic Evaluations Database (NHS EED), the Health Technology Assessment (HTA) database and the Health Economic Evaluation Database (HEED). NHS EED and HTA were searched via the Centre for Reviews and Dissemination (CRD) interface. Searches in NHS EED, HTA and HEED were constructed only using population terms. For Medline and Embase an economic filter (instead of a study type filter) was added to the clinical search strategy.

All searches were run up to 9th May 2011 unless otherwise stated. Any studies added to the databases after this date were not included unless specifically stated in the text.

The search strategies are presented below in the following order:

E.1 Patient experience frameworks search terms

Search constructed by combining the columns in the following table using the AND Boolean operator

Population	Intervention / exposure	Comparison	Study filter used	Date parameters
Patient experience	Frameworks			Searches run to 10/02/2011

Medline search terms

1 (patient$ adj (experience or centre$ or center$)).ti.
2 framework$.ti,ab.
3 Models, Theoretical/

4 or/2-3

5 1 and 4

Embase search terms

1 (patient$ adj (experience or centre$ or center$)).ti.

2 framework$.ti,ab.

3 conceptual framework/

4 theoretical model/

5 or/2-4

6 1 and 5

Cinahl search terms

S1 TI patient* n1 experience or TI patient* n1 centre* or TI patient* n1 center*

S2 framework*

S3 (MH "Conceptual Framework") OR (MH "Models, Theoretical")

S4 S2 or S3

S5 S1 and S4

Cochrane search terms

#1 (patient* NEAR (experience or centre* or center*)):ti

#2 framework*:ti,ab,kw

#3 MeSH descriptor Models, Theoretical, this term only

#4 (#2 OR #3)

#5 (#1 AND #4)

PsychInfo search terms

1 (patient$ adj (experience or centre$ or center$)).ti.

2 framework$.ti,ab.

3 models/

4 or/2-3

5 1 and 4

HMIC search terms

1 (patient$ adj (experience or centre$ or center$)).ti.

2 framework$.ti,ab.

3 exp frameworks/

4 or/2-3

5 1 and 4

ASSIA search terms

1 (EXACT("Models" OR "Conceptual Models") OR framework*) AND (patient* near/1 (experience OR centre* OR center*))

E.2 Study filter search terms

E.2.1 Systematic review search terms

Medline search terms

1 meta-analysis/

2 (metaanalys$ or meta-analys$ or meta analys$).tw.

3 exp "review literature"/
4 (systematic$ adj3 (review$ or overview$)).tw.
5 (selection criteria or data extraction).ab. and review.pt.
6 (cochrane or embase or psychlit or psyclit or psychinfo or psycinfo or cinahl or cinhal or science citation index or bids or cancerlit).ab.
7 (reference list$ or bibliograph$ or hand search$ or hand-search$ or manual search$ or relevant journals).ab.
8 or/1-7
9 (comment or letter or editorial).pt.
10 exp animal/ not human/
11 or/9-10
12 8 not 11

Embase search terms

1 meta analysis/
2 (metaanalys$ or meta-analys$ or meta analys$).tw.
3 systematic review/
4 (systematic$ adj3 (review$ or overview$)).tw.
5 (selection criteria or data extraction).ab. and Review.pt.
6 (cochrane or embase or psychlit or psyclit or psychinfo or psycinfo or cinahl or cinhal or science citation index or bids or cancerlit).ab.
7 (reference list$ or bibliograph$ or hand search$ or manual search$ or relevant journals).ab.
8 or/1-7
9 (letter or editorial or conference abstract).pt.
10 (exp animal/ or nonhuman/ or exp animal-experiment/) not exp human/
11 or/9-10
12 8 not 11

Cinahl search terms

S1 (MH "Meta Analysis")
S2 (MH "Literature Review+")
S3 meta analy* or metaanaly* or systematic n1 review* or systematic n1 overview*
S4 PT systematic review or PT meta analysis
S5 S1 or S2 or S3 or S4

PsychInfo search terms

1 "literature review"/ or meta analysis/
2 (metaanalys$ or meta-analys$ or meta analys$).tw.
3 (systematic$ adj3 (review$ or overview$)).tw.
4 (reference list$ or bibliograph$ or hand search$ or hand-search$ or manual search$ or relevant journals).ab.
5 or/1-4

E.2.2 Randomised controlled trials (RCTs) search terms

Medine search terms

1 Randomized-Controlled-Trials/ or Random-Allocation/ or Double-Blind-Method/ or Single-Blind-Method/ or exp Clinical-Trials as topic/ or Cross-Over-Studies/ or Prospective-Studies/ or Placebos/
2 (Randomized-Controlled-Trial or Clinical-Trial or Controlled-Clinical-Trial).pt.
3 (((clinical or control or controlled) adj (study or trial)) or ((single or double or triple) adj (blind$3 or

mask$3)) or (random$ adj (assign$ or allocat$ or group or grouped or patients or study or trial or distribut$)) or (crossover adj (design or study or trial)) or placebo or placebos).ti,ab.

4 ((Case-Reports not Randomized-Controlled-Trial) or Letter or Historical-Article or Review-Of-Reported-Cases).pt.

5 or/1-4

6 exp Animal/ not Human/

7 5 not 6

Embase search terms

1 Clinical-Trial/ or Randomized-Controlled-Trial/ or Randomization/ or Single-Blind-Procedure/ or Double-Blind-Procedure/ or Crossover-Procedure/ or Prospective-Study/ or Placebo/

2 (((clinical or control or controlled) adj (study or trial)) or ((single or double or triple) adj (blind$3 or mask$3)) or (random$ adj (assign$ or allocat$ or group or grouped or patients or study or trial or distribut$)) or (crossover adj (design or study or trial)) or placebo or placebos).ti,ab.

3 Case-Study/ or Abstract-Report/ or Letter/ or (case adj report).tw. or conference abstract.pt.

4 (exp Animal/ or Nonhuman/ or exp Animal-Experiment/) not exp Human/

5 or/1-2

6 or/3-4

7 5 not 6

E.2.3 Observational studies search terms

Medline search terms

1 Epidemiologic studies/

2 exp case control studies/

3 exp cohort studies/

4 Cross-sectional studies/

5 case control.ti,ab.

6 (cohort adj (study or studies or analys$)).ti,ab.

7 ((follow up or observational or uncontrolled or non randomi#ed) adj (study or studies)).ti,ab.

8 ((longitudinal or retrospective or prospective) and (study or studies or review or analys$ or cohort$)).ti,ab.

9 cross sectional.ti,ab.

10 or/1-9

Embase search terms

1 Clinical study/

2 exp case control study/

3 family study/

4 longitudinal study/

5 retrospective study/

6 prospective study/

7 cross-sectional study/

8 cohort analysis/

9 follow-up/

10 cohort$.ti,ab.

11 9 and 10

12 ((follow up or observational or case control or uncontrolled or non randomi#ed or epidemiologic$) adj (study or studies)).ti,ab.

13 ((longitudinal or retrospective or prospective or cross sectional) adj3 (study or studies or review or

analys$ or cohort$)).ti,ab.
14 (cohort adj (study or studies or analys$)).ti,ab.
15 or/1-8,11-14

E.2.4 Health economic and economic model search terms

Medline search terms

1 exp "costs and cost analysis"/
2 economics/ or exp economics, hospital/ or exp economics, medical/ or economics, nursing/ or economics, pharmaceutical/
3 exp "fees and charges"/ or exp budgets/
4 budget$.tw.
5 cost$.ti.
6 (cost$ adj2 (effective$ or utilit$ or benefit$ or minimi$)).ab.
7 (economic$ or pharmacoeconomic$ or pharmaco-economic$).ti.
8 (price$ or pricing$).tw.
9 (financial or finance or finances or financed).tw.
10 (fee or fees).tw.
11 (value adj2 (money or monetary)).tw.
12 exp models, economic/ or *models, theoretical/ or *models, organizational/
13 economic model$.tw.
14 markov chains/
15 markov$.tw.
16 monte carlo method/
17 monte carlo.tw.
18 exp decision theory/
19 (decision$ adj2 (tree$ or analy$ or model$)).tw.
20 or/1-19
21 (letter or editorial or comment).pt.
22 20 not 21

Embase search terms

1 exp *economic aspect/
2 cost$.ti.
3 (cost$ adj2 (effective$ or utilit$ or benefit$ or minimi$)).ab.
4 (economic$ or pharmacoeconomic$ or pharmaco-economic$).ti.
5 (price$ or pricing$).tw.
6 (financial or finance or finances or financed).tw.
7 (fee or fees).tw.
8 (value adj2 (money or monetary)).tw.
9 exp *mathematical model/
10 economic model$.tw.
11 markov$.tw.
12 monte carlo method/
13 monte carlo.tw.
14 decision theory/
15 (decision$ adj2 (tree$ or analy$ or model$)).tw.
16 or/1-15

17 (comment or letter or editorial).pt.

18 16 not 17

E.3 Searches by specific questions

E.3.1 Continuity of care

What is the effectiveness of interventions to improve the continuity of care of patients in the National Health Service?

Search constructed by combining the columns in the following table using the AND Boolean operator

Population	Intervention / exposure	Comparison	Study filter used	Date parameters
Continuity of care			Systematic reviews of RCTs or observational studies (Medline and Embase only); systematic reviews (Cinahl and PsychInfo only)	Searches run to 09/05/2011

Medline search terms

1 "Continuity of Patient Care"/

2 ((coordinat$ or co ordinat$ or co-ordinat$ or integrat$ or collaborat$ or continu$ or shared) adj3 (care$ or manage$)).ti,ab.

3 or/1-2

Embase search terms

1 *patient care/

2 ((coordinat$ or co ordinat$ or co-ordinat$ or integrat$ or collaborat$ or continu$ or shared) adj3 (care$ or manage$)).ti,ab.

3 or/1-2

Cinahl search terms

S1 (MH "Continuity of Patient Care+")

S2 coordinat* n3 care* or co ordinat* n3 care* or co-ordinat* n3 care* or integrat* n3 care* or collaborat* n3 care* or continu* n3 care* or shared n3 care*

S3 coordinat* n3 manage* or co ordinat* n3 manage* or co-ordinat* n3 manage* or integrat* n3 manage* or collaborat* n3 manage* or continu* n3 manage* or shared n3 manage*

S4 S1 or S2 or S3

Cochrane search terms

#1 MeSH descriptor Continuity of Patient Care, this term only

#2 ((coordinat* or co ordinat* or co-ordinat* or integrat* or collaborat* or continu* or shared) NEAR/3 (care* or manage*)):ti,ab,kw

#3 (#1 OR #2)

PsychInfo search terms

1 "continuum of care"/

2 ((coordinat$ or co ordinat$ or co-ordinat$ or integrat$ or collaborat$ or continu$ or shared) adj3 (care$ or manage$)).ti,ab.

3 or/1-2

E.3.2 Education programmes

What components of patient education programmes improve patient experience?

Search constructed by combining the columns in the following table using the AND Boolean operator

Population	Intervention / exposure	Comparison	Study filter used	Date parameters
Education programmes	Components		Systematic reviews of RCTs (Medline and Embase only); systematic reviews (Cinahl and PsychInfo only)	Searches run to 09/05/2011

Medline search terms

1 ((educat$ or train$ or teach$ or instruct$ or skill$ or support$) adj2 (program$ or course$ or intervention$)).ti,ab.

2 (component$ or element$ or principle$ or constituent$ or contents).ti,ab.

3 1 and 2

Embase search terms

1 education program/

2 ((educat$ or train$ or teach$ or instruct$ or skill$ or support$) adj2 (program$ or course$ or intervention$)).ti,ab.

3 or/1-2

4 (component$ or element$ or principle$ or constituent$ or contents).ti,ab

5 3 and 4

Cinahl search terms

S1 educat* n2 program* or educat* n2 course* or educat* n2 intervention* or train* n2 program* or train* n2 course* or train* n2 intervention*

S2 teach* n2 program* or teach* n2 course* or teach* n2 intervention* or instruct* n2 program* or instruct* n2 course* or instruct* n2 intervention*

S3 skill* n2 program* or skill* n2 course* or skill* n2 intervention* or support* n2 program* or support* n2 course* or support* n2 intervention*

S4 component* or element* or principle* or constituent* or contents

S5 S1 or S2 or S3

S6 S4 and S5

Cochrane search terms

#1 ((educat* or train* or teach* or instruct* or skill* or support*) NEAR/2 (program* or course* or intervention*)):ti,ab,kw

#2 (component* or element* or principle* or constituent* or contents):ti,ab,kw

#3 (#1 AND #2)

PsychInfo search terms

1 educational programs/

2 ((educat$ OR train$ OR teach$ OR instruct$ OR skill$ OR support$) adj2 (program$ OR course$ OR intervention$)).ti,ab

3 or/1-2
4 (component$ OR element$ OR principle$ OR constituent$ OR contents).ti,ab
5 3 and 4

E.3.3 Risk communication

What methods of presenting information improve a patient's understanding of the risks and benefits associated with their treatment options?

Search constructed by combining the columns in the following table using the AND Boolean operator

Population	Intervention / exposure	Comparison	Study filter used	Date parameters
Risk	Communication, presentation		Systematic reviews of RCTs (Medline and Embase only); systematic reviews (Cinahl and PsychInfo only)	Searches run to 09/05/2011

Medline search terms

1 exp *risk/
2 risk$.ti,ab.
3 or/1-2
4 exp communication/ or audiovisual aids/ or data interpretation, statistical/
5 1 and 4
6 (fram$ adj2 (effect$ or positiv$ or negativ$)).ti,ab.
7 (information$ adj5 display).ti,ab.
8 ((graph$ or visual$ or statistic$) adj3 (present$ or format$)).ti,ab.
9 framing.ti.
10 or/6-9
11 3 and 10
12 (risk$ adj2 (language$ or communicat$ or presentation$ or presenting or inform$ or tailor$ or individuali?e$ or personal$ or rate$ or reference class$)).ti,ab.
13 or/5,11-12

Embase search terms

1 exp *risk/
2 risk$.ti,ab.
3 or/1-2
4 exp interpersonal communication/
5 audiovisual equipment/
6 statistical analysis/
7 or/4-6
8 1 and 7
9 (fram$ adj2 (effect$ or positiv$ or negativ$)).ti,ab.
10 (information$ adj5 display).ti,ab.
11 ((graph$ or visual$ or statistic$) adj3 (present$ or format$)).ti,ab.
12 framing.ti.

13 or/9-12

14 3 and 13

15 (risk$ adj2 (language$ or communicat$ or presentation$ or presenting or inform$ or tailor$ or individuali?e$ or personal$ or rate$ or reference class$)).ti,ab.

16 or/8,14-15

Cinahl search terms

S1 (MM "Risk Factors+")

S2 (MM "Attributable Risk") OR (MM "Relative Risk")

S3 (MH "Communication+")

S4 (MH "Audiovisuals")

S5 (MH "Data Analysis, Statistical")

S6 S3 or S4 or S5

S7 S1 or S2

S8 S6 and S7

S9 risk*

S10 fram* n2 effect* or fram* n2 positiv* or fram* n2 negativ*

S11 information* n5 display

S12 graph* n3 present* or graph* n3 format* or visual* n3 present* or visual* n3 format* or statistic* n3 present* or statistic* n3 format*

S13 TI framing

S14 S10 or S11 or S12 or S13

S15 S7 or S9

S16 risk* n2 language* or risk* n2 communicat* or risk* n2 presentation* or risk* n2 presenting or risk* n2 inform* or risk* n2 tailor* or risk* n2 individuali?e* or risk* n2 personal* or risk* n2 rate* or risk* n2 reference class*

S17 S14 and S15

S18 S8 or S16 or S17

Cochrane search terms

#1 MeSH descriptor Risk explode all trees

#2 MeSH descriptor Communication explode all trees

#3 MeSH descriptor Audiovisual Aids, this term only

#4 MeSH descriptor Data Interpretation, Statistical, this term only

#5 (#2 or #3 or #4)

#6 (#1 AND #5)

#7 risk*:ti,ab,kw

#8 (#1 OR #7)

#9 (fram* NEAR/2 (effect* or positiv* or negativ*)):ti,ab,kw

#10 (information* NEAR/5 display):ti,ab,kw

#11 ((graph* or visual* or statistic*) NEAR/3 (present* or format*)):ti,ab,kw

#12 framing:ti

#13 (#9 OR #10 OR #11 OR #12)

#14 (#13 AND #9)

#15 (risk* NEAR/2 (language* or communicat* or presentation* or presenting or inform* or tailor* or individuali?e* or personal* or rate* or reference class*)):ti,ab,kw

#16 (#6 OR #14 OR #15)

PsychInfo search terms

1 risk assessment/ or risk factors/ or risk perception/
2 risk$.ti,ab
3 or/1-2
4 audiovisual communications media/
5 statistical analysis/
6 communication/ or exp augmentative communication/ or exp electronic communication/ or exp interpersonal communication/ or exp nonverbal communication/ or exp persuasive communication/ or scientific communication/ or exp verbal communication/
7 or/4-6
8 1 and 7
9 ((fram$ adj2 (effect$ OR positive$ OR negative$))).ti,ab
10 ((information$ adj5 display)).ti,ab
11 (((graph$ OR visual$ OR statistic$) adj3 (present$ OR format$))).ti,ab
12 framing.ti
13 or/9-12
14 3 and 13
15 (risk$ adj2 (language$ OR communicat$ OR presentation$ OR presenting OR inform$ OR tailor$ OR individualis$ OR individualiz$ OR personal$ OR rate$ OR reference class$)).ti,ab
16 or/8,14-15

E.4 Economics searches

E.4.1 Decision aids

As the Cochrane review used to inform this area included economic considerations as an outcome searches were only run in NHS EED, HTA and HEED in order to supplement that data.

Economic searches were conducted in HEED and CRD for NHS EED and HTA.

Population	Intervention / exposure	Comparison	Study filter used	Date parameters
Decision aids				Searches run to 10/05/2011

CRD search terms

#1 "decision support"
#2 "shared decision"
#3 "decision aid*"
#4 #1 or #2 or #3

HEED search terms

1 AX='decision aids' OR 'decision aid'
2 AX='shared decision'
3 AX='decision support'
4 CS=1 OR 2 OR 3

E.4.2 Midwife-led care

Economic searches were conducted in Medline, Embase, HEED and CRD for NHS EED and HTA.

Population	Intervention / exposure	Comparison	Study filter used	Date parameters

Population	Intervention / exposure	Comparison	Study filter used	Date parameters
Midwife-led care			Economic (Medline and Embase only	Searches run to 10/05/2011

CRD search terms

#1 (midwif* NEAR team*) OR (midwif* NEAR model*) OR (midwif* NEAR led) OR (midwif* NEAR manag*)

#2 MeSH DESCRIPTOR continuity of patient care WITH QUALIFIER undefined

#3 (multidisciplinary NEAR team*) OR (share* NEAR care) OR (medical* NEAR led) OR (medical* NEAR manag*)

#4 #2 OR #3

#5 MeSH DESCRIPTOR pregnancy EXPLODE ALL TREES WITH QUALIFIER undefined

#6 MeSH DESCRIPTOR pregnancy EXPLODE ALL TREES WITH QUALIFIER undefined

#7 MeSH DESCRIPTOR obstetrics WITH QUALIFIER undefined

#8 MeSH DESCRIPTOR maternal health services EXPLODE ALL TREES WITH QUALIFIER undefined

#9 MeSH DESCRIPTOR midwifery WITH QUALIFIER undefined

#10 (pregnan*) OR (midwif*)

#11 #5 OR #6 OR #7 OR #8 OR #9

#12 #4 AND #10

#13 #1 OR #11

HEED search terms

1 AX=midwif*

2 AX=led or manag* or model* or team*

3 CS=1 AND 2

4 AX='multidisciplinary team' or 'multidisciplinary teams' or 'shared care'

5 AX=midwif* or pregnan*

6 CS=4 AND 5

7 CS=3 OR 6

Medline search terms

1 (midwif$ adj led).ti,ab.

2 (midwif$ adj2 team$).ti,ab.

3 (midwif$ adj model$).ti,ab.

4 (midwif$ adj manag$).ti,ab.

5 or/1-4

6 "Continuity of Patient Care"/

7 (medical adj manag$).ti,ab.

8 (medical$ adj led).ti,ab.

9 (multidisciplinary adj team$).ti,ab.

10 (share$ adj care).ti,ab.

11 or/6-10

12 exp Pregnancy/

13 Obstetrics/

14 exp Maternal Health Services/

15 Midwifery/

16 (pregnan$ or midwif$).ti,ab.

17 or/12-16

18 11 and 17
19 5 or 18

Embase search terms

1 (midwif$ adj2 team$).ti,ab.
2 (midwif$ adj model$).ti,ab.
3 (midwif$ adj led).ti,ab.
4 (midwif$ adj manag$).ti,ab.
5 or/1-4
6 *patient care/
7 exp *nursing care delivery system/
8 (multidisciplinary adj team$).ti,ab.
9 (share$ adj care).ti,ab.
10 (medical$ adj led).ti,ab.
11 (medical adj manag$).ti,ab.
12 or/7-11
13 exp *pregnancy/
14 exp *midwife/
15 exp *obstetric care/
16 (pregnan$ or midwif$).ti,ab.
17 or/13-16
18 12 and 17
19 5 or 18

Appendix F: Evidence tables: clinical studies

F.1 Decision aids

Table 41: Clinical evidence profile on Decision Aids.

Reference	Methodological quality of the included studies	Study type / quality	Patient characteristics	Intervention Comparison	Outcome measures	Source of funding
STACEY 2011[115]	Each study was assessed for risk of bias. Included studies ranged from low to high quality.	RCTs comparing decision aids to no intervention, usual care, alternative interventions, or a combination. Studies were excluded that looked at hypothetical. Lifestyle, clinical trial entry of advance directive choices; education programmes: no decision, promoting compliance; or passive informed consent materials.	People making decisions about screening or treatment options for themselves, for a child, or for an incapacitated significant other. Excluded: People making hypothetical choices.	Decision aids compared to to no intervention, usual care, alternative interventions, or a combination Excluded: Studies where people are not making an active treatment or screening decision. Studies where interventions focussed on decisions about lifestyle changes, clinical trial entry, general advance directives (e.g. do not recusitate), education programs not geared to a specific decision, interventions	Primary outcomes: evaluation criteria that map to IPDAS criteria – attributes of the choice and attributes of the decision making process, other decision making process variables. Secondary outcomes: choice (actual choice implemented, option preferred as surrogate measure), adherence to choice, health status and quality of life, anxiety, depression, emotional distress, regret, confidence, costs, cost-effectiveness,	Not reported

Reference	Methodological quality of the included studies	Study type / quality	Patient characteristics	Intervention Comparison	Outcome measures	Source of funding
				designed to promote adherence or to elicit informed consent. Studies on decision aids that were not available to the authors.	consultation length, litigation rates.	

F.2 Continuity of care (midwife-led care)

Table 42: Evidence table – continuity of care – midwife-led versus other models of care for childbearing women

Reference	Study type, question and search dates	Number of studies, study types and patients with references	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Outcome measures	Funding
DEVANE 2011[16]	Systematic review questions: Compares midwife-led models of care with other models of care for childbearing women and their infants. Determines whether midwife-led care is influenced by 1) models of midwifery care that provide differing levels of	17 studies included (Begley et al., 2009, Biro et al., 2000, Byrne et al., 2000, Chambliss et al., 1992, Flint and Poulengeris, 1987, Harvey et al., 1996, Hicks et al., 2003, Homer et al., 2001, Hundley et al., 1994, Kenny et al., 1994, Law and Lam, 1999, MacVicar et al., 1993, North Staffordshire Changing Childbirth Research Team,	RCTs, CCT and controlled before and after studies. All pregnant women who access midwife-led model at booking, during pregnancy or at the onset of labour. The risk of bias of included studies was assessed using the Cochrane	Midwife led care: midwife is the lead professional and lead carer in the planning, organisation and delivery of care given to a woman from initial booking to the postnatal period.	Medical and shared models of care. E.g. Physician/obstetrician led care: physician/obstetrician is the lead professional and midwives and/or nurses provide	Antenatal Mean number of antenatal visits Antenatal hospitalisation Antepartum haemorrhage Fetal loss/neonatal death before 24 weeks Fetal loss/neonatal death equal to/after 24 weeks Overall fetal loss and neonatal death	Royal College of Midwives

Reference	Study type, question and search dates	Number of studies, study types and patients with references	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Outcome measures	Funding
	continuity; 2) varying levels of obstetrical risk and 3) practice setting (community or hospital based). Search date: not reported	2000, Rowley et al., 1995, Turnbull et al., 1996, Waldenstrom et al., 2001, Waldenstrom et al., 1997)	Collaboration's risk of bias assessment tool. Heterogeneity was explored using pre-specified sub-group analyses in a manner similar to the Cochrane analysis[29]		intrapartrum care under medical supervision Shared care: lead professional changes depending on whether the woman is pregnant, in labour or has given birth, and on whether the care is given in the hospital, birth centre or community setting.	Labour Amniotomy Augmentation/artificial oxytocin during labour No intrapartum analgesia/anaesthesia Regional analgesia (epidural/spinal) Opiate analgesia Mean labour length Induction of labour Attendance at birth by known midwife High perceptions of control during labour and childbirth Birth and immediate postnatal Caesarean birth Instrumental vaginal birth (forceps/vacuum assisted births) Spontaneous vaginal birth (as defined by trial authors) Episiotomy Perineal laceration requiring suturing Intact perineum Postpartum haemorrhage (as defined by trial authors)	

Reference	Study type, question and search dates	Number of studies, study types and patients with references	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Outcome measures	Funding
						Maternal death Neonatal Low birth weight (< 2500 g) Preterm birth (< 37 weeks) 5-minute Apgar score below or equal to 7 Admission to special care nursery/neonatal intensive care unit Mean length of neonatal hospital stay (days) Neonatal convulsions (as defined by trial authors)	

Effect sizes:

Outcome	N	Effect size
Mean number of antenatal visits	1 study, 405 participants	Mean difference (MD) 1.50; 95% CI 0.96 to 2.04
Antenatal hospitalisation	6 trials, 5990 participants	Relative Risk 0.96; 95% CI 0.89 to 1.03,
Antepartum haemorrhage	5 trials, 5308 participants	RR 0.87; 95% CI 0.66 to 1.14,
Fetal loss/neonatal death before 24 weeks	11 trials, 16213 participants	RR 0.88; 95% CI 0.73 to 1.05,
Fetal loss/neonatal death equal to/after 24 weeks	12 trials, 17927 participants	RR 1.16; 95% CI 0.81 to 1.66,
Overall fetal loss and neonatal death	13 trials, 18129 participants	RR 0.93; 95% CI 0.79 to 1.09
Amniotomy	6 trials, 6068 participants	RR 0.80; 95% CI 0.75 to 0.85,
Augmentation/artificial oxytocin during labour	14 trials, 19035 participants	RR 0.85; 95% CI 0.81 to 0.89

Reference	Study type, question and search dates	Number of studies, study types and patients with references	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Outcome measures	Funding
No intrapartum analgesia/anaesthesia			8 trials, 11693 participants		RR 1.17; 95% CI 1.07 to 1.28		
Regional analgesia (epidural/spinal)			16 trials, 19418 participants		RR 0.82; 95% CI 0.78 to 0.87		
Opiate analgesia			14 trials, 17723 participants		RR 0.92; 95% CI 0.88 to 0.95		
Mean labour length			4 trials, 5089 participants		MD 0.49; 95% CI 0.26 to 0.72		
Induction of labour			13 trials, 17987 participants		RR 0.94; 95% CI 0.89 to 1.01		
Attendance at birth by known midwife			6 trials, 5225 participants		RR 7.99; 95% CI 7.03 to 9.08		
High perceptions of control during labour and childbirth			1 trial, 471 participants		RR 1.74; 95% CI 1.32 to 2.30		
Caesarean birth			17 trials, 20010 participants		RR 0.94; 95% CI 0.87 to 1.02		
Instrumental vaginal birth (forceps/vacuum assisted births)			16 trials, 19737 participants		RR 0.86; 95% CI 0.80 to 0.93		
Spontaneous vaginal birth (as defined by trial authors)			14 trials, 17117 participants		RR 1.04; 95% CI 1.02 to 1.06		
Episiotomy			17 trials, 19866 participants		RR 0.86; 95% CI 0.8 2 to 0.90		
Perineal laceration requiring suturing			9 trials, 12052 participants		RR 0.97; 95% CI 0.94 to 1.01		
Intact perineum			11 trials, 14360 participants		RR 1.06; 95% CI 1.00 to 1.11		
Postpartum haemorrhage (as defined by trial authors)			10 trials, 12979 participants		RR 0.99; 95% CI 0.87 to 1.12		
Maternal death			1 trial, 2801 participants		RR 1.50; 95% CI 0.06 to 36.88		
Low birth weight (< 2500 g)			7 trials, 11528 participants		RR 0.97; 95% CI 0.83 to 1.15		
Preterm birth (< 37 weeks)			7 trials, 11528 participants		RR 0.95; 95% CI 0.81 to 1.11		
5-minute Apgar score below or equal to 7			13 trials, 12039 participants		RR 1.01; 95% CI 0.79 to 1.31		
Admission to special care nursery/neonatal intensive care unit			14 trials, 19155 participants		RR 0.99; 95% CI 0.90 to 1.09		
Mean length of neonatal hospital stay (days)			3 trials, 1912 participants		MD -1.83 (days); 95% CI -1.97 to -1.69		
Neonatal convulsions (as defined by trial authors)			3 trials, 4738 participants		RR 1.43; 95% CI 0.38 to 5.34		
Duration of postnatal hospital stay (days)			3 trials, 3597 participants		MD -0.10; 95% CI -0.21 to 0.01		
Postpartum depression			1 trial, 1213 participants		RR 1.94; 95% CI 0.18 to 21.32		

Reference	Study type, question and search dates	Number of studies, study types and patients with references	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Outcome measures	Funding
Breastfeeding initiation			3 trials, 3205 participants		RR 1.01; 95% CI 0.97 to 1.05		
Prolonged backache (as defined by trial authors)			1 trial, 1822 participants		RR 1.40; 95% CI 0.62 to 3.13		

F.3 Risk communication

Table 43: Individualised information: tailored interventions in screening

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Edwards AG, Evans R, Dundon J, Haigh S, Hood K, Elwyn GJ. Personalised Risk Communication for Informed Decision Making About Taking Screening	Systematic review: different types of personalised/ individualised risk communication for consumers making decisions about screening tests Medline, CENTRAL, MEDLINE, Embase, CINAHL, PsychINFO; hand searching Preventative medicine; citation searches and	22 studies (13 for mammography; 4 breast cancer genetic testing; 3 cervical screening; 2 cholesterol screening; 2 colorectal cancer screening; 1 prostate cancer screening; some covered more than 1 topic); 5 studies of people at higher risk. Bastani 1999*; Bowen 2002; Campbell 1997; Champion 1994; Champion 1995; Champion 2000; Champion 2002; Champion 2003; Curry	RCTs (excluding those of mass communication or military, school or prison-based interventions where consumers are less free to choose than in other settings) Consumers making real life (not	Personalised risk communication based on individual's risk factors (presented as absolute or relative risk or risk score or high/medium/low risk categories). Could come before screening, at the time of	Generalised risk information (e.g. population risk estimate, general info on risk factors, general encouragement to acknowledge risks or change risk behaviour)	Up to 3 years	Cognitive (e.g. knowledge or risk perception), affective (e.g. anxiety, satisfaction with decision made, decisional conflict [i.e. whether individual feels that decision is consistent with their values and certainty about	Department of Health UK, Cochrane Health Promotion and Public Health Field, Australia

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Tests. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2006;(4):CD001865. (Guideline Ref ID EDWARDS 2006)[18]	reference lists to December 2005	1993*; Hutchison 1998; Jibaja-Weiss 2003*; Kreuter 1996*; Lee 1991; Lerman 1995; Lerman 1997; Lipkus 2005*; Myers 1999*; Rimer 2002*; Saywell 1999; Schwartz 1999; Skinner 1994*; Skinner 2002*; *Also in Albada 2009 No overlap with Akl 2011, Edwards 2001, Lopez 2008, Smerecnik 2009. N of studies ranged from 160 to 3,152	hypothetical) decisions about whether to undergo healthcare screening tests (individuals, couples or immediate families e.g. parents making decisions on behalf of young children)	screening, or at the time of counselling or promotion of screening; could be oral, written, video or electronic			making the right decision, emotional wellbeing, intention to take up screening) or behavioural outcomes (e.g. uptake of screening tests, adherence to choice, "appropriate" uptake), health status outcomes/ quality of life measures (e.g.SF-36), economic outcomes (cost of intervention)	

Effect size

	Overall		Pap smears		Mammography		Cholesterol tests	
Outcome	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size
Knowledge regarding screening test/ condition	2/568	MD:2.45 (1.94 to 2.96)			1/804	OR:1.44 (0.95 to		

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients		Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
concerned							2.19)		
Perceiving self as appropriate candidate for test		1/214	OR: 0.65 (0.35 to 1.19)						
Accurately perceived risk		3/1264	OR: 1.46 (1.13 to 1.88)			1/804	OR:1.17 (0.86 to 1.60)		
Anxiety		2/499	MD:-0.03 (-0.30 to +0.25)						
Intention to take screening test		5/2016	OR: 0.86 (0.71 to 1.03)	1/984	OR:0.58 (0.45 to 0.74)	1/478	OR: 0.53 (0.36 to 0.76)		
Uptake of screening test		14/7341	OR: 1.13 (1.02 to 1.24)	3/1552	OR:0.62 (0.50 to 0.77)	11/5234	OR: 1.11 (0.98 to 1.24)	1/276	OR: 0.98 (0.57 to 1.65)
Appropriate use of cholesterol test		1/3152	OR: 1.32 (1.14 to 1.55)					1/3152	OR: 1.32 (1.14 to 1.55)
Smoking		1/204	OR: 1.04 (0.60 to 1.82)						
Improvement in risk comprehension/ perception		1/200	OR: 1.64 (0.83 to 3.25)						
Making a recommended behaviour change		1/890	OR: 0.98 (0.76 to 1.28)						

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding

	High risk people		Colorectal screening		Prostate cancer screening	
Outcome	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size
Knowledge regarding screening test/ condition concerned	2/568	MD: 2.45 (1.94 to 2.96)				
Perceiving self as appropriate candidate for test	1/214	OR: 0.65 (0.35 to 1.19)				
Accurately perceived risk	2/460	OR: 2.25 (1.44 to 3.53)				
Anxiety	2/499	MD: -0.03 (-0.30 to +0.25)				
Intention to take screening test	2/540	OR: 0.84 (0.55 to 1.27)				
Uptake of screening test	5/3145	OR: 1.45 (1.23 to 1.71)	1/278	OR: 2.09 (0.76 to 5.75)	1/413	OR: 2.56 (1.70 to 3.84)

Authors' conclusions

Personalised risk information may have a small effect on increasing uptake of screening tests and there is only limited evidence that the interventions have promoted or achieved informed decision making by consumers.

Table 44: Genetic counselling: increase in risk perception accuracy

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Smerecnik CM, Mesters I, Verweij E, de Vries NK, de Vries H. A Systematic Review of the Impact of Genetic Counseling on Risk Perception Accuracy. Journal of Genetic Counseling. 2009; 18(3):217-228. (Guideline Ref ID SMERECNIK2009)[1] [14]	Systematic review: impact of genetic counselling on risk perception accuracy. Search from 2000 to February 2007: PubMed; EMBASE, Web of Science; ERIC; PsycInfo; Google Scholar for papers and grey literature; hand searching of specific journals; key author and reference list searches.	19 studies (Bjorvatn 2007; Bowen 2006; Codori 2005; Gurmankin 2005; Hopwood 2003; Hopwood 2004; Huiart 2002; Kaiser 2004; Kelly 2003; Kent 2000; Lidén 2003; Lobb 2004; Meiser 2001; Nordin 2002; Pieterse 2006; Rimes 2006; Rothemund 2001; Tercyak 2001; Van Dijk 2003). No overlap with Akl 2001, Albada 2009, Edwards 2001, Edwards 2006, Lopez 2008 N of studies ranged from 44 to 397	Prospective or randomised controlled studies published after 2000; focus on genetic risk perception; effect of genetic counselling on risk perception accuracy assessed quantitatively; original research published in English in peer reviewed journals. Excluded if examined changes in risk perception not linked to objective risk estimate; risk perception as determinant of genetic counselling participation; or decision aids vs. standard genetic counselling; qualitative only. Patients at risk (not intermediaries e.g. genetic counsellors or nurses).	Genetic counselling: 4 studies used a protocol; 2 used standardised script; 3 used audiotapes to content check the counselling session; 12 did not mention any of these measures of content; the quality of the genetic counselling descriptions was poor.	Pre- to post-counselling measures of risk perception accuracy	Up to 1 year after counselling	The effect of genetic counselling on risk perception accuracy. Measured by: 1) changes in proportion of individuals who accurately perceive their risk; 2) degree of overestimation or underestimation of risk	Maastricht University

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding

Effect size

Given the heterogeneity of the studies (including definitions of risk perception accuracy and potentially substantial differences between counselling sessions' content and quality), they were not pooled in a meta-analysis; results of each study were tabulated.

1) Studies of changes in proportion of individuals who accurately perceive their risk

Study	n	Measurement moment	Accurate (%)	Underestimation (%)	Overestimation (%)	p value
Bjorvatn 2007	213	Pre-counselling	81	9	10	p<0.001
		Immediately post-counselling	86	9	5	
Hopwood 2003	158	Pre-counselling	7	52	38	p<0.001
		3 months post-counselling	68	9	20	
		6 months post-counselling	63	9	25	
		9 months post-counselling	63	9	25	
		12 months post-counselling	61	9	25	
Hopwood 2004	256	Pre-counselling	63	27	9	NS
		1 month post-counselling	71	21	8	
		12 months post-counselling	73	21	7	
Huiart 2002	397		Low risk:			p<0.001
		Pre-counselling	6.3	0	93.7	
		1-7 days post-counselling	23.8	0	76.3	
			High risk:			NS
		Pre-counselling	87.7	12.3	0	
		1-7 days post-counselling	89.5	10.5	0	
Lidén 2003	86	Pre-counselling	17	36	47	p<0.01
		Post-counselling	54	18	28	
		1 year post	28	33	39	
Lobb 2004	89	Pre-counselling	50	27	23	not stated

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
		Post-counselling	70	20	10			
Meiser 2001	218	Pre-counselling 12 months post-counselling	54 54	12 14	34 31		NS	
Nordin 2002	63	Pre-counselling Post-counselling	18 57	38 18	44 25		not stated	
Pieterse 2006	51	Pre-counselling Post-counselling	48 51	not reported	not reported		NS	
Rimes 2006	150	Pre-counselling 6 months post-counselling	12.6 18	3.3 4.0	84.1 78.0		NS	
Rothemund 2001	44	Post counselling counselees Controls	39 38	0 14	48 48		NS (Note figures do not add up to 100% - may be error in paper)	

2) Studies of the degree of overestimation or underestimation of risk

Study	n	Time	Mean overestimation (SD)	p value
Bowen 2006	211	Pre-counselling 6 months post-counselling	19 6	p<0.001
Codori 2005	101	Pre-counselling Immediately post-counselling	30 30	not stated
Gurmankin 2005	108	Pre-counselling 1-7 days post-counselling	42% 19	p<0.001
Kaiser 2004	123	Pre-counselling Post-counselling	14.94 7.8	p<0.0005
Kelly 2003	99	Pre-counselling 1-2 days post-counselling	23 16.6	not stated
Kent 2000	90	Pre-counselling	not given	NS

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
			3 month post-counselling 6 months post-counselling					
Tercyak 2001		129	Pre-counselling Post-counselling		11.5 7.8		p<0.001	
Van Dijk 2003		241	Low risk: post-counselling High risk: post-counselling		43.86 no data		not stated reported as NS	

Authors' conclusions

Overall, the studies indicate that genetic counselling has a positive impact on risk perception accuracy, sustained even at follow up 1 year later, but some studies observed no effect (several of these had small sample sizes), or only in low-risk individuals.

The proportion of people who correctly assessed their risk increased from mean of 42% pre- to 58% post-counselling. But on average 25% (range 5-76%) still overestimated their risk and 19.5% (7-55%) underestimated it after counselling.

In studies assessing mean overestimation of risk, mean overestimation reduced from 25% (range 11.5-42%) before counselling to 18% (6-40%) after counselling.

Studies in which the counsellor interpreted information about family history and heredity as well as personal risk estimates positively influenced risk perception accuracy, although this was not significant in 2 studies. Studies not mentioning giving counselees this information did not see an improvement in risk perception accuracy, except in 1 study.

Some studies that educated counselees about heredity, preventive options and personal risk observed a positive impact on risk perception accuracy but others did not.

Similarly, some studies identified as facilitating informed decisions and adaptation to personal risk observed a positive impact but others did not.

Table 45: Tailored interventions in cancer risk (based on a person's behavioural change variables, cultural constructs, cancer risk factors)

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Albada A, Ausems MG, Bensing JM, van Dulmen S. Tailored Information About Cancer Risk and Screening: A Systematic Review. Patient Education & Counseling. 2009; 77(2):155-171. (Guideline Ref ID ALBADA2009)[2]	Systematic review: What effects are found of tailored interventions on risk perception, cancer knowledge and screening behaviour? Search to June 2007: PubMed; Embase; CINAHL; PsychInfo; Cochrane	40 studies included (Bastani 1999; Champion 2007; Champion 2006; Champion 2002; Clark 2002; Curry 1993; Emmons 2004; Glazebrook 2006; Jerant 2006; Jibaja-Weiss 2003; Kreuter 2005; Kreuter 1996; Kreuter 1995; Lipkus 2006; Lipkus 2000; Marcus 2005; McBride 2002; McCaul 2002; Prochaska2005; Rakowski 1998; Rimer 2002; Rimer 2001; Rimer 1999; Saywell 2004; Skinner 2007; Skinner 2002; Skinner 1994; Weinstein 2004). 12 "included" but not presented in synthesis (Campbell 2004; Campbell 2002; Emmons 2005; Gelle 2006; Jibaja 2000; Lipkus 2005; Marcus 1992; Myers 1999; Rakowski 2003; Smit West 2004; Valanis 2003; Valanis 2002). No overlap with	37 RCTs remaining 3 described randomised designs with a comparison but no control group. Patients or individuals at risk of developing cancer (35 studies had participants at population risk of cancer; 5 aimed at high-risk respondents i.e. those with abnormal screening result, cancer history, first-degree relative of cancer patient, counselees in cancer genetic counselling) 19 studies on breast cancer; 6 breast and ovarian/cervical cancer; 1 cervical cancer only; 7 colorectal cancer; 2 general/several cancers; 2 skin cancer; 2 lung cancer; 1 prostate cancer. 2 high quality; 7 moderate; 19 low quality. Quality was assessed according to the minimal checklist for	Intervention groups receiving tailored information, based on more than one variable (behavioural change variables, cultural constructs, cancer risk factors) Most comprised letters, booklets or magazines; 6 were computer-delivered	Control groups receiving no information, standard information or usual care	Up to 2 years post-intervention	Cancer risk perception (7 studies) or knowledge (4 articles) or behaviour related to cancer screening (18 mammography; 3 pap test; 2 faecal occult blood test; 1 mole checking)	Dutch Cancer Society

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
		Akl 2001, Edwards 2001, Lopez 2008, Smerecnik 2009. See below for overlap with Edwards 2006 N of studies ranged from 49 to 5407	assessing quality of RCTs of the Cochrane Collaboration (high = ≥4/7; moderate = 3/7; low = ≤2/7)					

Effect size

Significant effects only were tabulated for each included study (some data shown; others only described as significant without presentation of data).

A "best evidence synthesis" was carried out, not a meta-analysis, due to heterogeneity. This technique does not consider insignificant results or weights of studies and is thus less sensitive than meta-analysis. It does take into account the design, methodological quality and outcomes of the studies.

Only the 28 RCTs without co-intervention or with similar co-intervention in intervention and control groups were assessed for methodological quality and presented in the best evidence synthesis. The outputs were classified as "evidence" (consistent significant findings in at least 2 high-quality RCTs), "moderate evidence" (consistent significant findings in at least 1 high quality and at least 1 moderate or low quality RCT), "limited evidence" (significant findings in at least 1 high quality RCT), "indicative findings" (significant findings in at least 1 moderate or low quality RCT) or "no/insufficient evidence" (significant findings in <50% of studies with the same quality and design or results do not meet the above criteria for higher levels of evidence or conflicting results among RCTs or no eligible studies).

Outcome measure	Type of cancer/ screening/ outcome	Type of tailoring variables	Control group	No. of studies	Significant positive effect (p<0.05)	Best evidence synthesis
Knowledge of ...	Breast cancer and mammography	Risk factors and behavioural constructs	Standard reminder	1	2 low quality RCTs. At 24 months, intervention significantly improved knowledge compared to control; no	indicative findings

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
					difference at 12 months			
	Breast cancer and heredity	Risk factors, behavioural constructs and information processing constructs	Standard info	1	1 low quality RCT: at 2-week follow up, intervention group had greater improvement in knowledge (p<0.0001)		indicative findings	
	Melanoma	Risk factors	No intervention	1	1 high quality RCT: 6 months post-intervention: higher increase in knowledge (OR 0.51, 95% CI 0.30-0.72, p<0.001) in intervention group compared to control		limited evidence	
Risk perception	Accuracy of perceived cancer risks	Risk factors	Standard info	2	1 moderate quality: no significant effects and 1 moderate quality RCT: group receiving personalised relative and absolute risk had greater improvement on relative risk accuracy than control (risk information only) p<0.01, as did a third group receiving absolute risk presentation only p<0.001		indicative findings	
		Risk factors	No intervention	1	None		no evidence	
		Risk factors and behavioural constructs	Standard reminder/ no intervention	2	2 low quality RCTs: 1 data not shown; the other found that individualised risk feedback reduced perceived cancer risk among over-estimators: OR 1.36, p<0.05 at 6 months		indicative findings	
Screening for ... (adherence to recommended	Breast cancer (mammography)	Risk factors	Standard or personalised (i.e. named for that	3	1 low quality RCT: higher increase in mammography rate in intervention group (10.2% vs. 2.5%		insufficient evidence	

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
screening interval)			person but not with tailoring) info		with standard info; p=0.05) 1 moderate quality RCT: women receiving personalised tailored letter had lower pap-test and mammography rate compared to control group and women receiving personalised form letter with risk factor information on BC and cervical cancer. Latter group had higher screening rates than control (p <0.001)			
		Behavioural constructs	Standard info	4	none		no evidence	
			No intervention	10	6 low quality RCTs: OR for screening ranged from 1.07 to 1.72 in the 4 studies reporting this; 1 study reported an ARR of 1.29 but it is unclear what this is referring to.		indicative findings	
		Risk factors and behavioural constructs	Standard reminder/ no intervention	2	none		no evidence	
		Behavioural and cultural constructs	No intervention	1	1 moderate quality RCT: OR for screening 2.6, 95% CI 1.1-6.1 at 17 months post-intervention		indicative findings	
	Cervical cancer (pap test)	Risk factors	Personalised info	1	none		no evidence	
		Behavioural constructs	No intervention	2	none		no evidence	
	Colorectal cancer (faecal occult blood	Risk factors	Standard info	1	none		no evidence	

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
	test)							
		Risk factors and behavioural constructs	Standard info	1	none		no evidence	
	Skin cancer (mole checking)	Risk factors	No intervention	1	1 high quality RCT: 6 months post-intervention: higher mole checking (OR 1.67, 95% CI 1.04-2.70) in intervention group		limited evidence	

Authors' conclusions

This review indicated that tailoring based on behavioural constructs (e.g. attitudes, intentions, stages of change) seems more effective than tailoring based on risk factors only (e.g. family history); it might be advisable to use both behavioural constructs and risk factors, and possibly other variables such as cultural characteristics.

Table 46: Tailored interventions in screening

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Edwards AG, Evans R, Dundon J, Haigh S, Hood K, Elwyn GJ. Personalised Risk Communication for	Systematic review: different types of personalised/ individualised risk communication for consumers making decisions about screening tests Medline, CENTRAL, MEDLINE, Embase,	22 studies (13 for mammography; 4 breast cancer genetic testing; 3 cervical screening; 2 cholesterol screening; 2 colorectal cancer screening; 1 prostate cancer screening; some covered more than 1 topic); 5 studies of people at higher risk.	RCTs (excluding those of mass communication or military, school or prison-based interventions where consumers are less free to	Personalised risk communication based on individual's risk factors (presented as absolute or relative risk or risk score or high/medium/lo	Generalised risk information (e.g. population risk estimate, general info on risk factors, general encouragemen	Up to 3 years	Cognitive (e.g. knowledge or risk perception), affective (e.g. anxiety, satisfaction with decision made, decisional conflict [i.e. whether	Department of Health UK, Cochrane Health Promotion and Public Health Field, Australia

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Informed Decision Making About Taking Screening Tests. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2006;(4):CD001865. (Guideline Ref ID EDWARDS2006)[18]	CINAHL, PsychINFO; hand searching Preventative medicine; citation searches and reference lists to December 2005	Bastani 1999*; Bowen 2002; Campbell 1997; Champion 1994; Champion 1995; Champion 2000; Champion 2002; Champion 2003; Curry 1993*; Hutchison 1998; Jibaja-Weiss 2003*; Kreuter 1996*; Lee 1991; Lerman 1995; Lerman 1997; Lipkus 2005*; Myers 1999*; Rimer 2002*; Saywell 1999; Schwartz 1999; Skinner 1994*; Skinner 2002*; *Also in Albada 2009 No overlap with Akl 2011, Edwards 2001, Lopez 2008, Smerecnik 2009. N of studies ranged from 160 to 3,152	choose than in other settings) Consumers making real life (not hypothetical) decisions about whether to undergo healthcare screening tests (individuals, couples or immediate families e.g. parents making decisions on behalf of young children)	w risk categories). Could come before screening, at the time of screening, or at the time of counselling or promotion of screening; could be oral, written, video or electronic	t to acknowledge risks or change risk behaviour)		individual feels that decision is consistent with their values and certainty about making the right decision, emotional wellbeing, intention to take up screening) or behavioural outcomes (e.g. uptake of screening tests, adherence to choice, "appropriate" uptake), health status outcomes/ quality of life measures (e.g.SF-36), economic outcomes (cost of intervention)	
Effect size								

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding

	Overall		Pap smears		Mammography		Cholesterol tests	
Outcome	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size
Knowledge regarding screening test/ condition concerned	2/568	MD:2.45 (1.94 to 2.96)			1/804	OR:1.44 (0.95 to 2.19)		
Perceiving self as appropriate candidate for test	1/214	OR: 0.65 (0.35 to 1.19)						
Accurately perceived risk	3/1264	OR: 1.46 (1.13 to 1.88)			1/804	OR:1.17 (0.86 to 1.60)		
Anxiety	2/499	MD:-0.03 (-0.30 to +0.25)						
Intention to take screening test	5/2016	OR: 0.86 (0.71 to 1.03)	1/984	OR:0.58 (0.45 to 0.74)	1/478	OR: 0.53 (0.36 to 0.76)		
Uptake of screening test	14/7341	OR: 1.13 (1.02 to 1.24)	3/1552	OR:0.62 (0.50 to 0.77)	11/5234	OR: 1.11 (0.98 to 1.24)	1/276	OR: 0.98 (0.57 to 1.65)
Appropriate use of cholesterol test	1/3152	OR: 1.32 (1.14 to 1.55)					1/3152	OR: 1.32 (1.14 to 1.55)
Smoking	1/204	OR: 1.04 (0.60 to 1.82)						
Improvement in risk comprehension/ perception	1/200	OR: 1.64 (0.83 to 3.25)						

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Making a recommended behaviour change	1/890	OR: 0.98 (0.76 to 1.28)						

	High risk people		Colorectal screening		Prostate cancer screening	
Outcome	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size	Studies/people	Effect size
Knowledge regarding screening test/ condition concerned	2/568	MD: 2.45 (1.94 to 2.96)				
Perceiving self as appropriate candidate for test	1/214	OR: 0.65 (0.35 to 1.19)				
Accurately perceived risk	2/460	OR: 2.25 (1.44 to 3.53)				
Anxiety	2/499	MD: -0.03 (-0.30 to +0.25)				
Intention to take screening test	2/540	OR: 0.84 (0.55 to 1.27)				
Uptake of screening test	5/3145	OR: 1.45 (1.23 to 1.71)	1/278	OR: 2.09 (0.76 to 5.75)	1/413	OR: 2.56 (1.70 to 3.84)

Authors' conclusions

Personalised risk information may have a small effect on increasing uptake of screening tests and there is only limited evidence that the interventions have promoted or achieved informed decision making by consumers.

Table 47: Alternative statistical formats for presenting information

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Akl EA, Oxman AD, Herrin J, Vist GE, Terrenato I, Sperati F, Costiniuk C, Blank D, Schunemann H. Using Alternative Statistical Formats for Presenting Risks and Risk Reductions. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2011; 3:CD006776. (Guideline Ref ID AKL2011)[1]	Systematic review: To evaluate the effects of using alternative statistical presentations of the same risks and risk reductions on understanding, perception, persuasiveness and behaviour of health professionals, policy makers and consumers. Search to October 2007 of Medline, Embase, PsychLit, Cochrane Controlled Trials Register; related articles in Medline; articles published by first authors of included/excluded but closely related studies; reference lists; experts in the field.	35 studies (Adily 2004; Bobbio 1994; Bramwell 2006 (midwives, obstetricians, pregnant women); Brotons 2002; Bucher 1994; Carling 2008; Carling 2009; Chao 2003; Cranney 1996; Damur 2000; Davey 2005; Fahey 1995; Forrow 1992 (a=cholesterol, b=hypertension); Gigerenzer 1996; Heller 2004; Hux 1995; Kurzenhäuser 2002; Lacy 2001; Loewen 1999; Malenka 1993; Mellers 1999; Misselbrook 2001; Natter 2005 (RRR and ARR with or without baseline risk); Naylor 1992; Nexoe 2002a; Nexoe 2002b; Nikolajevic-Sarunac 1999; Sarfati 1998; Schwartz 1997 (ARR	Randomised (30 studies) and non-randomised (4 studies) parallel (22 studies) and crossover (19 studies) studies. Excluded if compared positive and negative framing of same message; alternative graphical or verbal presentations of the same evidence; alternative orders of comparing risks or comparisons; alternative media to present same information; studies in which participants chose between different interventions with different benefits and harms using alternative presentations formats as differences in	a) Risk frequencies (e.g. 1 in 20) b) Relative risk reduction (RRR) c) RRR d) ARR	a) Risk probabilities (e.g. 0.05) b) Absolute risk reduction (ARR) c) Number needed to treat (NNT) d) NNT	Not applicable	Objective understanding (e.g. correctly stating which treatment is more effective); perception of effectiveness of intervention (e.g. perceived effectiveness of vaccination); persuasiveness (how likely participants are to make a decision in favour of an intervention e.g. cholesterol treatment); actual decisions or behaviours (the primary outcome, but no studies reported this); the other 3 secondary outcomes were considered surrogates for behaviour.	Norwegian Research Council; European Commission

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
		and RRR with or without baseline risk); Sedlmeier 2001; Sheridan 2003; Straus 2002; Ward 1999; Wolf 2000; Young 2003). No overlap with Albada 2009, Lopez 2008, Smerecnik 2009 See below for overlap with Edwards 2001 N of studies ranged from 17 to 2978	presentation confounded by those in benefits/harms. Health professionals, policy makers or consumers (patients, general public, students) eligible; no studies found including policy makers; 14 assessed health professionals, 20 consumers and 1 both. Studies covered chronic diseases, genetic testing and vaccination					

Effect size

Comparison	Outcome	No. of studies	Overall results (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	No. of points difference on 10-point Likert scale	P value	Heterogeneity	Quality of evidence	Subgroup: consumers (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	Subgroup: health professionals (pooled SMD and 95% CI)	Sensitivity analysis
a) Natural frequencies	Understanding	5	0.69 (0.45 to 0.93) in favour	1.4	p=0.11	I2=43%,	Moderate	0.60 (0.31 to 0.88)	0.94 (0.53 to 1.34)	none

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics				Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
vs. probabilities			of natural frequencies								
b) RRR vs. ARR	Understanding	2	0.02 (-0.39 to +0.43) NS all consumers	<0.1	p<0.007	I2=80%,	Moderate	all consumers: 0.02 (-0.39 to +0.43) NS	none	1 high quality study: SMD 0.33 (0.03 to 0.62) in favour of RRR
	Perception	4	0.41 (0.03 to 0.79) in favour of RRR perceived as larger	0.8	p<0.00001	I2=89%,	Low	0.44 (-0.68 to +1.57)	0.39 (-0.04 to +0.82)	2 high quality comparisons: SMD 0.42 (-0.34 to +1.19)
	Persuasiveness	23	0.66 (0.51 to 0.81) in favour of RRR	1.3	p<0.00001	I2=93%,	Moderate	0.62 (0.42 to 0.83)	0.71 (0.49 to 0.93)	4 high quality comparisons: 0.67 (0.57 to 0.76)
c) RRR vs. NNT	Understanding	1	all consumers: 0.73 (0.43 to 1.04) in favour of RRR	1.5	NA	NA	Moderate	all consumers: 0.73 (0.43 to 1.04)	none	none
	Perception	3	all health professionals: 1.15 (0.80 to 1.50) in favour of RRR	2.3	p=0.004	I2=82%,	Moderate	none	all health professionals: 1.15 (0.80 to 1.50)	none
	Persuasiveness	21	0.65 (0.51 to 0.80) in favour of RRR	1.3	p<0.00001	I2=91%,	Moderate	0.66 (0.46 to 0.86)	0.65 (0.42 to 0.87)	3 high quality comparisons: 0.62 (0.46 to 0.78)
d) ARR vs.	Understanding	1	all consumers	0.8	NA	NA	Moderate	all	none	none

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
NNT			0.42 (0.12 to 0.71) in favour of ARR				consumers 0.42 (0.12 to 0.71)		
	Perception	3	all health professionals: 0.79 (0.43 to 1.15) in favour of ARR	1.6	p=0.002	I2=84%,	Moderate	none	all health professionals: 0.79 (0.43 to 1.15)	none
	Persuasiveness	19	0.05 (-0.04 to +0.15)	0.1	p<0.00001	I2=75%,	Moderate	0.05 (-0.04 to +0.14)	0.07 (-0.10 to +0.24)	8 high quality comparisons: 0.06 (-0.06 to +0.17)

Authors' conclusions

Natural frequencies are probably better understood than probabilities. Relative risk reduction may be perceived to be larger and is more likely to be persuasive compared to absolute risk reduction and numbers needed to treat, however it is unclear if relative risk reduction is likely to help people make decisions or could lead to misinterpretation. More research is needed to further explore this question

Table 48: Formats for communicating probabilistic information

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Trevena, L., Davey,	Systematic review: to determine	15 RCTs Michielutte et al 1992; Inglis &	Patients making healthcare decisions	Numeric, absolute	No method or each	Not applicable	Perception of risk: Patient	Not reported

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
H., Barratt, A., Butow, P., and Caldwell, P.[122]	effective formats for representing probabilistic information	Farnill 1993; Gigerenzer & Hoffrage 1995; Delp & Jones 1996; O'Connor et al. 1996; Feldman-Stewart et al. 2000; Gurm & Litaker 2000; Marteau et al. 2000; Armstrong et al. 2001; Garrus et al. 2001; Hollands & Spence 2001; Man-Son-Hing et al. 2002; Christensen et al. 2003; Lee & Mehat 2003; Sheridan et al. 2003) N not reported.	Quality of individual studies is assessed using grading system in Cochrane Reviewers' Handbook 2003. All studies with grading of C were excluded.	risk, relative risk, graphical (histograms/ pie charts/line graphs, 100 faces), pictures/illustrations/diagrams, text words	other		understanding, patient knowledge and patient comprehension	

Effect size

Strategy	Level of evidence	Source of evidence	Results
Numeric representation of probabilities	Level II	Two RCTs (Marteau et al. 2000; Man-Son-Hing et al. 2000)	For both written and verbal information, patients have more accurate perception of risk if probabilistic information is presented as numbers although some may not prefer them.
Probabilities expressed as natural frequencies (i.e. event rates)	Level II	One RCT (Gigerenzer & Hoffrage 1995)	Expressing probabilities as an event rate out of 100, 1000 or 10,000 is better understood by most people compared with a probability format.

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Represent changes in risk in absolute terms or relative terms with baseline risk	Level II	Two RCTs (Christensen et al. 2003; Sheridan et al. 2003)	Absolute risk reduction or relative reduction with baseline risk information is better understood than number needed to treat and other formats.					
Represent difference in proportions as vertical bar graphs	Level II	Two RCTs (Feldman-Stewart et al. 2000; Hollands & Spence 2001)	Although numerical information is the most accurate method of estimating differences in proportions, vertical bar graphs are the quest and most accurate for discriminating general differences (compared with horizonal bars, pie charts, systematic and random ovals).					
Balanced information about benefits and harms	Level I, II	Two RCTs (Inglis & Farnill 1993; Garrud et al. 2001)	In some settings, detailed written risk information (including harms) increases knowledge and satisfaction without changing anxiety.					
Use of illustrations and/or cartoons	Level II	Two RCTs (Michielutte et al. 1992; Delp & Jones 1996)	Illustrations (particularly cartoons in one study) increased understanding, adherence and recall in patients leaving emergency departments compared with text only information. There was a greater effect in patients from low edicational backgrounds.					
Survival curves	Level II	One RCT (Armstrong et al. 2001)	Patients can understand survival curves, when given more than one opportunity to do so.					
Framing information as harms or benefits	Level II	One RCT (O'Connor 1989; Gurm & Litaker 2000)	Framing of information in terms of either benefits or harms can affect patient preferences.					

Table 49: "Framing": Epilepsy, cancer treatment, immunisation, screening

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
Edwards A, Elwyn G, Covey J, Matthews E, Pill R. Presenting Risk Information--A Review of the Effects of "Framing" and Other Manipulations on Patient Outcomes. Journal of Health Communication. 2001; 6(1):61-82. (Guideline Ref ID EDWARDS2001)[19]	Systematic review: how different "framing" of risk information affects key patients outcomes in a clinical setting: Medline, Embase, CINAHL, PsycLit, SCI, ASSIA, CancerLit up to 1999, plus key review articles and reference lists	24: 1) Jacoby 1993, Llewellyn-Thomas 1995, McNeil 1982, O'Connor 1996; 2) Banks 1995, Detweiler 1999, Lauver 1990, Lerman 1992, Meyerowitz 1987, Myers 1991, Rothman 1993; 3) Greenwood 1992; 4) Mazur 1990, Mazur 1994, Quaid 1990; 5) Fetting 1990, Inglis 1993; 6) Hux 1995*, Malenka 1993*, Sarfati 1998*; 7) Rook 1986, Rook 1987; 8) Van Haecht 1991; 9) Yamagishi 1997. *Studies also included in Akl 2011	Interventions with patients in a healthcare setting including real or hypothetical choices about treatment or behaviour, or where choices are of current medical relevance (e.g. skin cancer risks). Excluded if data for relevant group of subjects could not be distinguished from a total group including irrelevant topics.	1) Negative framing (e.g. chance of death) 2) Loss framing (e.g. disadvantage of not undertaking screening) 3) Numerical and graphical information 4) More data points 5) Numerical information 6) Relative risk 7) Vivid portrayal (e.g. detailed or personalised vignette) 8) Lay terminology (e.g. loss of appetite) 9) Larger denominators	1) Positive framing (e.g. chance of survival) 2) Gain framing (e.g. advantage of screening) 3) Numerical only 4) Fewer data points 5) Verbal (qualitative) information (e.g. " frequently", "rarely") 6) Absolute risk or number needed to treat 7) Abstract or general risk information 8) Medical terminology (e.g. anorexia) 9) Smaller denominators	not stated	Knowledge, anxiety, risk perception, intentions and actual behaviour: effect sizes calculated	UK National Health Service Research and Development Programme

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
		N of studies ranged from 20 to 2201						

Effect size

The authors stated that "the paucity of data in most categories made meta-analysis unlikely to be meaningful and this was not undertaken." The results for each study (both significant and non-significant) are presented in a table, followed by a narrative synthesis of each category (i.e. comparisons 1-9 listed above).

Comparison	No. of studies	Significant effects found (including effect size [ES]); no. of studies showing significant effect [method scores]	Non-significant findings reported [method scores]	Narrative synthesis
1: Negative framing vs. Positive framing	4	Subjects more likely to choose lung cancer treatment option that was riskier in the short term if outcomes positively framed (42% vs. 25%, p<0.0001, ES 0.45); 1 study [low quality score 8/22]	Change in preference for epilepsy treatment 59.4% vs. 56.7%, p=0.83 [8/22]; 1% increase in uptake of influenza vaccine, p=0.86 [14/22]; 6.7% more patients agreed to participate in treatment trial in colorectal cancer, p=0.592 [17/22]	No clear pattern of effects evident from studies in thi category
2: Loss framing vs. Gain framing	7	6 studies of detection behaviour (uptake of screening): Meta-analysis of 4 RCTs with a binary outcome for screening uptake: 601/1337 vs. 535/1316; OR 1.18 (95% CI 1.01 to 1.38). [quality scores 15/22, 17/22, 14/22, 8/22] 1 described as "quasi-experimental" but not RCT was not included in meta-analysis because of this study design; showed increased perceived risk, p=0.037, ES 0.09 (i.e. very small effect) [13/22] 1 used continuous outcome measure and found increase in breast self examination (mean change 0.68, p=0.046, ES	none	Clear pattern among the 6 studies of detection behaviour (uptake of screening) that supports the greater effect of loss framing; the study of prevention behaviour (use of sunscreens) found some evidence of the greater effect of loss framing.

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
		0.6), more positive attitudes to BSE (mean change 1.56, p=0.04, ES 0.61) and greater intention to perform BSE (mean change 1.53, p=0.044, ES 0.61) [8/22] 1 study of prevention behaviour (use of sunscreens): 1 study on collection of sunscreen in beach visitors: 18% increase in collection of sunscreens, p<0.01, ES 0.32; intention to use sunscreen also increased, p<0.01) but other intentions and anxiety not significantly different [11/22]					
3: Numerical and graphical information vs. Numerical only	1	none			No significant differences in intention to change general health behaviour; little data reported [low quality 9/22]		NA	
4: More data points vs. Fewer data points	3	One study compared the presentation of 6 vs. 3 data points for survival/ mortality rates; more of those with more data intended to choose the long-term survival option (84% vs.49%, p=0.00002, ES 0.73) [12/22]. One study compared "limited explanation" (discussion of 3 data points) vs. "extensive explanation" (five key point) on a graph of survival; more with extensive explanation changed previously specified treatment choice (44% vs. 13%, p=0.00006, ES 0.67) [15/22]			The third paper compared more information vs. current standard information on side effects of carbamazepine; no significant difference on knowledge, anxiety or compliance [16/22]		2 out of 3 studies showed people were more cautious when presented with more data.	
5: Numerical information vs. Verbal (qualitative) information	2	One study gave female cancer patients numerical or verbal descriptions of risks of treatment in chemotherapy trial; intention to choose the trial was lower in the numerical than the verbal group (34.7% vs.52.4%, p=0.01, ES 0.46) [16/22] The other study provided information on the risks of anaesthetics; correct knowledge of the risk of death was higher after numerical information (55% vs. 15%, p=0.008, ES 0.82) [19/22]			none		Patients were more wary when negatively framed risk information was presented numerically	

Reference	Study type	Number of studies/ patients	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Length of follow-up	Outcome measures	Source of funding
6: Relative risk vs. Absolute risk/NNT	3	All three papers in this section are included in the Akl 2011 review so not data extracted again			-		-	
7: Vivid portrayal vs. Abstract or general risk information	2	none			One study found no significant differences in accuracy of recall of information, perceived vulnerability, or actual calcium intake [14/22] The other study found no differences in "concern" or "value of the information" ; there was a small difference suggesting the vivid case history was more "persuasive" (mean change 0.94, p<0.02) but no differences at follow up in recall of risk factors or adoption of recommendations. [13/22]		These papers do not support the theoretical predictions that vivid information is more persuasive or effective	
8: Lay vs. Medical terminology	1	none			No significant differences in knowledge of risks and benefits, or anxiety, of simpler version of drug insert [14/22]		Insufficient evidence to judge the effect of simpler package inserts	
9: Larger vs. Smaller denominators	1	Assessed the effect of manipulating information in relation to 11 common causes of death which were then ranked; rated judged more risky when denominator larger (p<0.05 for 7/11 causes of death) [7/16]			none		The results suggest that "base rate neglect" occurs and individuals' judgements have been influenced more by altering anchor points	

Authors' conclusions:

There is a paucity of framing studies in clinical settings; the findings of the review must be interpreted with caution until further research is conducted.

F.4 Patient Education

Table 50: Evidence table – education programmes

Reference	Question and search dates	Number of studies, study types and patients with references	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Outcome measures	Funding
MULLEN 1985[48]	What components of patient education programmes improve patient experience? Searches were conducted up to January 1984.	70 studies were included in the review. RCTs, pre-test post-test study designs were included in the review.	Adults with long-term health problems. The study must have measured either knowledge about medications or adherence to a regimen that included drugs. All studies were individually assessed for quality.	A range of education interventions selected using basic criteria suggested in educational literature (consonance, individualisation, feedback, reinforcement, facilitation): one-to-one counselling; group education (with or without counselling)[1]; written and/or other audiovisual materials; patient package inserts, written and/or other AV materials plus one-to-one group education, labels, special containers and memory aides; labels, special containers, and memory aids plus one-to-one or group education; behaviour modification/medication self-administration. Education interventions were rated according to education principles based on a rating scheme adapted from Neufeld.	Own control, usual care, and minimal treatment	Knowledge of drug, adherence, and clinical outcomes. The quality of the measures varied greatly.	Supported in part by Pharmaceutical Manufacturer Association

Reference	Question and search dates	Number of studies, study types and patients with references	Study/patient characteristics	Intervention	Comparison	Outcome measures	Funding

Summary of knowledge effects and test of homogeneity for each intervention

Strategy type	Number of studies	Pooled effect size (SD)	95% confidence interval	Test of homogeneity (Chi squared)
One-to-one counselling	3	1.13 (0.15)	0.83 to 1.41	2.20
Group education	3	0.75 (0.17)	0.38 to 1.05	2.13
Written and/or other audiovisual, except patient package insert	6	0.42 (0.09)	0.24 to 0.58	7.25
Patient package insert	6	-0.03 (0.10)	-0.25 to 0.13	0.26
Counselling or group plus materials	8	0.73 (0.12)	0.50 to 0.97	13.88
Behaviour modification	2	0.51 (0.21	-0.04 to 0.86	1.04

(b) A positive score favours the intervention, a negative score favours the control

Table 51: Summary of education principles scored in included studies

Education principle	Description
Consonance	Degree to which an intervention was directed toward effecting the intended outcome.
Relevance	Degree to which the education programme appeared to be geared to knowledge, reading level, visual acuity, beliefs, circumstances, and prior experience of the learners.
Individualisation	Assessed on the principle that learning is an individual process that occurs at different rates and through varying types of experiences.
Feedback	Feedback facilitates learning by showing the patient the extent to which he or she is achieving progress.
Reinforcement	Designed to reward desired behaviour.
Facilitation	Degree to which the intervention provided the means for people to take action and/or reduced barriers to their action.
Combination	Scored on whether the intervention provided multiple or alternative learning experiences.

(a) See Appendix :Intervention Scoring in Mullen 1985[48]

Table 52: Characteristics of studies included in Mullen 1985

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
One-to-one counselling only								
Reinforcement of M.D. Instruction by pharmacist x 1d	Hospitalized and clinic neurological patients (n=68)	2 months	13(R)	22(19)	1.48			Woroniecki, C.L. et al, 1982
M.D. More specifically directive re: drug taking and patients aware of being monitored	Children with asthma (3-16 years) attending inner-city OPD (theophylline) (n=90)	2 hours	11	25(17)		-1.43		Eney, R.D. et al, 1976
Brief counselling x 1 forewarning of side effects	Patients with depression attending clinic and taking drug for 1st time (Dothiepen) (n=89)	2 weeks	11	16(13)		-0.37		Myers, E.D. et al, 1976
Counselling x 4 by R.N. Pre-hospital discharge, at first clinic visit, and at	Adults with tuberculosis receiving outpatient	1 month	18	32(18)		-0.70		Hecht, A.B., 1974

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
2 home visits	chemotherapy (n=23)							
Counselling by pharmacist x 5	Adults with hypertension attending a neighbourhood clinic (n=45)	5 months	10	32(17)	0.96	-0.25	-0.71 BP (diastolic)	McKenney, J.M. et al, 1973
Counselling by M.D. In course of regular clinic visits	Low-income adults with hypertension attending inner city OPD (n=102)	6 months	13	29(20)	1.01	-0.71	-0.82 BP (diastolic)	Inui, T.S. et al, 1976
Counselling x 2 + educational program by health-care team	Children with renal transplants who were attending a clinic (azothioprine and prednisone) (n=42)	6 months	8	27		-0.61		Beck, D.E. et al, 1980
Inpatient counselling and instruction by M.D. Dietician, and R.N. X 5 days + follow-up x 7 by M.D. + telephone access to R.N. + diaries	Diabetics (16-57 years) receiving inpatient education and OPD care (insulin) (n=77)	18 months	13(R)	26(22)	4.36		-0.08 BP (metabolic) index	Korhonen, T. Et al, 1983
Counselling (multiple sessions) by graduate research assistant at clinic visits	Low- to low-middle income adults with hypertension attending an inner-city hospital OPD (n=39)	6 months	14(R)	28(24)			-1.09 BP	Zismer, D.K. et al, 1982
Counselling x 6 by a social worker	Low-middle income adults with hypertension attending a university family practice clinic (n=70)	3-4 months	15(R)	30(16)			-0.13 BP	Webb, P.A. 1980
Group education only								
Follow-up group session with R.N. And R.D.	Adults with diabetes who had been hospitalised and given an inpatient education session (insulin) (n=171)	2-6 weeks	5	28(24)			-0.49 rehospitalisation	Whitehouse, F.W. et al, 1979

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
Inpatient group teaching of self-management skills x 1 by health team + telephone and visit access	Patients with Type I diabetes treated with 1 subcutaneous insulin injection admitted to 2 university hospitals in Austria or Germany (n=156)	22 months	18	26			-0.08 glycosylated Hb	Muhlhauser, I. Et al, 1983
Series of classes on 5 topics by health team + referral to diabetic association + counselling x 1 by dietician + home visit x 1 by R.N.	patients with diabetes referred by M.D.s to one of 26 education sites in Maine in 1980 (n=830)	1 year	7	22			-0.26 hospitalization	Zaremba, M., 1984
Series of classes on 5 topics by health team + referral to diabetic association + counselling x 1 by dietician + home visit x 1 by R.N.	Patients with diabetes referred by M.D.s to one of 26 education sites in Maine in 1981 (n=1150)	1 year	7	22			-0.42 hospitalizations	Zaremba, M., 1984
Series of classes on 5 topics by health team + referral to diabetic association + counselling x 1 by dietician + home visit x 1 by R.N.	Patients with diabetes referred by M.D.s to one of 26 education sites in Maine in 1982 (n=996)	1 year	7	22			-0.38 hospitalizations	Zaremba, M., 1984
2-hr weekly group sessions x 6 by R.N. Including lectures, discussions and role-playing	Adult hypertensive outpatients (n=65)	9 weeks	14	32(18)			-0.47 BP	Caplan, R.D. et al, 1976
Group discussions + role-playing + problem scenarios + puppet shows, all x 6	Children with asthma and their parents attending one of four allergy clinics or private allergy clinics or private practice (n=178)	1 year	11(R)	26(17)			-0.08 ER visits	Clark, N.M. et al, 1981 Clark, N.M. et al, 1984
Group teaching program x 4 by clinic R.N.	Low-income black adults with hypertension or diabetes, newly accepted by university hospital (n=81)	unknown	12(R)	31(19)		-0.19		Tagliacozzo, D.M. et al, 1974
Group discussions with mothers x 2 by social worker	Children with seizures attending a clinic	11 weeks	16(R)	27(18)	0.58	-0.87		Shope, J.T., 1980

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
	(Phenobarbital and phenytoin) (n=53)							
Team conference + home visits + group sessions (varying attendance from 0 to 10 sessions)	Adults with congestive heart failure attending OPD (n=64)	1 year	13	32(15)	1.08		-0.39 rehospitalisation	Rosenberg, S.G., 1971
Lecture and discussion x 5 by 2 R.N.s and dietician + visual aids and filmstrip series x 1 + procedure demonstration by R.N.	Adults with diabetes attending hospital OPD (insulin) (n=51)	6 months	14	27(21)	0.55		0.02 blood sugar	Bowen, R.G. et al, 1961
Written and/or audiovisual (AV) material								
Leaflet at easy reading material	Psychiatric outpatients using tranquilizers or antidepressants (n=75)	1 month	8(R)	25(20)		-0.59		Ley, P. Et al, 1976
"Auto-tutor" video screen with programmed instructions (for children)	Children (9-18 years) with diabetes (n=132)	3 months	7	28	0.51			Etzwiler, D.D. et al, 1972
"Auto-tutor" video screen with programmed instructions (for parents)	Parents of children with diabetes (n=228)	3 months	7	26	0.52			Etzwiler, D.D. et al, 1972
Book + game/quiz played to 100% mastery level	Children (7-12 years) with diabetes, from a university OPD, hospital, and local school (n=32)	1 month	9(R)	25(17)	2.48			Heston, J.V. et al, 1980
Programmed instruction booklet	Adults on anti-coagulant therapy (n=30)	48 days	6(R)	26(16)	0.96			Clark, C.M. et al, 1972
55-min educational videotape	Adults with asthma attending asthma clinic (inhaled/oral bronchodilators, sodium cromoglycate, corticosteroids) (n=62)	16 months	15(R)	21(17)	0.00		8.23 days lost	Moldofsky, H. Et al, 1979

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
Slide-tape presentation + printed material to reinforce prior educational program	Adults with diabetes attending inner city hospital OPD (insulin) (n=60)	1 month	9	31(21)	0.08	-0.23		Powell, M.F., 1979
Improved leaflet from M.D. + 15-min slide-tape with voice of M.D.	Adults with hypertension receiving care from private GP (n=46)	1 week	8(R)	22(17)	0.38			St. George, I.M., 1983
Patient package inserts (PPIs)								
High explanation, high specificity	Adults presenting prescriptions at 1 of 69 community pharmacies [flurazepam (Dalmane)] (n=68)	15 days	16(R)	26(23)	-0.12	-0.01		Berry, S.H. et al, 1981
Risk emphasis, simplified writing style	Adults presenting prescriptions at 1 of 69 community pharmacies [flurazepam (Dalmane)] (n=73)	15 days	16(R)	25(23)	0.01	0.20		Berry, S.H. et al, 1981
Outline format, full length	Adults presenting prescriptions at 1 of 69 community pharmacies [flurazepam (Dalmane)] (n=27)	15 days	16(R)	25(23)	-0.06	-0.38		Berry, S.H. et al, 1981
High explanation, high specificity	Women presenting prescriptions at one of 69 community pharmacies (oestrogen) (n=94)	18 days	15(R)	26(23)	-0.07	-0.06		Kanouse, D.E. et al, 1981
Risk emphasis, simplified writing style	Women presenting prescriptions at one of 69 community pharmacies (oestrogen) (n=84)	18 days	15(R)	25(23)	0.00	0.83		Kanouse, D.E. et al, 1981
Outline format, full length	Women presenting prescriptions at one of 69 community pharmacies (oestrogen) (n=81)	18 days	15(R)	25(23)	0.01	0.93		Kanouse, D.E. et al, 1981

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
Written and/or other AV + interpersonal								
Counselling x 1 by industrial M.D. + slide-tape and booklet + periodic "information check-ups" by educator	Newly diagnosed male steelworkers with hypertension seeking private or industrial M.D. (n=69)	6 months	17(R)	24(19)		-0.01		Sackett, D.L. et al, 1975
Exit interview at ER visit by asthmatic R.N. (identified as being asthmatic) + booklet	Adults with asthma using an inner city ER (n=96)	6 weeks	13(R)	26(19)			-0.68 ER visits	Maiman, L.A. et al, 1979
Counselling and teaching program x 1 by pharmacist + pamphlet	Adults attending a hospital outpatient pharmacy (oral anticoagulants) (n=80)	3 months	4	27	1.05			Witte, K. Et al, 1980
Written instructions x 1 + verbal information x 1 + follow-up card x 1, all by M.D. + prompts to remain in treatment x 1-4	Adults with untreated hypertension from screening survey in Finland (chlorthalidone, methyldopa, alprenolol, moduretic, triamterene) (n=145)	1 year	14(R)	25(19)			-0.19 BP (% controlled)	Takala, J., 1979
Instruction x 1 by M.D. + intensive instruction x 4 by R.N. + booklet +telephone access + diary	Children (2-14 years) attending clinic or allergist's office (bronchodilators, aerosol steroids, Cromolyn) (n=26)	13 months	10	29(19)			-0.57 school absences	Fireman, P. et al, 1981
Booklet + pamphlet + learning objectives explained x 1 by R.N. + counselling x 2 by investigator	Adult inpatients treated for myocardial infarctions in two hospitals (n=24)	1 month	6	23(19)	0.56	-0.40		Bille, D.A., 1977
1-h lessons x 7 + 1-h group discussions x 5, all by R.N. And nutritionist + written material x 1	Indigent adults with diabetes receiving care from a neighbourhood health centre without access to private M.D. (n=20)	1 week	9	30(22)	1.03		-0.57 urinalysis	Cohen, R.Y., 1982
1-h lessons x 5 + 1-h discussions x 5, all by R.N. And nutritionist +	Indigent adults with hypertension and obesity	1 week	8	28(22)	1.23		-0.15 BP	Cohen, R.Y., 1982

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
written material x 1	receiving care from a neighbourhood health centre without access to private M.D. (n=20)						(diastolic)	
Audiovisual program x 1 by pharmacist	Adults with congestive heart failure (n=15)	6 days	8(R)	28(14)	2.02			Soflin, D. Et al, 1977
Brief counselling x 1 + leaflet forewarning of side effects	Adults with depression attending clinic and taking drug (Dothiepin, benzodiazepam hypnotics) (n=50)	6 weeks	13(R)	24(20)		-0.62		Myers, E.D. et al, 1984
Tape recording x 1 + pamphlet x 1 + self-support x 5 + instructions on importance of regimen and use of blood pressure monitoring x 1 by pharmacist	Adults with primary hypertension attending a university OPD (guanethidine sulfate, reserpine, hydralazine aldactazide, spironolactone, potassium chloride supplements) (n=24)	5 months	17(R)	25(24)		-0.35		Ogbuokiri, J.E., 1980
Counselling x 2 by pharmacist + written materials	Adults with hyperlipoproteinemic conditions attending VA-OPD (halofenate, clofibrate) (n=20)	20 days	15(R)	29(19)				Chubb, J.M. et al, 1974
Counselling x 2 by pharmacist + written materials	Adults with cardiac conditions attending a VA-OPD (digoxin, diuretics) (n=14)	20 days	15(R)	29(19)		-0.59		Chubb, J.M. et al, 1974
Written material (unspecified) + counselling x 80 + written reminders, all by pharmacist	Patients with chronic renal failure attending university hospital haemodialysis centre (antihypertensives, multivitamins, folic acid, antacids)(n=36)	4 months	13(R)	26(26)	0.94	-0.71		Skoutakis, V.A. et al, 1978
Counselling x 1 by pharmacist + 2	Adult in-patients with COPD	6 months	5	17	0.34	-2.48		Darr, M.S. et al,

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
audiovisual tapes x 1	(bronchodilators) (n=60)							1981
Slide-tape + leaflet x 1 + counselling and tailoring of meds x 1 by ophthalmology assistant	Adults with chronic simple glaucoma attending hospital OPD (pilocarpine) (n=73)	20 days	15(R)	28(17)		-0.67		Norell, S.E., 1979
90-min audiovisual teaching program x 8 + counselling by R.N. X 10 +	Adults with hypertension attending a university hospital OPD (n=52)	6 months	15(R)	25(23)	0.19	-0.78	-1.13 BP (diastolic)	Nessman, D.G. et al, 1980
Labels, special containers PAK dispenser	Adults with hypertension attending OPD (chlorthalidone) (n=65)	None given	14(R)	15(13)		-0.80		Eshelman, F.M. et al, 1976
Individual calendar pak (unit dose)	Geriatric inpatients in private rehabilitation unit (n=78)	1 month	8(R)	18(16)		-0.24		Crome, P. et al, 1982
Special unit-dose container for self-administration	Geriatric females hospitalized in private rehabilitation unit (n=44)	5 days	8(R)	22(21)		-0.23		Crome, P. et al, 1980
Labels, special containers + interpersonal								
Counselling x 1 by pharmacist + special medication container	Adults with hypertension with -2 meds/day attending a hospital OPD (n=20)	3 months	10(R)	24(17)		-0.95		Rehder, T.L. et al, 1980
Exit interview x 1 by health educator + home visit + booklet to patient and significant other x 1 by community aide + 1-hr small group sessions x 3	Adults with hypertension attending a hospital OPD (n=84)	2 years	19(R)	32(18)			-0.56 BP	Levine, D.M. et al, 1979 and Morisky, D.E. et al, 1983
Counselling by pharmacist + reminder chart	Low socioeconomic geriatric patients with hypertension attending a community clinic/pharmacy (n=79)	3 months	9(R)	24(19)		-0.38		Gabriel, M., et al, 1977
Counselling x 1 by pharmacist at discharge + memory aids	Discharged geriatric patients tested as non-competent	3 months	11	29(18)		-0.31		MacDonald, E.T. et al, 1977

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
	(n=59)							
Counselling x 1 by pharmacist at discharge + memory aids	Discharged geriatric patients tested as competent (n=46)	3 months	11	29(18)		-0.58		MacDonald, E.T. et al, 1977
Verbal instruction + tear off calendar	Geriatric patients on rehabilitation unit (n=32)	2 weeks	10(R)	26(25)		-0.34		Wandless, I. Et al, 1977
Behaviour modification: Medication self-administration								
Self-monitoring of blood pressure at home	Adults beginning treatment for hypertension at VA hospital OPD (n=97)	6 months	11(R)	32(28)			-0.55 BP	Carnahan, J.E. et al, 1975
Self-monitoring, tailoring, supervision, and reinforcement	Canadian steel workers with hypertension not adhering to drug regimen and not at goal BP (n=38)	6 months	18	32(17)		-0.51	-0.57 BP (diastolic)	Haynes, R.B. et al, 1976
Self-help group x 1 by medical student + diary + discussion	Youth and adults with asthma attending hospital ER (n=44)	1 year	10(R)	26(22)			-0.63 ER visits	Green, L.W. et al, 1977
Counselling and lecture x 1 to family by M.D. + skills training + telephone access	males with haemophilia A or B attending a hospital OPD (lymphilised factor VIII and IX concentrates) (n=90)	1 year	15	29			-0.79 days lost	Levine, P.H. et al, 1973
Counselling x 10 by M.D. At clinic visits + telephone access + counselling by dietician (some) + alternating use of various self-tests for 3 months each	Diabetics on twice-daily insulin attending university diabetic clinic and receiving intensive counselling (n=86)	1 day	11	24			-0.32 glycosylated Hb	Worth, R. Et al, 1982
Counselling x 1 by R.N. + booklet + patient-R.N. Signed contract	Adults with hypertension attending a clinic (n=60)	1 month	7(R)	24	0.69			Steckel, S.B. et al, 1977
Self-monitoring of blood pressure or medications + telephone call x 1 by R.N. + visit x 1 by R.N. To patient and support person + follow-up	Adults with hypertension attending private practices (n=52)	4 months	17(R)	30(14)		-0.13		Kirscht, J.P. et al, 1981

Strategy	Subjects, clinical condition, drug	Average time observed	Method score a	Intervention score b	Knowledge effect c	Drug errors c	Clinical effect c	Ref.
telephone calls x 1 to both								
Home visits by public health R.N. Or pharmacist + self-monitoring of blood pressure at home + active participation by significant other	Adults with essential hypertension attending a hospital OPD and family practice clinic (n=93)	6 months	18(R)	27(17)			-0.43 BP (diastolic)	Earp, J.L. et al, 1982
Lectures x 9 by R.N. And M.D. Staff including small group discussions and reinforcement of behaviour + data sheets	Psychiatric patients with Dx of schizophrenia, and bipolar and unipolar affective disorders (antidepressants, lithium) (n=41)	5 months	16	32(11)	0.25	-0.65		Seltzer, A. Et al, 1980

Appendix G: Evidence tables: economic studies

G.1 Decision aids

Hollinghurst S, Emmett C, Peters TJ, et al. Economic evaluation of the DiAMOND randomized trial: cost and outcomes of 2 decision aids for mode of delivery among women with a previous cesarean section. Medical Decision Making 2010;30:453-63.

Study details	Population & interventions	Costs	Health outcomes	Cost effectiveness
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** within-RCT analysis **Approach to analysis:** Units costs were applied to resource use data collected within trial. **Perspective:** UK NHS **Time horizon:** Outcomes: 37 weeks gestational; Costs: 37 weeks gestational, 6 weeks post-natal **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** n/a	**Population:** Pregnant women with a previous caesarean section N = 742; complete cases = 524; imputed cost data = 598; imputed cost and outcome data = 713 Mean age = 32.6 Mean baseline DCS = 38.6 Setting = 3 units England, 1 unit Scotland **Intervention 1:** Usual care **Intervention 2:** Usual care + decision aid 1 – (information program – risks and benefits numerical and pictorial via website) **Intervention 3:** Usual care + decision aid 2 (decision analysis program – values of different outcomes	**Total costs – complete cases (mean per patient):** Intvn 1: £1986 (SD 696) Intvn 2: £2082 (SD 762) Intvn 3: £1982 (SD 763) Incremental (2-1):95.46 (CI -72, 205) Incremental (3-1):-£4.52 (CI -172, 107) **Currency & cost year:** 2005 UK pounds **Cost components incorporated:** Primary care, including out of hours, professionals' time, cost of delivery (normal, assisted, caesarean section), outpatient appointments, inpatient stays, medication, training time for use of	**Primary outcome measure:** Mean DCS at 37 weeks Intvn 1: 28.1 (SD 14.3) Intvn 2: 22.7 (SD 13.2) Intvn 3: 24.5 (SD 15.2) Incremental (2-1): 5.4 (CI 2.5, 8.7) Incremental (3-1): 3.6 (CI 0.5, 6.7) **Other outcome measures (mean):** Proportion with decisional conflict score below 25 Intvn 1: 0.38 (CI: 0.30-0.45) Intvn 2: 0.47 (CI: 0.39-0.54) Intvn 3: 0.42 (CI: 0.34-0.49) Proportion of caesarean deliveries Intvn 1: 0.68 (CI 0.61-0.75)	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** ICER: n/a Probability cost-effective: n/a **Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** n/a **Analysis of uncertainty:** 1 way sensitivity analysis used in investigate cost of delivery as uncertainty existed due to poor coding of data. Imputed missing data analyses: imputed cost data; imputed cost and outcome data. In the analyses the additional cost with Intvn 2 relative to Intvn 1 was reduced slightly, and the reduction in cost with Intvn 3 versus Intvn 1 was increased slightly.

Hollinghurst S, Emmett C, Peters TJ, et al. Economic evaluation of the DiAMOND randomized trial: cost and outcomes of 2 decision aids for mode of delivery among women with a previous cesarean section. Medical Decision Making 2010;30:453-63.				
	elicited from patients then combined with probabilities to suggest a preferred option)	decision analysis program. NB. Cost of development of decision aids not included.	Intvn 2: 0.75 (CI 0.68-0.81) Intvn 3: 0.60 (CI 0.53-0.67)	
Data sources				
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis **Quality-of-life weights:** n/a **Cost sources:** resource use = within-RCT analysis; unit costs = standard UK unit cost sources.				
Comments				
Source of funding: Bupa Foundation; **Limitations:** Cost per QALY analysis not used. Some uncertainty about applicability of resource use and costs from over 10 years ago. Quality of life not assessed. Cost of developing decision aid not incorporated. Limited sensitivity analyses undertaken; **Other:**				
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** Potentially serious limitation				

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; DCS = decisional conflict score; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

Kennedy AD, Sculpher MJ, Coulter A, et al. A multicentre randomised controlled trial assessing the costs and benefits of using structured information and analysis of womens preferences in the management of menorrhagia. Health Technology Assessment 2003;7:1-86. **Kennedy AD, Sculpher MJ, Coulter A, et al. Effects of decision aids for menorrhagia on treatment choices, health outcomes, and costs: a randomized controlled trial.[Erratum appears in JAMA. 2003 Feb 12;289(6):703.]. JAMA 2002 Dec 4;288:2701-8.**				
Study details	**Population & interventions**	**Costs**	**Health outcomes**	**Cost effectiveness**
Economic analysis: CUA, CCA **Study design:** within-RCT analysis **Approach to analysis:** Units costs were applied to resource use data collected within	**Population:** Women with menorrhagia N = 894 Mean age = 40yrs Setting = 6 hospitals England **Intervention 1:** Usual practice (n=298)	**Total costs (mean per patient):** Intvn 1: £1810 Intvn 2: £1333 Intvn 3: £1030 Incremental (2-1): -£477 (CI -1071, -141) Incremental (3-1):-£779	**Primary outcome measure:** QALYs (mean per patient) Intvn 1: 1.574 Intvn 2: 1.567 Intvn 3: 1.582 Incremental (2-1): -0.006 (CI -0.057, 0.048) Incremental (3-1): 0.009	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** ICER: Intvn 3 dominant (lower costs, higher QALYs). CI: NR. Probability cost-effective (£20,000/QALY): 84% **Other:** **Subgroup analyses:** **Analysis of uncertainty:** Excluding inpatient, outpatient and GP visti costs unrelated to

Kennedy AD, Sculpher MJ, Coulter A, et al. A multicentre randomised controlled trial assessing the costs and benefits of using structured information and analysis of womens preferences in the management of menorrhagia. Health Technology Assessment 2003;7:1-86. **Kennedy AD, Sculpher MJ, Coulter A, et al. Effects of decision aids for menorrhagia on treatment choices, health outcomes, and costs: a randomized controlled trial.[Erratum appears in JAMA. 2003 Feb 12;289(6):703.]. JAMA 2002 Dec 4;288:2701-8.**				
trial. **Perspective:** UK NHS **Time horizon:** 2 years **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** none	**Intervention 2:** Information only (n=296) **Intervention 2:** Information + interview (n=300)	(CI -1388, -450) Incremental (3-2):-£303 (CI -458, -155) **Currency & cost year:** 1999-2000 UK pounds **Cost components incorporated:** Intervention cost (fixed development costs averaged over potential population; variable production costs based on 550x video, 1000x booklets; delivery of interview by nurse). Tests, drugs, surgery/procedures, all inpatient, outpatient and GP visits.	(CI -.043, 0.060) Incremental (3-2):0.015 (CI -0.041, 0.066)	mennorrhagia. Costs: Incremental (2-1): -£452 (CI -783, -190); Incremental (3-1):-£539 (CI -865, -270); Incremental (3-2):-£88 (CI -195, 22). ICER: Intvn 3 dominant (lower costs, higher QALYs) - Probability cost-effective (£20,000/QALY): 72% Excluding all inpatient costs and unrelated outpatient and GP costs. Incremental (2-1): £59 (CI -67, 185); Incremental (3-1):-£35 (CI -146, -70); Incremental (3-2):-£94 (CI -206, 15). Intvn 3 dominant (lower costs, higher QALYs) - Probability cost-effective (£20,000/QALY): 58%. Higher cost of producing information – authors report has little effect on cost-effectiveness. 50% longer consultation for interview group – authors report has little effect on cost-effectiveness.
Data sources				
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis **Quality-of-life weights:** EQ5D administered to patients within RCT, UK population tariff **Cost sources:** resource use = within-RCT analysis; unit costs = standard UK national sources supplemented by published literature				
Comments				
Source of funding: NHS R&D HTA Programme; **Limitations:** Some uncertainty about applicability of resource use and costs from over 10 years ago. Unclear if short time horizon will omit longer term quality of life differences but this is considered unlikely to impact conclusion. Limited sensitivity analysis; **Other:**				
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** Minor limitations				

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; DCS = decisional conflict score; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

Murray E, Davis H, Tai SS, et al. Randomised controlled trial of an interactive multimedia decision aid on benign prostatic hypertrophy in primary care. BMJ 2001 Sep 1;323:493-6.				
Study details	**Population & interventions**	**Costs**	**Health outcomes**	**Cost effectiveness**
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** within-RCT analysis **Approach to analysis:** Units costs were applied to resource use data collected within trial. Complete case analysis (ITT analysis did not alter results). **Perspective:** UK NHS **Time horizon:** 9 months **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** n/a	**Population:** Men with benign prostatic hypertrophy N = 112 (completed trial = 187) Mean age = 64yrs Setting = 33 general practices in England **Intervention 1:** Usual care **Intervention 2:** Decision aid (multimedia program with booklet and printed summary) provided with nurse supervision	**Total costs (mean per patient):** Intvn 1: £188.8 Intvn 2 (2-1): £594.1 Incremental: £405.4 (CI 224.9, 585.8) **Currency & cost year:** 1999 UK pounds **Cost components incorporated:** Intervention (equipment and staff time), number and duration of GP consultations, referrals to urologists, other referrals, drugs related to BPH, tests and diagnostic and surgical procedures.	Study reported no difference in trends over time for EQ5D and also for SF36 (not quantitatively reported). Mean DCS at 3 months Intvn 1: 2.6 (SD 0.5) Intvn 2: 2.3 (SD 0.4) Incremental (2-1): -0.3 (CI -0.5, -0.1) Mean DCS at 9 months Intvn 1: 2.55 (SD 0.50) Intvn 2: 2.23 (SD 0.38) Incremental (2-1): -0.33 (CI -0.51, -0.14) Outcomes also reported included perception about who made decision, satisfaction with treatment choice, treatment choice, anxiety (Spielberger state trait anxiety score) and prostatic symptoms.	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** n/a **Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** n/a **Analysis of uncertainty:** When cost of trial technology excluded no significant difference in costs (difference 2-1 = 121.5 [CI-58.9, 302.0]).
Data sources				
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis **Quality-of-life weights:** EQ5D administered to patients within RCT, UK population tariff **Cost sources:** resource use = within-RCT analysis; unit costs = standard UK national sources				

Murray E, Davis H, Tai SS, et al. Randomised controlled trial of an interactive multimedia decision aid on benign prostatic hypertrophy in primary care. BMJ 2001 Sep 1;323:493-6.
Comments
Source of funding: BUPA Foundation and Kings Fund; **Limitations:** Cost per QALY analysis not used. Some uncertainty about applicability of resource use and costs from over 10 years ago. Unclear if short time horizon will omit longer term quality of life differences. EQ5D assessed but not reported quantitatively. Cost of intervention likely to be too high as out of date technology. Only limited sensitivity analysis undertaken; **Other:** Cost of video technology in decision aid arm was £278 per patient – video hardware system cost £24,300 plus cost of a secure cupboard. Software cost £1118 per video disc giving total of £5590 plus £400 shipping).Shared with other trial so total technology cost for trial £15,840.
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** potentially serious limitations

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; DCS = decisional conflict score;EQ-5D = Euroqol 5 dimensions; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

Murray E, Davis H, Tai SS, et al. Randomised controlled trial of an interactive multimedia decision aid on hormone replacement therapy in primary care. BMJ 2001 Sep 1;323:490-3.				
Study details	**Population & interventions**	**Costs**	**Health outcomes**	**Cost effectiveness**
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** within-RCT analysis **Approach to analysis:** Units costs were applied to resource use data collected within trial. Complete case analysis (ITT analysis did not alter results). **Perspective:** UK NHS **Time horizon:** 9 months **Treatment effect**	**Population:** Women eligible for hormone replacement therapy N = 205 (completed trial = 187) Mean age = 50yrs Setting = 26 general practices in England **Intervention 1:** Usual care **Intervention 2:** Decision aid (multimedia program with booklet and printed summary) provided with nurse supervision	**Total costs (mean per patient):** Intvn 1: £90.9 Intvn 2 (2-1): £306.5 Incremental: £215.5 (CI 203.1, 228.0) **Currency & cost year:** 1999 UK pounds **Cost components incorporated:** Intervention (video costs, nurse time, accommodation), number and duration of GP consultations, referrals to	Study reported no significant difference in change from baseline at 9 months for EQ5D and also for SF36 (not quantitatively reported). Mean DCS at 3 months Intvn 1: 2.8 (SD 0.6) Intvn 2: 2.5 (SD 0.5) Incremental (2-1): -0.3 (CI -0.5, -0.2) Mean DCS at 9 months Intvn 1: 2.80 (SD 0.61) Intvn 2: 2.45 (SD 0.56) Incremental (2-1): -0.35 (CI -0.53, -0.16)	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** n/a **Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** n/a **Analysis of uncertainty:** When cost of trial technology excluded no significant difference in costs. Noted that delivering programme through standard PCs via internet would reduce the cost per session from £177 to £5 (excluding cost of software).

Murray E, Davis H, Tai SS, et al. Randomised controlled trial of an interactive multimedia decision aid on hormone replacement therapy in primary care. BMJ 2001 Sep 1;323:490-3.				
duration: n/a **Discounting:** n/a		specialist, use of HRT and related drugs.	Outcomes also reported included perception about who made decision, treatment preference, persistence with treatment, anxiety (Spielberger state trait anxiety score) and MenQoL (menopausal symtpoms).	
Data sources				
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis **Quality-of-life weights:** EQ5D administered to patients within RCT, UK population tariff **Cost sources:** resource use = within-RCT analysis; unit costs = standard UK national sources				
Comments				
Source of funding: BUPA Foundation and Kings Fund; **Limitations:** Cost per QALY analysis not used. Some uncertainty about applicability of resource use and costs from over 10 years ago. Unclear if short time horizon will omit longer term quality of life differences. EQ5D assessed but not reported quantitatively. Cost of intervention likely to be too high as out of date technology. Only limited sensitivity analysis undertaken; **Other:** Cost of video technology in decision aid arm was £216 per patient. Video hardware system cost £24,300 plus cost of a secure cupboard. Software cost £1118 per video disc giving total of £5590 plus £400 shipping).Shared with other trial.				
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** potentially serious limitations				

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; DCS = decisional conflict score; EQ-5D = Euroqol 5 dimensions; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

Vuorma S, Teperi J, Aalto AM, et al. A randomized trial among women with heavy menstruation -- impact of a decision aid on treatment outcomes and costs. Health Expectations 2004 Dec;7:327-37.				
Study details	**Population & interventions**	**Costs**	**Health outcomes**	**Cost effectiveness**
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** within-RCT analysis **Approach to analysis:**	**Population:** Women with heavy menstruation N = 569	**Total costs (mean per patient):** Intvn 1: £2,016 Intvn 2: £1,662 Incremental (2-1): -£358 (CI NR ; p=0.2)	Study reported "no marked disparities in health outcomes, satisfaction with treatment" A significant difference in RAND-	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** n/a **Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** n/a

Vuorma S, Teperi J, Aalto AM, et al. A randomized trial among women with heavy menstruation -- impact of a decision aid on treatment outcomes and costs. Health Expectations 2004 Dec;7:327-37.				
Units costs were applied to resource use data collected within trial. **Perspective:** Finland societal but costs disaggregated so only health system costs reported here **Time horizon:** 1 year **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** n/a	Mean age = NR Setting = 14 hospitals Finland **Intervention 1:** Usual care **Intervention 2:** Decision aid booklet mailed to patients	**Currency & cost year:** 1999 Euros (Finland) **Cost components incorporated:** Intervention, use of hospital services (operations, inpatient days, procedures, outpatient visits), other doctor visits, medication (reported by authors but not included here: sick-leave days, health care travel costs and sanitary pads).	36 'emotional role functioning'. Significant differences not seen in other domains or other outcome measures (perceived health, anxiety, psychosomatic symptoms, sexuality, menstrual symptoms or satisfaction).	**Analysis of uncertainty:** Menorrhagia related costs only analyses: difference 2-1 = -£52 (CI NR, p=NR)
Data sources				
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis **Quality-of-life weights:** n/a **Cost sources:** resource use = within-RCT analysis; unit costs = Finland national costs, reported as from standard sources.				
Comments				
Source of funding: STAKES – National Research and Development Centre for Welfare and Health, and Public Health Doctoral Programmes of Helsinki and Tampere universities; **Limitations:** Cost per QALY analysis not used. Some uncertainty about applicability of Finnish resource use and costs from over 10 years ago. Unclear if short time horizon will omit longer term quality of life differences. Quality of life not assessed by a utility measure. Unclear if intervention cost includes development costs. Only limited sensitivity analyses undertaken; **Other:** Information booklet was costed at £7 – it is unclear if this included development of the aid or just cost of production of booklet.				
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** potentially serious limitations				

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; DCS = decisional conflict score; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

G.2 Continuity of care (midwife-led care)

C. Begley, D. Devane, and M. Clarke. An evaluation of midwifery-led care in the Health Service Executive North Eastern Area: the report of the MidU study. Anonymous. Anonymous. Dublin: School of Nursing and Midwifery, Trinity College Dublin. 2009. MIDWIFE LED CARE.

Study details	Population & interventions	Costs	Health outcomes	Cost effectiveness
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** Within-RCT analysis for clinical outcomes; costs modelled **Approach to analysis:** Cost analysis based on resource use estimates from people involved in RCT; clinical outcomes from RCT analysis. **Perspective:** Health Services Executive (HSE-NE), Ireland **Time horizon:** Not clear (assumed capital costs over 50 years), outcomes: immediate **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** 5%	**Population:** Healthy women, without risk factors for labour and delivery, aged between 16-40 years N= 1539 **Intervention 1:** Standard care in a consultant led unit (CLU) **Intervention 2:** Midwifery led care in a midwifery led unit (MLU)	**Total costs – mean cost of care per person:** Intvn 1: £2047 Intvn 2: £1810 Incremental (2-1): -£237 (CI: NR; p = NR) **Currency & cost year:** Euros 2005/2006 inflated to 2009 (presented here as 2009 UK pounds) **Cost components incorporated:** Capital costs (building, birthing pools etc.), antenatal clinics, staff costs (consultant, midwife, sonographer, nurse), hospital stay, home visits, drugs, ultrasound scans, anaesthetic, epidural, surgery.	Clinical study report concludes that "MLU is as safe as CLU, results in less intervention and is viewed by women with greater satisfaction in some aspects of care".	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** ICER: n/a Probability cost-effective: n/a **Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** Normal births only Intvn 1: £449 Intvn 2: £408 Incremental (2-1): -£41 **Analysis of uncertainty:** Several scenarios where analysed in deterministic sensitivity analysis - Reducing consultants commitment to MLU - Reduce admin of nurse - Increase in visits of midwife after birth - Number of antepartum cardiotocographs - Length of postnatal hospital stay - Total cost per birth

C. Begley, D. Devane, and M. Clarke. An evaluation of midwifery-led care in the Health Service Executive North Eastern Area: the report of the MidU study. Anonymous. Anonymous. Dublin: School of Nursing and Midwifery, Trinity College Dublin. 2009. MIDWIFE LED CARE.				
				- Mean increase/decrease in cost of CLU
Data sources				
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis (same report) **Quality-of-life weights:** n/a **Cost sources:** resource use = estimates from midwifery unit from two hospitals in RCT; unit costs = financial data gathered from two hospitals in RCT; data regarding building and equipping the units = gathered from capital division of Health Service Executive – North Eastern Area				
Comments				
Source of funding: Health Service Executive – North Eastern Area. **Limitations:** QALYs not used and quality of life not assessed; Some uncertainty about applicability of Irish resource use and costs; Some limitations in resource used estimates; Limited sensitivity analyses undertaken. **Other:**				
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** Potentially serious limitations				

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

C. S. Homer, D. V. Matha, L. G. Jordan, J. Wills, and G. K. Davis. Community-based continuity of midwifery care versus standard hospital care: a cost analysis. *Australian Health Review* 24 (1):85-93, 2001.				
Study details	**Population & interventions**	**Costs**	**Health outcomes**	**Cost effectiveness**
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** Within-RCT analysis **Approach to analysis:** Total costs calculated using costs and resource collected within trial supplemented by some additional data; bootstrapping to calculate	**Population:** Pregnant women less than 24 weeks after gestation N = 1089 **Intervention 1:** Standard care (physician led) **Intervention 2:** STOMP model	**Mean cost per woman:** Intvn 1: £1689 Intvn 2: £1251 **Incremental (2-1):** -£438 (CI: NR; p=NR) **Currency & cost year:** Australian Dollars 2000 (presented here as 2000 UK pounds)	Clinical study report concluded that midwife-led care "resulted in a significantly reduced caesarean section rate. There were no other differences in clinical outcomes."	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** ICER: n/a Probability cost-effective: n/a **Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** n/a **Analysis of uncertainty:** 1. Throughput – when reduced to <10 women for STOMP no longer a saving

C. S. Homer, D. V. Matha, L. G. Jordan, J. Wills, and G. K. Davis. Community-based continuity of midwifery care versus standard hospital care: a cost analysis. *Australian Health Review* 24 (1):85-93, 2001.				
CI. **Perspective:** health system **Time horizon:** covered antenatal, intrapartum and postnatal period – assumed <1 year **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** n/a	(midwife led continuously the same caregiver)	**Cost components incorporated:** Salary and wages, ultrasound, staff on time, preparation/admin, travel, site costs, training, hospital care, assessment unit, equipment, length of stay, anaesthetic, surgery time.		(30 in basecase vs 50 in hospital clinic) 2. Excluding costs due to neonatal admission to special care nursery – cost saving reduced to -£67 3. Caesarean section rate – as difference in caesarean rate reduces, cost saving is reduced, but there is still a cost saving with STOMP when no difference.
Data sources				
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis (separate report[31]). **Quality-of-life weights:** n/a. **Cost sources:** Resource use – collected within trial or assumptions; Unit costs – collected within trial or from local sources.				
Comments				
Source of funding: National health and medical research council centres of excellence in hospital based research grant **Limitations:** Cost per QALY analysis not used; Quality of life not assessed; no effectiveness measure considered.				
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** potentially serious limitations				

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

V. Hundley, C. Donaldson, and G. et al Lang. Cost of intrapartum care in a midwife managed delivery unit and a consultant led labour ward. *Midwifery* 11 (3):103-109, 1995.				
Study details	**Population & interventions**	**Costs**	**Health outcomes**	**Cost effectiveness**
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** Within-RCT	**Population:** Women at low obstetric risk N = 2844	**Incremental costs – extra cost per woman as a result of introduction of MU care** Staff costs: +£44.69	Paper states that the clinical report found "significant differences in monitoring, fetal distress, analgesia,	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** ICER: n/a Probability cost-effective: n/a

V. Hundley, C. Donaldson, and G. et al Lang. Cost of intrapartum care in a midwife managed delivery unit and a consultant led labour ward. *Midwifery* 11 (3):103-109, 1995.				
analysis **Approach to analysis:** Significantly different resources between each arm of the trial were included and costed using standard unit costs. These costs were calculated for staff costs, consumables and capital costs. **Perspective:** Health care provider **Time horizon:** Intrapartum period only **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** n/a	**Intervention 1:** Standard care in a consultant led unit (CLU) **Intervention 2:** Midwifery led care in a midwifery led unit (MLU)	Consumable Costs: -£3.25 Capital Costs: -£0.73 Total Costs: +£40.71 **Currency & cost year:** UK pounds 1992 **Cost components incorporated:** Fetal scalp electrode, epidural, continuous and intermittent heart rate monitors, TENS, episiotomy. Assisted vaginal delivery, caesarean section, general anaesthetic, administration of neonatal Nalaxone. Building cost of converting a wing.	mobility, use of episiotomy; There was no difference in fetal outcome.”	**Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** n/a **Analysis of uncertainty:** Nine scenarios where analysed in deterministic sensitivity analysis - 1,2 and 3: Baseline cost per woman of introducing MLU - 4. Only statistically significant costs are included and clinically significant costs are excluded - 5. Conversion costs were not due to the midwives unit. - 6. Cost of using lower grade midwives. - 7. Assumptions 5 and 6 combined. - 8. Effect of not lowering staff levels. - 9. No change in staffing levels.
Data sources				
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis (different report). **Quality-of-life weights:** n/a. **Cost sources:** resource use – mostly as collected within-RCT; unit costs – local drug costs if available if not BNF, other cost sources unclear.				
Comments				
Source of funding: Scottish Office of Home and Health Department. **Limitations:** Cost per QALY analysis not used; Some uncertainty about applicability of resource use and costs; Quality of life not assessed; no effectiveness measure considered. **Other:**				
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** Potentially serious limitations				

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

M. J. Rowley, M. J. Hensley, M. W. Brinsmead, and J. H. Wlodarczyk. Continuity of care by a midwife team versus routine care during pregnancy and birth: a randomised trial. *Medical Journal of Australia* 163 (6):289-293, 1995.

Study details	Population & interventions	Costs	Health outcomes	Cost effectiveness
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** Within-RCT analysis **Approach to analysis:** Costs applied to outcomes/resource use collected in trial. **Perspective:** Health care payer **Time horizon:** covers antenatal, intrapartum and early postnatal period (<1yr) **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** n/a	**Population:** Pregnant women who had not chosen to receive care through a GP or who had a substance abuse problem N = 1700 **Intervention 1:** Standard Care (variety of midwives and medics) **Intervention 2:** Team care (continuously from the same team)	**Average cost per delivery:** Intvn 1: £1749 Intvn 2: £1673 Incremental (2-1): -£76 **Midwife salary analysis:** Intvn 1: £346 Intvn 2: £329 Incremental (2-1): -£18 **Currency & cost year:** Australian Dollars 1999 (presented here as 1999 UK pounds) **Cost components incorporated:** Diagnosis-related group costs applied to outcomes. Analysis of salaries were also undertaken.	• Fewer adverse outcomes for women receiving intvn 2. • Reduction in emergency and elective caesarean rate in intvn 2. • Reduction in neonatal rescucitation and Apgar scores of less than 7 at one minute for babies in intvn 2. • Fewer neonatal ICU admissions and more babies breastfed in Intvn 2. • More smaller and high risk babied in Intvn 2. • Maternal satisfaction was higher in Intvn 2.	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** ICER: n/a Probability cost-effective: n/a **Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** n/a **Analysis of uncertainty:** none
Data sources				
Health outcomes: Within-RCT analysis (same report). **Quality-of-life weights:** n/a. **Cost sources:** resource use – within-RCT analysis; costs - Australian national cost weights for diagnosis-related groups, salary source unclear.				
Comments				
Source of funding: Commonwealth Department of Human Services and Health, Australia. **Limitations:** Cost per QALY analysis not used; Quality of life not assessed; effectiveness measure not expressly analysed alongside cost, uncertainty not analysed.				
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** potentially serious limitations				

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

D. Young, A. Lees, and S. Twaddle. Professional issues. The costs to the NHS of maternity care: midwife-managed vs shared. *British Journal of Midwifery* 5 (8):465-472, 1997.				
Study details	**Population & interventions**	**Costs**	**Health outcomes**	**Cost effectiveness**
Economic analysis: CCA **Study design:** Within-RCT analysis **Approach to analysis:** - Identification of relevant costs - Measurement of resource use - Valuation of resource use depending on period of pregnancy **Perspective:** Health care provider **Time horizon:** covers antenatal, intrapartum and postnatal period (assumed <1 year) **Treatment effect duration:** n/a **Discounting:** n/a	**Population:** Women experiencing normal pregnancy N = 1299 **Intervention 1:** Shared Care (multi disciplinary care) (SC) **Intervention 2:** Midwifery led care in a midwifery led unit (MC)	**Total mean costs per person:** Intvn 1: £1061.06 Intvn 2: £1067.06 Incremental (2-1): £6.5 (CI: NR, p=NR) **Antenatal period mean costs per person:** Intvn 1: £383.59 Intvn 2: £357.15 Incremental (2-1): -£26.44 (CI: NR, p=NR) **Intrapartum period mean costs per person:** Intvn 1: £280.37 Intvn 2: £276.07 Incremental (2-1):- £40.3 (CI: NR, p=NR) **Postnatal period mean costs per person:** Intvn 1: £397.10 Intvn 2: £496.83 Incremental (2-1): £73.24 (CI: NR, p=NR) **Currency & cost year:** UK pounds 1994 **Cost components incorporated:** Clinics, Tests and investigations, Day care, referrals, procedures/treatments, operations, inpatient days, mode of delivery, fetal monitoring, antenatal and postnatal visits	States that study found that midwife-led care was: • Clinically safe and efficacious • Increased satisfaction • Enhanced continuity of care	**Primary ICER (Intvn 2 vs Intvn 1):** ICER: n/a Probability cost-effective: n/a **Other:** n/a **Subgroup analyses:** n/a **Analysis of uncertainty:** - Case load of midwife - Location of care

D. Young, A. Lees, and S. Twaddle. Professional issues. The costs to the NHS of maternity care: midwife-managed vs shared. *British Journal of Midwifery* 5 (8):465-472, 1997.
Data sources
Health outcomes: within-RCT analysis (different report). **Quality-of-life weights:** n/a. **Cost sources:** resource use – within-RCT analysis supplemented by other sources; unit costs – states most from NHS trust.
Comments
Source of funding: Scottish Office of Home and Health Department; **Limitations:** Cost per QALY analysis not used; Some uncertainty about applicability of resource use and costs; Quality of life not assessed; no effectiveness measure considered.
Overall applicability*: Partially applicable **Overall quality**:** Potentially serious limitations

Abbreviations: CCA = cost-consequence analysis; CEA = cost-effectiveness analysis; CI = 95% confidence interval; CUA = cost-utility analysis; ICER = incremental cost-effectiveness ratio; NR = not reported; RCT = randomised clinical trial; QALY = quality-adjusted life years

** Directly applicable / Partially applicable / Not applicable; ** Minor limitations /Potentially serious Limitations / Very serious limitations*

Appendix H: Declarations of Interest

All members of the GDG and all members of the NCGC staff were required to make declarations of interest at the outset, and these were updated at every subsequent meeting throughout the development process. No interests were declared that required actions.

Sophie Staniszewska

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
Chair recruitment	The National Clinical Guideline Centre (NCGC) commissioned the University of Warwick to conduct a scoping study for the Patient Experiences Guidance in December 2010. The Warwick Research team was led by Dr Sophie Staniszewska. This work was undertaken prior to the interviews for the role of Chair of the guideline group which Sophie applied for and was successful after an open competitive interview process. The Warwick scoping study formed part of a much larger evidence base which informed the Guidance Development Group in the development of the Patient Experiences Guidance.
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

David Martin

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting	No change to declarations

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
(19th January 2012)	

Poonam Jain

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Miranda Dodwell

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	Personal non-pecuniary interest - Written and presented views on the importance of patient experience as a measure of the quality of care.
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Suzannah Power

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	Personal non-pecuniary interest - Patient representation on the British Heart Foundation Council. This is an unpaid role.
Second GDG meeting	No change to declarations

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
(1st March 2011)	
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Christianne Forrest

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Tom McLoughlin-Yip

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	Personal pecuniary interest - NHS employee working in administration for the Heart of England NHS Foundation Trust – Patient/Public Engagement, part-time. Non-personal pecuniary interest - Voluntary member for Transforming Community Services and Transforming Adult Social Care supported by the Department of Health. - Birmingham LINks member – Birmingham East and North Action group. - Cystic Fibrosis Chair, West Midlands Fundraising Branch.
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting	No change to declarations

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
(2nd March 2011)	
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th March 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Jo Adams

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th March 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Eloise Carr

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th March 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Melanie Gager

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (3rd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th March 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Annette Gibb

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Alan Nye

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	Non-personal pecuniary interest - Associate Director for NHS Direct which has been commissioned by the Department of Health to develop patient aids for the NHS.
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting	No change to declarations

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
(5th April 2011)	
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Amanda Smith

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	Personal pecuniary interest - NHS employee since 1984 currently working as Clinical (Therapies) Director for Powys Teaching Health Board in Wales.
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Richard Thomson

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	Non-personal pecuniary interest - Undertakes research in patient engagement in decision making (shared decision making) and hold and compete for grants from appropriate funding bodies to support research into, and implementation of, shared decision making. - Deputy director of the Institute for Health and Society. Members of the Institute for Health and Society have worked with NICE on other guideline groups, and colleagues have been involved in exploring the evidence base on behalf of NICE and providing health economics advice to NICE. Personal non-pecuniary interest - Written on shared decision making and the role of the NHS within this area.
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	Personal non-pecuniary interest - Member of the International Patient Decision Aids Standards (IPDAS) collaboration. This is an international body, from which I receive no funding, that takes a collaborative role to develop standards and summarise the evidence base for patient decision aids. Co-applicant

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
	on a grant for development of an instrument (IPDASi) which seeks to be useful as an evaluative and/or accrediting tool for patient decision aids.
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Chandi Vellodi

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	No change to declarations
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Barrie White

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
GDG recruitment	None
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	Personal pecuniary interest - GDG Chair – NICE Lung Cancer Guideline - Senior mentor for NICE fellows/scholars Personal non-pecuniary interest - Vice-Chair NICE Interventional Procedures Advisory Committee
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interest
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Declarations of interests of the NCGC members

GDG meeting	Declaration of Interests of NCGC members
First GDG meeting (2nd February 2011)	None
Second GDG meeting (1st March 2011)	No change to declarations
Third GDG meeting (2nd March 2011)	No change to declarations
Fourth GDG meeting (5th April 2011)	No change to declarations
Fifth GDG meeting (12th May 2011)	No change to declarations
Sixth GDG meeting (26th July 2011)	No change to declarations
Seventh GDG meeting (19th January 2012)	No change to declarations

Bibliography

1 Akl EA, Oxman AD, Herrin J, Vist GE, Terrenato I, Sperati F et al. Using alternative statistical formats for presenting risks and risk reductions. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2011; 3:CD006776. *(Guideline Ref ID AKL2011)*

2 Albada A, Ausems MG, Bensing JM, van Dulmen S. Tailored information about cancer risk and screening: A systematic review. Patient Education & Counseling. 2009; 77(2):155-171. *(Guideline Ref ID ALBADA2009)*

3 Appleby J. How satisfied are we with the NHS? BMJ. 2011; 342. *(Guideline Ref ID APPLEBY2011)*

4 Begley, C, Devane, D, and Clarke, M. An evaluation of midwifery-led care in the Health Service Executive North Eastern Area: the report of the MidU study. Dublin: School of Nursing and Midwifery, Trinity College Dublin, 2009 *(Guideline Ref ID BEGLEY2009)*

5 Boyd, J. The 2006 inpatients importance study. Picker Institute Europe, 2007 Available from: http://www.nhssurveys.org/Filestore/documents/Findings_and_development_of_the_2006_Inpatients_Importance_study_final.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID BOYD2007)*

6 Byrne JP, Crowther CA, Moss JR. A randomised controlled trial comparing birthing centre care with delivery suite care in Adelaide, Australia. Australian & New Zealand Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology. 2000; 40(3):268-274. *(Guideline Ref ID BYRNE2000)*

7 Care Quality Commission, Picker Institute Europe. NHS surveys: focused on patients' experience. 2011. *(Guideline Ref ID NHSS2011)*

8 Centre for Reviews and Dissemination. Systematic reviews: CRD's guidance for undertaking reviews in health care. CRD, University of York, 2009 Available from: http://www.york.ac.uk/inst/crd/pdf/Systematic_Reviews.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID CRD2009)*

9 Ciechanowski P, Katon WJ. The interpersonal experience of health care through the eyes of patients with diabetes. Social Science & Medicine. 2006; 63(12):3067-3079. *(Guideline Ref ID CIECHANOWSKI2006)*

10 Coulter A. The autonomous patient: ending paternalism in medical care. London: The Stationery Office; 2002 *(Guideline Ref ID COULTER2002)*

11 Cronin, C. Patient -centered care: an overview of definitions and concepts. Washington, DC: National Health Council, 2004 *(Guideline Ref ID CRONIN2004)*

12 Davis, K, Schoen, C, Schoenbaum, SC, Doty, MM, Holmgren, AL, Kriss, JL et al. Mirror, mirror on the wall: an international update on the comparative performance of American health care. The Commonwealth Fund, 2007 Available from: http://www.commonwealthfund.org/Content/Publications/Fund-Reports/2007/May/Mirror--Mirror-on-the-Wall--An-International-Update-on-the-Comparative-Performance-of-American-Healt.aspx *(Guideline Ref ID DAVIS2007)*

13 Department of Health. High quality care for all - NHS next stage review final report. 2008 Available from: http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_085825 *(Guideline Ref ID DOH2008)*

14 Department of Health. High quality care for all: our journey so far. 2009 Available from: http://www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/documents/digitalasset/dh_101674.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID DOH2009)*

15 Department of Health and dep. Essence of care 2010. London: The Stationery Office, 2010 Available from: http://www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/@ps/documents/digitalasset/dh_119978.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID DOH2010)*

16 Devane, D, Brennan, M, Begley, C, Clarke, M, Walsh, D, Sandall, J et al. Socioeconomic value of the midwife: a systematic review, meta-analysis, meta-synthesis and economic analysis of midwife-led models of care. London: Royal College of Midwives, 2010 *(Guideline Ref ID DEVANE2010)*

17 Doll R. Surveillance and monitoring. International Journal of Epidemiology. 1974; 3(4):305-314. *(Guideline Ref ID DOLL1974)*

18 Edwards AG, Evans R, Dundon J, Haigh S, Hood K, Elwyn GJ. Personalised risk communication for informed decision making about taking screening tests. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2006;(4):CD001865. *(Guideline Ref ID EDWARDS2006)*

19 Edwards A, Elwyn G, Covey J, Matthews E, Pill R. Presenting risk information--A review of the effects of "framing" and other manipulations on patient outcomes. Journal of Health Communication. 2001; 6(1):61-82. *(Guideline Ref ID EDWARDS2001)*

20 Edwards C, Staniszweska S, Crichton N. Investigation of the ways in which patients' reports of their satisfaction with healthcare are constructed. Sociology of Health & Illness. 2004; 26(2):159-183. *(Guideline Ref ID EDWARDS2004)*

21 Elwyn G, O'Connor A, Stacey D, Volk R, Edwards A, Coulter A et al. Developing a quality criteria framework for patient decision aids: online international Delphi consensus process. BMJ. 2006; 333(7565):417. *(Guideline Ref ID ELWYN2006)*

22 Flint, C. The 'Know your midwife' report. London: Heinemann, 1987 *(Guideline Ref ID FLINT1987A)*

23 Francis, R. Independent inquiry into care provided by Mid Staffordshire NHS Foundation Trust January 2005 – March 2009 . London: The Stationery Office, 2010 *(Guideline Ref ID FRANCIS2010)*

24 Freeman, G and Hughes, J. Continuity of care and the patient experience. London: The King's Fund, 2010 Available from: http://www.kingsfund.org.uk/current_projects/gp_inquiry/dimensions_of_care/continuity_of_care.html *(Guideline Ref ID FREEMAN2010)*

25 Frontier Economics. One to one support for cancer patients: a report prepared for the Department of Health. London: Frontier Economics Ltd, 2010 *(Guideline Ref ID FRONTIER2010)*

26 Gerteis M, Edgman-Levitan S, Daley J, Delbanco T. Through the patient's eyes: understanding and promoting patient-centered care. San Fransisco: Jossey-Bass; 1993 *(Guideline Ref ID GERTEIS1993)*

27 Goodrich, J and Cornwell, J. Seeing the person in the patient: the Point of Care review paper. London: The King's Fund, 2008 Available from:

http://www.kingsfund.org.uk/publications/the_point_of_care.html *(Guideline Ref ID GOODRICH2008)*

28 Grol R, Wensing M, Mainz J, Ferreira P, Hearnshaw H, Hjortdahl P et al. Patients' priorities with respect to general practice care: an international comparison. European Task Force on Patient Evaluations of General Practice (EUROPEP). Family Practice. 1999; 16(1):4-11. *(Guideline Ref ID GROL1999)*

29 Hatem M, Sandall J, Devane D, Soltani H, Gates S. Midwife-led versus other models of care for childbearing women. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2008;(4):CD004667. *(Guideline Ref ID HATEM2008)*

30 Hollinghurst S, Emmett C, Peters TJ, Watson H, Fahey T, Murphy DJ et al. Economic evaluation of the DiAMOND randomized trial: cost and outcomes of 2 decision aids for mode of delivery among women with a previous cesarean section. Medical Decision Making. 2010; 30(4):453-463. *(Guideline Ref ID HOLLINGHURST2010)*

31 Homer CS, Davis GK, Brodie PM, Sheehan A, Barclay LM, Wills J et al. Collaboration in maternity care: a randomised controlled trial comparing community-based continuity of care with standard hospital care. BJOG: An International Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology. 2001; 108(1):16-22. *(Guideline Ref ID HOMER2001)*

32 Homer CS, Matha DV, Jordan LG, Wills J, Davis GK. Community-based continuity of midwifery care versus standard hospital care: a cost analysis. Australian Health Review. 2001; 24(1):85-93. *(Guideline Ref ID HOMER2001A)*

33 Hughes D. Regulator raises elderly care concerns. 2011. *(Guideline Ref ID BBC2011)*

34 Hundley V, Donaldson C, Lang Gea. Cost of intrapartum care in a midwife managed delivery unit and a consultant led labour ward. Midwifery. 1995; 11(3):103-109. *(Guideline Ref ID HUNDLEY1995)*

35 Hundley VA, Cruickshank FM, Lang GD, Glazener CM, Milne JM, Turner M et al. Midwife managed delivery unit: a randomised controlled comparison with consultant led care. BMJ. 1994; 309(6966):1400-1404. *(Guideline Ref ID HUNDLEY1994)*

36 Institute of Medicine. Crossing the quality chasm: a new health system for the twenty-first century. Washington: National Academies Press, 2001 *(Guideline Ref ID IOM2001)*

37 International Alliance of Patients' Organizations. What is patient-centred healthcare? A review of definitions and principles. London: 2007 Available from: http://www.patientsorganizations.org/attach.pl/547/494/IAPO%20Patient-Centred%20Healthcare%20Review%202nd%20edition.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID IAPO2007)*

38 Ipsos-Mori. Issues index: trends since 1997. The most important issues facing Britain today. 2011. *(Guideline Ref ID IPSOSMORI2011)*

39 Kennedy AD, Sculpher MJ, Coulter A, Dwyer N, Rees M, Abrams KR et al. Effects of decision aids for menorrhagia on treatment choices, health outcomes, and costs: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2002; 288(21):2701-2708. *(Guideline Ref ID KENNEDY2002)*

40 Kennedy AD, Sculpher MJ, Coulter A, Dwyer N, Rees M, Horsely S et al. A multicentre randomised controlled trial assessing the costs and benefits of using structured information and analysis of

womens preferences in the management of menorrhagia. Health Technology Assessment. United Kingdom 2003; 7(8):1-86. *(Guideline Ref ID KENNEDY2003)*

41 Kings College London, King's Fund. What matters to patients? 2010. *(Guideline Ref ID KCL2010)*

42 Lawton J, Fox A, Fox C, Kinmonth AL. Participating in the United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS): a qualitative study of patients' experiences. British Journal of General Practice. 2003; 53(490):394-398. *(Guideline Ref ID LAWTON2003)*

43 Lawton J, Parry O, Peel E, Douglas M. Diabetes service provision: a qualitative study of newly diagnosed Type 2 diabetes patients' experiences and views. Diabetic Medicine. 2005; 22(9):1246-1251. *(Guideline Ref ID LAWTON2005)*

44 Leatherman, S and Sutherland, K. Patient and public experience in the NHS. London: Health Foundation, 2007 *(Guideline Ref ID LEATHERMAN2007)*

45 Leatherman, S and Sutherland, K. The quest for quality: refining the NHS reforms. London: The Nuffield Trust, 2008 Available from: http://www.nuffieldtrust.org.uk/ecomm/files/Quest_for_Quality_FULL.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID LEATHERMAN2008)*

46 Lopez LM, Steiner MJ, Grimes DA, Schulz KF. Strategies for communicating contraceptive effectiveness. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2008;(2):CD006964. *(Guideline Ref ID LOPEZ2008)*

47 McDowell JR, McPhail K, Halyburton G, Brown M, Lindsay G. Perceptions of a service redesign by adults living with type 2 diabetes. Journal of Advanced Nursing. 2009; 65(7):1432-1441. *(Guideline Ref ID MCDOWELL2009)*

48 Mullen PD, Green LW, Persinger GS. Clinical trials of patient education for chronic conditions: a comparative meta-analysis of intervention types. Preventive Medicine. 1985; 14(6):753-781. *(Guideline Ref ID MULLEN1985)*

49 Murray E, Davis H, Tai SS, Coulter A, Gray A, Haines A. Randomised controlled trial of an interactive multimedia decision aid on benign prostatic hypertrophy in primary care. BMJ. 2001; 323(7311):493-496. *(Guideline Ref ID MURRAY2001)*

50 Murray E, Davis H, Tai SS, Coulter A, Gray A, Haines A. Randomised controlled trial of an interactive multimedia decision aid on hormone replacement therapy in primary care. BMJ. 2001; 323(7311):490-493. *(Guideline Ref ID MURRAY2001A)*

51 National Centre for Social Research. (Guideline Ref ID NCSR2011)

52 National Clinical Guideline Centre. Unstable angina and NSTEMI: the early management of unstable angina and non-ST-segment-elevation myocardial infarction. (CG94). London: National Clinical Guideline Centre, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG94 *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2009)*

53 National Clinical Guideline Centre. Alcohol use disorders: diagnosis and clinical management of alcohol-related physical complications. (CG100). London: National Clinical Guideline Centre, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG100 *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2010B)*

54 National Clinical Guideline Centre. Chest pain of recent onset: assessment and diagnosis of recent onset chest pain or discomfort of suspected cardiac origin. (CG95). London: National

Clinical Guideline Centre, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG95 *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2010C)*

55 National Clinical Guideline Centre. Chronic heart failure: the management of chronic heart failure in adults in primary and secondary care. (CG108). London: National Clinical Guideline Centre, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG108/ *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2010)*

56 National Clinical Guideline Centre. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in adults in primary and secondary care. (CG101). London: National Clinical Guideline Centre, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG101 *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2010A)*

57 National Clinical Guideline Centre. Delirium: diagnosis, prevention and management. (CG103). London: National Clinical Guideline Centre, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG103 *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2010D)*

58 National Clinical Guideline Centre. The management of lower urinary tract symptoms in men. (CG97). London: National Clinical Guideline Centre, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG97 *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2010E)*

59 National Clinical Guideline Centre. Transient loss of consciousness ('blackouts') management in adults and young people. (CG109). London: National Clinical Guideline Centre, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG109 *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2010F)*

60 National Clinical Guideline Centre. Venous thromboembolism: reducing the risk of venous thromboembolism (deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism) in patients admitted to hospital. (CG92). London: National Clinical Guideline Centre, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG92 *(Guideline Ref ID NCGC2010G)*

61 National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care. Nutrition support in adults: oral nutrition support, enteral tube feeding and parenteral nutrition. (CG32). London: Royal College of Surgeons of England, 2006 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG32 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCAC2006)*

62 National Collaborating Centre for Acute Care. Glaucoma: diagnosis and management of chronic open angle glaucoma and ocular hypertension. (CG85). London: Royal College of Surgeons of England, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG85 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCAC2009)*

63 National Collaborating Centre for Cancer. Metastatic spinal cord compression: diagnosis and management of patients at risk of or with metastatic spinal cord compression. (CG75)., 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG75 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCC2008A)*

64 National Collaborating Centre for Cancer. Prostate cancer: diagnosis and treatment. (CG58)., 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG58 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCC2008)*

65 National Collaborating Centre for Cancer. Advanced breast cancer: diagnosis and treatment. (CG81)., 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG81 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCC2009)*

66 National Collaborating Centre for Cancer. Early and locally advanced breast cancer: diagnosis and treatment. (CG80)., 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG80 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCC2009A)*

67 National Collaborating Centre for Cancer. Diagnosis and management of metastatic malignant disease of unknown primary origin. (CG104)., 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG104 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCC2010)*

68 National Collaborating Centre for Cancer. Improving outcomes for people with skin tumours including melanoma (update): the management of low-risk basal cell carcinomas in the community. (CSGSTIM)., 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CSGSTIM *(Guideline Ref ID NCCC2010A)*

69 National Collaborating Centre for Chronic Conditions. Chronic kidney disease: national clinical guideline for early identification and management in adults in primary and secondary care. (CG73). London: Royal College of Physicians, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG73 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCCC2008)*

70 National Collaborating Centre for Chronic Conditions. Osteoarthritis. (CG59). London: Royal College of Physicians, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG59 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCCC2008B)*

71 National Collaborating Centre for Chronic Conditions. Stroke: diagnosis and initial management of acute stroke and transient ischaemic attack (TIA). (CG68). London: Royal College of Physicians, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG68 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCCC2008C)*

72 National Collaborating Centre for Chronic Conditions. Rheumatoid arthritis: national clinical guideline for management and treatment in adults. (CG79). London: Royal College of Physicians, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG79 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCCC2009)*

73 National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health. Diagnosis and management of ADHD in children, young people and adults. (CG72). London: The British Psychological Society and The Royal College of Psychiatrists, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG72 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCMH2009)*

74 National Collaborating Centre for Nursing and Supportive Care. Irritable bowel syndrome in adults: Diagnosis and management of irritable bowel syndrome in primary care. (CG61)., 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG61 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCNSC2008)*

75 National Collaborating Centre for Nursing and Supportive Care. The management of inadvertent perioperative hypothermia in adults. (CG65)., 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG65 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCNSC2008A)*

76 National Collaborating Centre for Primary Care. Identification and management of familial hypercholesterolaemia (FH). (CG71). London: Royal College of General Practitioners, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG71 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCPC2008A)*

77 National Collaborating Centre for Primary Care. Lipid modification: cardiovascular risk assessment and the primary and secondary prevention of cardiovascular disease. (CG67). London: Royal College of General Practitioners, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG67 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCPC2008)*

78 National Collaborating Centre for Primary Care. Low back pain: early management of persistent non-specific low back pain. (CG88). London: Royal College of General Practitioners, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG88 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCPC2009)*

79 National Collaborating Centre for Primary Care. Medicines adherence: involving patients in decisions about prescribed medicines and supporting adherence. (CG76). London: Royal College of General Practitioners, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG76 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCPC2009A)*

80 National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health. Antenatal care: routine care for the healthy pregnant woman. (CG62). London: RCOG Press, 2008 Available from: http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/live/11947/40145/40145.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID NCCWCH2008)*

81 National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health. Diabetes in pregnancy: management of diabetes and its complications from preconception to the postnatal period. (CG63). London: RCOG Press, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG63 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCWCH2008B)*

82 National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health. Induction of labour. (CG70). London: RCOG Press, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG70 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCWCH2008C)*

83 National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health. Surgical site infection: prevention and treatment of surgical site infection. (CG74). London: RCOG Press, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG74 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCWCH2008A)*

84 National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health. Hypertension in pregnancy: the management of hypertensive disorders during pregnancy. (CG107). London: RCOG Press, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG107 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCWCH2010A)*

85 National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health. Pregnancy and complex social factors: A model for service provision for pregnant women with complex social factors. (CG110). London: RCOG Press, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG110 *(Guideline Ref ID NCCWCH2010)*

86 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Social value judgements: principles for the development of NICE guidance. (2nd edn.)., 2008 Available from: http://www.nice.org.uk/media/C18/30/SVJ2PUBLICATION2008.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2008)*

87 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Coeliac disease: recognition and assessment of coeliac disease. (CG86). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG86 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2009B)*

88 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Rehabilitation after critical illness. (CG83). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG83 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2009A)*

89 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. The guidelines manual 2009. 2009. Available from: http://www.nice.org.uk/aboutnice/howwework/developingniceclinicalguidelines/clinicalguidelinedevelopmentmethods/GuidelinesManual2009.jsp *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2009)*

90 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Type 2 diabetes: newer agents for blood glucose control in type 2 diabetes. (CG87). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2009 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG87 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2009C)*

91 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Barrett's oesophagus: ablative therapy for the treatment of Barrett's oesophagus. (CG106). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2010 Available from: www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG106 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2010)*

92 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Donor breast milk banks: the operation of donor breast milk bank services. (CG93). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG93 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2010A)*

93 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Motor neurone disease: the use of non-invasive ventilation in the management of motor neurone disease. (CG105). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG105 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2010B)*

94 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. Neuropathic pain: the pharmacological management of neuropathic pain in adults in non-specialist settings. (CG96). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2010 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG96 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2010C)*

95 National Quality Board. Proposed quality standard - patient experience. 2010. *(Guideline Ref ID NQB2010)*

96 NHS Confederation. Feeling better? Improving patient experience in hospital. London: The NHS Confederation, 2010 Available from: http://www.nhsconfed.org/Publications/Documents/Feeling_better_Improving_patient_experience_in_hospital_Report.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID NHSC2010)*

97 NHS Information Centre. Data on written complaints in the NHS 2009-10. 2010 Available from: http://www.ic.nhs.uk/webfiles/publications/002_Audits/nhscomplaints0910/Written_complaints_NHS_%202009-10_Report.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID NHSIC2010)*

98 NICE Short Clinical Guidelines Technical Team. Prophylaxis against infective endocarditis: antimicrobial prophylaxis against infective endocarditis in adults and children undergoing interventional procedures. (CG64). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG64 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2008A)*

99 NICE Short Clinical Guidelines Technical Team. Respiratory tract infections - antibiotic prescribing. Prescribing of antibiotics for self-limiting respiratory tract infections in adults and children in primary care. (CG69). London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2008 Available from: http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG69 *(Guideline Ref ID NICE2008B)*

100 Office of Health Economics. Using patient reported outcomes (PROMs) to value health care. 2010. *(Guideline Ref ID OHE2010)*

101 Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. PPPs and exchange rates. 2011. [Last accessed: 1 April 2011] *(Guideline Ref ID OECD2011)*

102 Osler W. After twenty-five years. Aequanimitas, with other addresses to medical students, nurses and practitioners of medicine, Philadelphia: P Blakiston's Son and Co, 1905: 199-215 *(Guideline Ref ID OSLER1905A)*

103 Osler W. Books and men. Aequanimitas, with other addresses to medical students, nurses and practitioners of medicine, Philadelphia: P Blakiston's Son and Co, 1905: 219-225 *(Guideline Ref ID OSLER1905)*

104 Picker Institute Europe. Picker Institue - making patients' views count. 2011. *(Guideline Ref ID PICKER2011)*

105 Pooley CG, Gerrard C, Hollis S, Morton S, Astbury J. 'Oh it's a wonderful practice... you can talk to them': a qualitative study of patients' and health professionals' views on the management of type 2 diabetes. Health & Social Care in the Community. 2001; 9(5):318-326. *(Guideline Ref ID POOLEY2001)*

106 Rhodes P, Nocon A. A problem of communication? Diabetes care among Bangladeshi people in Bradford. Health & Social Care in the Community. 2003; 11(1):45-54. *(Guideline Ref ID RHODES2003)*

107 Richards G, Morris M, Booker S, Johnson A. What do people with type 1 diabetes find helpful in health professionals? Results from a focus group study. Practical Diabetes International. 2006; 23(6):249-252. *(Guideline Ref ID RICHARDS2006)*

108 Ritchie J, Lewis J. Qualitative research practice: a guide for social science students and researchers. London: Sage Publications Ltd; 2003 *(Guideline Ref ID RITCHIE2003)*

109 Rowley MJ, Hensley MJ, Brinsmead MW, Wlodarczyk JH. Continuity of care by a midwife team versus routine care during pregnancy and birth: a randomised trial. Medical Journal of Australia. Australia 1995; 163(6):289-293. *(Guideline Ref ID ROWLEY1995)*

110 Royal College of Nursing. Principles of nursing practice. 2010. *(Guideline Ref ID RCN2010)*

111 Shaller, D. Patient-centered care: what does it take? United States: Picker Institute and the Commonwealth Fund, 2007 *(Guideline Ref ID SHALLER2007)*

112 Sizmur, S and Redding, D. Core domains for measuring inpatients' experience of care. Picker Institute, 2009 *(Guideline Ref ID SIZMUR2009)*

113 Sizmur, S and Redding, D. Key domains of the experience of hospital outpatients. Picker Institute, 2010 *(Guideline Ref ID SIZMUR2010)*

114 Smerecnik CM, Mesters I, Verweij E, de Vries NK, de Vries H. A systematic review of the impact of genetic counseling on risk perception accuracy. Journal of Genetic Counseling. 2009; 18(3):217-228. *(Guideline Ref ID SMERECNIK2009)*

115 Stacey D, Bennett CL, Barry M, Col NF, Eden KB, Holmes-Rovner M et al. Decision aids for people facing health treatment or screening decisions. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2011. *(Guideline Ref ID STACEY2011)*

116 Staniszewska S. Patient and public involvement in health services and health research: A brief overview of evidence, policy and activity. Journal of Research in Nursing. 2009; 14(4):295-298. *(Guideline Ref ID STANISZEWSKA2009)*

117 Staniszewska S, Crowe S, Badenoch D, Edwards C, Savage J, Norman W. The PRIME project: developing a patient evidence-base. Health Expectations. 2010; 13(3):312-322. *(Guideline Ref ID STANISZEWSKA2010)*

118 Staniszewska S, Henderson L. Patients evaluations of their health care: the expression of negative evaluation and the role of adaptive strategies. Patient Education & Counseling. 2004; 55(2):185-192. *(Guideline Ref ID STANISZEWSKA2004)*

119 Staniszewska SH, Henderson L. Patients' evaluations of the quality of care: influencing factors and the importance of engagement. Journal of Advanced Nursing. 2005; 49(5):530-537. *(Guideline Ref ID STANISZEWSKA2005)*

120 Svenningsson I, Gedda B, Marklund B. Experiences of the encounter with the diabetes team-a comparison between obese and normal-weight type 2 diabetic patients. Patient Education & Counseling. 2011; 82(1):58-62. *(Guideline Ref ID SVENNINGSSON2011)*

121 Thorlby, R and Maybin, J. A high-performing NHS? A review of progress 1997-2010. London: The King's Fund, 2010 Available from: http://www.kingsfund.org.uk/publications/a_highperforming_nh.html *(Guideline Ref ID THORLBY2010)*

122 Trevena LJ, Barratt A, Butow P, Caldwell P. A systematic review on communicating with patients about evidence. Journal of Evaluation in Clinical Practice.: Blackwell Science Ltd. 2006; 12(1):13-23. *(Guideline Ref ID TREVENA2006)*

123 Turnbull D, Holmes A, Shields N, Cheyne H, Twaddle S, Gilmour WH et al. Randomised, controlled trial of efficacy of midwife-managed care. Lancet. 1996; 348(9022):213-218. *(Guideline Ref ID TURNBULL1996)*

124 van der Wilt GJ, Meulendijks CF, Thijssen RF. Experience with shared decision making in gynaecological practice: treatment decisions in patients with dysfunctional uterine blood loss. European Journal of Obstetrics Gynecology and Reproductive Biology. Netherlands 2005; 120(2):210-216. *(Guideline Ref ID VANDERWILT2005)*

125 Vuorma S, Teperi J, Aalto AM, Hurskainen R, Kujansuu E, Rissanen P. A randomized trial among women with heavy menstruation -- impact of a decision aid on treatment outcomes and costs. Health Expectations. 2004; 7(4):327-337. *(Guideline Ref ID VUORMA2004)*

126 Welsh Assembly Government. Fundamentals of care: guidance for health and social care staff. Improving the quality of fundamental aspects of health and social care for adults. Cardiff: Welsh Assembly Government, 2003 Available from: http://www.wales.nhs.uk/documents/booklet-e.pdf *(Guideline Ref ID WAG2003)*

127 Young D, Lees A, Twaddle S. Professional issues. The costs to the NHS of maternity care: midwife-managed vs shared. British Journal of Midwifery. 1997; 5(8):465-472. *(Guideline Ref ID YOUNG1997)*